



imagePROGRAF

W8400

User's Guide

Quick Menu

- ▶▶ Loading Roll Media
- ▶▶ Unexpected Printing Results
- ▶▶ Removing Media Jams
- ▶▶ Message Is Displayed
- ▶▶ Ink in a Tank Run Out
- ▶▶ Operation Panel Setting List
- ▶▶ Printer Driver
- ▶▶ Options
 - Setup the Media Take-up Unit
 - Cutter Unit

Chapter 1 Basic Use

Chapter 2 Using Various Media

Chapter 3 Printing by Objective

Chapter 4 Maintenance

Chapter 5 Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6 Troubleshooting

Chapter 7 Operating the Function Menu

▶▶ imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop Guide

[Windows](#) [Macintosh](#)

▶▶ imagePROGRAF HDI Driver Guide

[Windows](#)

▶▶ Media Configuration Tool Guide

[Windows](#) [Macintosh](#)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

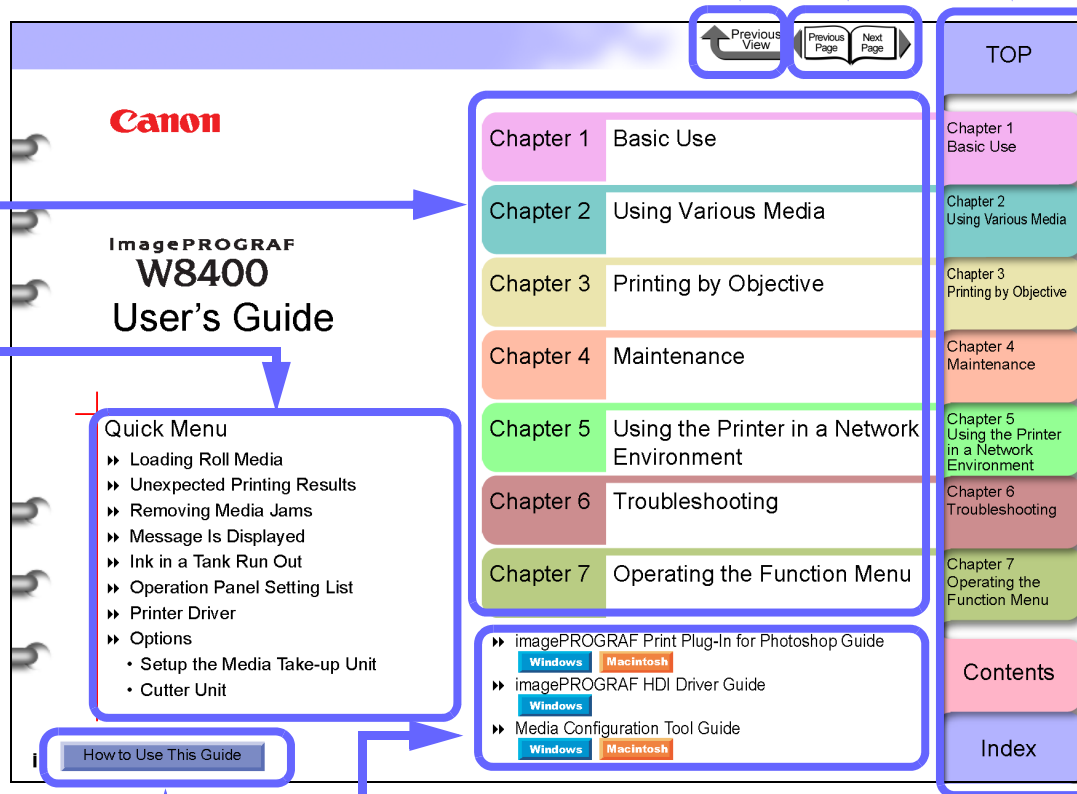
How to Use This Guide

How to Use the Top Page

- Move to top page, chapter contents pages, contents pages, and indexed pages.
- Move to the previous/next page.
- Return to the previous screen.

- Move to each chapter contents page.
- Move to frequently used topics.

- Move to the page that describes how to use this guide.



- **Windows** **Macintosh** Click either button to browse each item of the solutions manual for the selected operating system.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

How to Use the Chapter Contents Pages

- Move to top page, chapter contents pages, contents pages, and indexed pages.
- Move to the previous/next page.
- Return to the previous screen.

- Click the contents page to move to the topic pages.

- Click on the checkbox, then click the **Start Print** button to print the pages of the selected topics. The print job starts immediately after you click the **Start Print** button.

Chapter 5 Using the Printer in a Network Environment

You can print the items that have been checked.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Before Using the Printer	5-2
	System Requirements	5-2
	The Network Environment	5-3
<input type="checkbox"/>	TCP/IP Network Settings (Windows, Macintosh, UNIX)	5-5
	Procedures Required for a TCP/IP Network	5-5
	Connecting the LAN Cable	5-5
	Setting the Printer IP Address	5-7
	Configuring TCP/IP Protocol Settings	5-15
	Configuring the Printer for Sharing	5-18
<input type="checkbox"/>	Macintosh Network Settings	5-20
	Procedures Required for a Macintosh Network	5-20
	Configuring a Macintosh	5-21
	Configuring the AppleTalk Protocol	5-25
	Install the Printer Driver	5-31
<input type="checkbox"/>	NetWare Settings (Windows)	5-33
	Procedures Required for a NetWare Network	5-33
	Setting the Printer Frame Type	5-34
	Setting Up a NetWare Print Service	5-37
	Setting NetWare Protocol	5-40
	Configuring the Computer for NetWare	5-44
<input type="checkbox"/>	Printing with UNIX	5-45
	Using LPD to Print	5-45
	Using FTP to Print	5-46
<input type="checkbox"/>	Initializing the Network Settings	5-47
<input type="checkbox"/>	List of Network Settings	5-48
<input type="checkbox"/>	Software Applications Used to Configure Network Settings	5-51

5-1 How to Use the Chapter Contents Pages Start Print → Before clicking the Start Print button

Navigation icons: Previous View, Previous Page, Next Page, TOP, Chapter 1 Basic Use, Chapter 2 Using Various Media, Chapter 3 Printing by Objective, Chapter 4 Maintenance, Chapter 5 Using the Printer in a Network Environment, Chapter 6 Troubleshooting, Chapter 7 Operating the Function Menu, Contents, Index.

Important

- Clicking the **Start Print** button begins printing on the printer specified in **Set as Default Printer**. We recommend that you specify the printer you want to print on in **Set as Default Printer** and print on A4 size plain paper.

• Other
Click on blue text to move to the referenced pages.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

Chapter 1 Basic Use

You can print the items that have been checked.

Printer Part Names	1-2
Printer Main Unit	1-2
Switching the Printer On and Off	1-7
Switching the Printer On	1-7
Switching the Printer Off	1-8
Online and Offline	1-9
What's On the Operation Panel?	1-11
Viewing the Display	1-11
Using the Operation Panel Buttons	1-12
Reading Operation Panel Lamps	1-14
Function Menus	1-15
How to Perform Menu Settings	1-17
Menu Settings Summary Tables	1-19
Printer Driver	1-31
What the Printer Driver Can Do	1-31
Main Sheet	1-34
Page Setup Sheet	1-36
Layout Sheet	1-37
Maintenance Sheet	1-37
Printing	1-38
Printing From Windows	1-38
Printing from a Macintosh	1-40
Canceling a Print Job	1-44
Canceling a Print Job from Windows	1-44
Canceling a Print Job from Macintosh	1-45
Options	1-50
Consumables	1-52
Specifications	1-55
Basic Environmental Performance	1-58

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

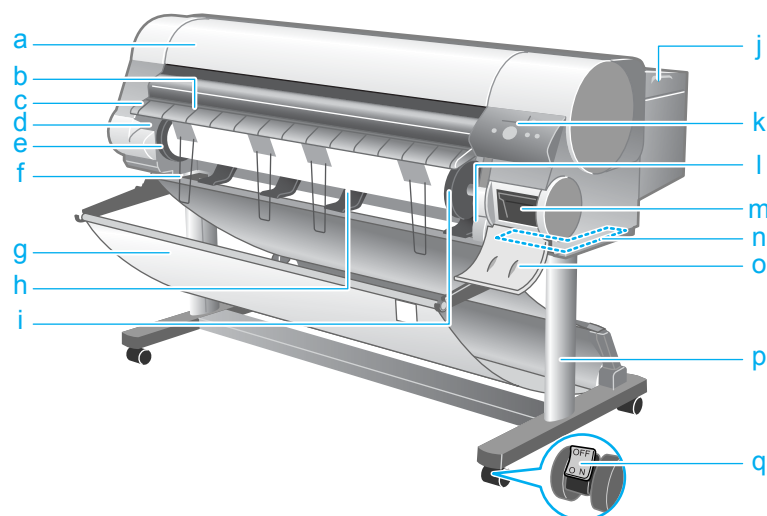
Contents

Index

Printer Part Names

Printer Main Unit

■ Front View



a Top Cover

Remove this cover to install the printhead, to load media, or to remove sheets of paper jammed in the printer. (→ [P.4-11](#), [P.6-37](#))

b Cutter Grooves

If cutting paper manually, make sure the cutter is in contact with this wall at all times.

c Ejection Guide

Printed media is delivered to the paper catch tray. Open the ejection guide to load the roll media.

d Roll Holder Slot

This groove guides the roll holder. (→ [P.2-31](#))

e Holder Stopper

The part that fastens the roll media to the roll holder. (→ [P.2-28](#))

f Spool Prevention Stay

This part prevents printed matter from being snagged on the roll holder or paper feed slot.

g Output stacker (provided with optional stand)

A cloth tray that catches print media ejected from the printer.

h Paper Feed Slot

Insert paper here when loading roll media. (→ [P.2-28](#))

i Roll Holder

The holder where the roll media is loaded. (→ [P.2-28](#))

j Right Back Cover

Open to replace ink tanks.

k Operation Panel

Provides the display panel and the operation panel buttons. For more details, please refer to “Using the Operation Panel Buttons”. (→ [P.1-12](#))

l Release Lever

The lever that releases the media. If you are loading or manually feeding paper, pull up this lever and open the paperweight bar. (→ [P.2-32](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

m Maintenance Cartridge

The cartridge that vacuums and collects excess ink.
 Replace the maintenance cartridge when a message appears prompting you to replace the cartridge.
 (→ P.4-14)

n Moving Handles

Grasp the handles provided on the base of the printer to lift or move the printer.

o Maintenance Cartridge Cover

Open this cover to replace the maintenance cartridge.
 (→ P.4-14)

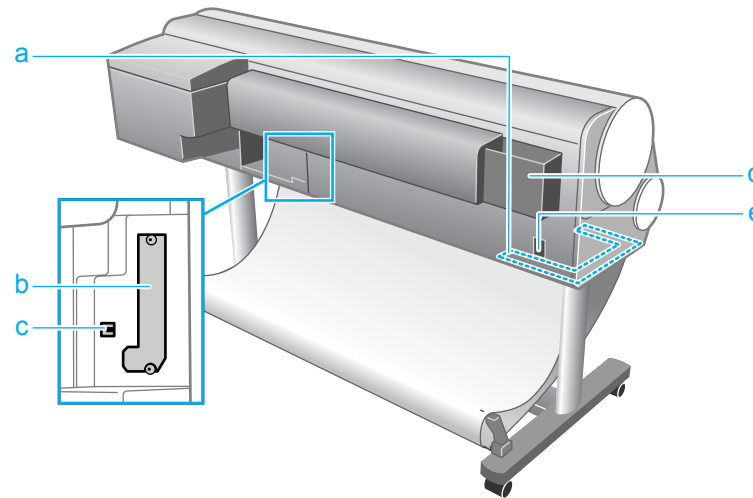
p Stand

This is a table designed specially for this printer. Casters are attached to the legs to make it easy to move. An optional Media Take-up Unit can also be installed.

q Stopper

The part that locks the casters of the printer stand.

■ Back View



a Moving Handles

Grasp the moving handles provided on the base of the printer to lift or move the printer.

b Expansion Board Slots

Provided for installing a network interface board or IEEE1394 expansion board. Remove the two screws to insert the board. (→Quick Start Guide)

Printers sold in the U.S.A. are shipped with the Network board installed as a standard item (not an option).

c USB Port

This is the communication port for USB High Speed 2.0. Connect the USB cable here to connect the printer to the computer via USB. (→Quick Start Guide)

d Accessory Pocket

Holds the printer manual, tools for assembly, and extra ink tanks.

e Power Supply Connector

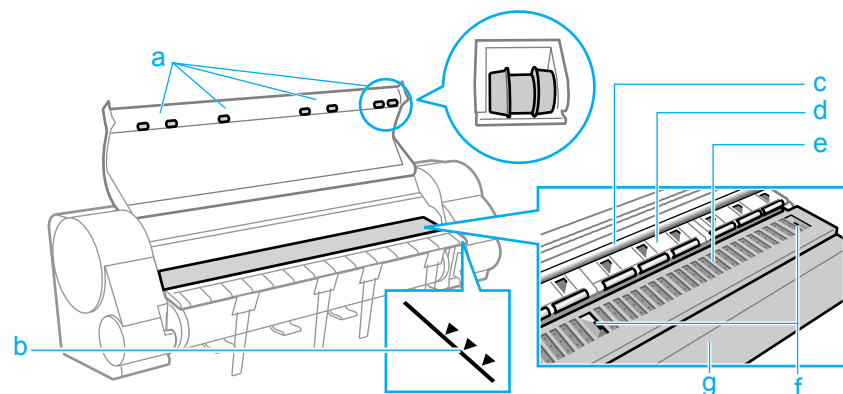
Provides a connection point for the printer power cord.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Inside the Top Cover



a Top Cover Roller

This roller prevent the paper from peeling during output.

b Paper Alignment Line

When you are loading roll media, load it so that the media is parallel to the right side of this guideline.

(→ [P.2-28](#))

c Carriage Shaft

The carriage moves on the carriage shaft.

d Paperweight

An important part of the paper feed path. The plate keeps the paper straight in the paper path.

e Platen

The printhead moves across the platen when it prints. A suction port is provided on the front surface to prevent the media from floating out of position.

f Borderless Printing Ink Grooves

Receives ink that drains from the edges of the media during borderless printing.

g Standard Cutter Unit

This guide is used to feed paper. Remove this part if mounting an optional cutter unit.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

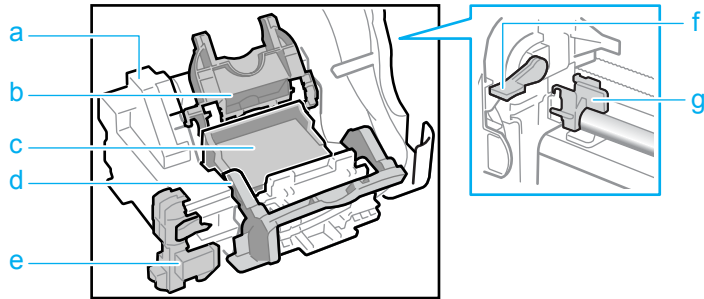
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Carriage (Inside Top Cover)



a Carriage

The important part that moves the printhead during printing.

b Printhead Fixer Cover

This cover locks and holds the printhead in place.
(→ [P.4-21](#))

c Printhead

An important component that is equipped with the print nozzles. The printer is shipped without the printhead installed. You must install the printhead after unpacking the printer. (→Quick Start Guide)

d Printhead Fixer Lever

This is the lever that locks the printhead fixer cover.
Open this lever to open the printhead fixer cover.
(→ [P.4-21](#))

e Cutter Blade

The cutter unit that cuts print media automatically.
(→ [P.4-27](#))

f Printhead Height Adjustment Lever

Use to adjust the height of the printhead. You will need to adjust the height of the printhead for high quality printing and printing on special media. (→ [P.2-43](#))

g Shaft Cleaner

The shaft cleaner prevents the carriage shaft from becoming dirty. This cleaner must be replaced at the same time as the maintenance cartridge is replaced.
(→ [P.4-19](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

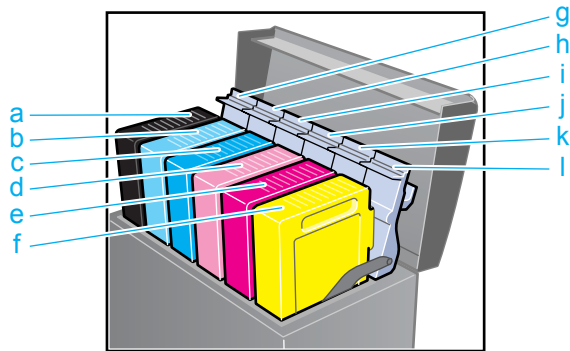
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Back View Inside Right Back Cover



a Bk Ink Tank or MBk Ink Tank

b PC Ink Tank

c C Ink Tank

d PM Ink Tank

e M Ink Tank

f Y Ink Tank

These are the ink cartridges. The printer is shipped without the ink cartridges installed. You must install the ink cartridges after unpacking the printer.

g Bk/MBk Ink Tank Covers

h PC Ink Tank Cover

i C Ink Tank Cover

j PM Ink Tank Cover

k M Ink Tank Cover

l Y Ink Tank Cover

These covers lock and protect the ink tanks. Open this cover to replace an ink tank.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Switching the Printer On and Off

Follow the procedure below to switch the printer on and off.

 Note

- This section describes examples of how to use the printer for normal operations after it has been set up. If you have not finished setting up the printer, first follow the instructions in the “Quick Start Guide” to confirm the setup and operation of the printer.
- When turning ON the printer power supply, also turn ON the power supply to the Macintosh that is turned OFF, but connected to the printer using a USB cable, at the same time. In this case, disconnect the USB cable. (If the printer and Macintosh are connected by USB cable, this may solve the problem.)

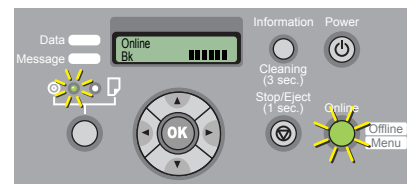
Switching the Printer On

Switch on the printer before you execute a print job from the computer.

- 1** Press the **Power** button.



Printer initialization starts after the **Online** lamp and **Message** lamp start flashing. After the initialization has completed and media has been loaded, the **Ready** lamp and **Online** lamp light, and the printer is ready to print.



If no print media is loaded in the printer when the printer is switched on, **Offline** is displayed and the printer waits for you to load media in the printer.



If the **Message** lamp is flashing, read the message on the printer operation display and take the appropriate action. “[Message Is Displayed](#)” (→ [P.6-2](#)).

If the display or Online lamps do not light, check the power cord connection at the printer to make sure that it is secure. (→Quick Start Guide)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

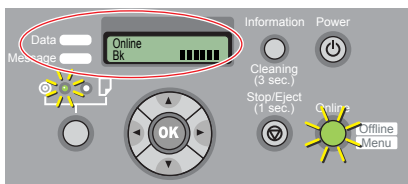
Switching the Printer Off

When you are finished using the printer, follow this procedure to switch the printer off.

Important

- Never switch the printer off, and never unplug the power cord during a print job. This could damage the printer.
- Remove the roll from the printer if you do not intend to print from the roll for a long period. Leaving the roll media in the standby position for an extended period could cause poor feeding.

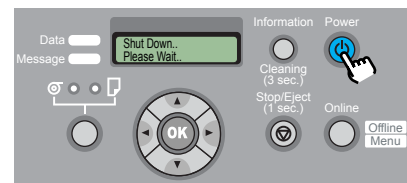
- 1 Look at the display and confirm that a print job is not in progress.



If you see an error message displayed, take the required corrective action, and then make sure there are no remaining print jobs.

If a print job is in progress, wait for the print job to complete before switching off the printer.

- 2 Press and hold down the **Power** button until you see **Shut Down..** in the display, and then release the button.



Please Wait.. is displayed for a few seconds, then the printer goes off.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Online and Offline

■ When the Printer Is Operating

This printer has three operation modes: online, offline and menu mode. Each mode is described below.

● Online Mode

The printer immediately processes print jobs sent from the computer.

● Offline Mode

The printer receives jobs from the computer but the jobs are held without being processing. While the printer is offline, you can load or cut media manually, access the carriage, and perform other procedures.

The printer also goes offline automatically whenever the printer cannot start processing a print job, such as when there is no print media loaded, or when an error occurs, etc.

● Menu Mode

In menu mode, the printer function menus are displayed on the printer display. Press the buttons on the operation panel to set or execute the functions in the menus. Like offline mode, this mode pauses all jobs without processing.



Note

- Use the **Use Power Save** and sleep mode settings on the printer operation panel to set the ON/OFF timing. If **Use Power Save** is set to ON, you can set the time until sleep with **Sleep Timer**. (→ P.1-27)
- If the printer remains idle for more than 15 minutes with the cover closed (i.e., if no print jobs are received or if no operation panel buttons are pressed), the printer automatically enters Use Power Save to conserve power. Only the **Online** lamp remains on while the printer is in Use Power Save; the display and other lamps remain off. The printer awakens from Use Power Save automatically if it receives a print job or if you press any button on the operation panel. The printer requires about 5 seconds to recover from sleep mode.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

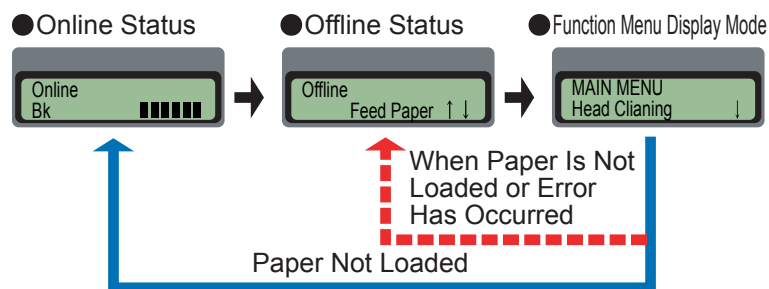
Index

■ How to Switch Modes

You can use the **Online** button to switch between printer operation modes.

- 1 Press the **Online** button to select a new operation mode.

Every time you press the **Online** button, the mode selection changes in this order: **Online** / **Offline** / **MAIN MENU**.



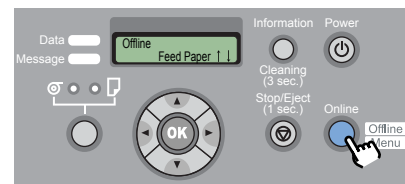
● Online Mode



In online mode, **Online** is displayed on the operation panel, and the **Online** lamp lights.

If no media is loaded, or if a message is displayed on the operation panel, the printer will not enter online mode even if you press the **Online** button. The printer automatically enters online mode when you clear the cause of the error.

● Offline Mode



In offline mode, **Offline** is displayed on the operation panel, and the **Online** lamp goes off.

● Menu Mode



In menu mode, **MAIN MENU** is displayed on the operation panel, and you can use the arrow keys ([◀] [▶] [▲] [▼]) and the **OK** button to operate the function menus.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

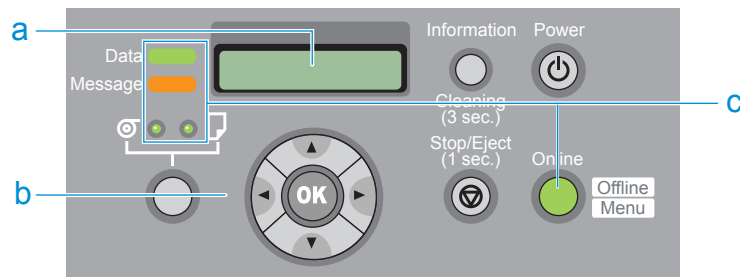
Contents

Index

What's On the Operation Panel?

The printer operation panel of this printer provides a display (a), 10 buttons (b) and 5 lamps (c).

- “Viewing the Display” (→ P.1-11)
- “Using the Operation Panel Buttons” (→ P.1-12)
- “Reading Operation Panel Lamps” (→ P.1-14)



■ Print Job Processing



- Line 1:
The first line of the display shows the current processing status of the printer.
- Line 2:
Displays the job name and other information.

■ Function Menu Display



- Line 1:
Displays the name of the menu or menu item.
- Line 2:
Displays the currently selected menu item. A right arrow at the right end of the line indicates that there are more options. A down arrow at the right end of the line indicates that there are more menu sublevels. When both cases exist, you will see a down arrow and right arrow displayed alternately.



- For more details about the function menus, refer to “How to Perform Menu Settings” (→ P.1-17).

Viewing the Display

The display shows the current status of the printer.

■ Standby



- Line 1:
The first line of the display shows the current operating status of the printer.
- Line 2:
The abbreviation for the currently installed black ink tank (Bk for Photo Black Ink, MBk for Matte Black Ink) is displayed on the left. (→ P.2-2)
The level of the ink supply in each ink tank is displayed in the center, and the amount of space remaining in the maintenance cartridge is displayed on the right as a percentage.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Items and Setting Values Display

Media Type
=Plain Paper

- **Line 1:**
Displays the name of the setting.
- **Line 2:**
Displays the item or value of the setting.
A value prefixed with an equals sign (=) indicates the current selection.



Note

- For more details about the function menus, refer to [Chapter 1 “How to Perform Menu Settings”](#) (→ P.1-17).

■ Message Display

ERROR E02501
Rep. Y Ink Tank

Printing stops and the Message lamp starts flashing when the printer requires user intervention. Take the necessary steps to resolve the problem when this occurs.

In some cases you can continue printing once a message has been displayed to notify you that the printer needs user intervention. When the Message lamp lights, press any button to extinguish the lamp and the message.



Note

- For more details about what to do when an error message appears, refer to [“Message Is Displayed”](#) (→ P.6-2).
- While the printer is printing, warming up, or performing other operations, the right back cover, top cover, and release lever are locked and cannot be opened.

Using the Operation Panel Buttons

The buttons on the operation panel are used for the functions described below.



a Power button

Press this button to turn ON and OFF the printer.

- **Printer off:**
Press to switch the printer on.
- **Printer on:**
Press and hold down the button for 1 second min.
Shut Down.. will be displayed, and the power supply will be turned off.

b Online button

This button is used to switch the printer between offline, online and menu display modes.

- **Online mode:**
Press to switch the printer offline.
- **Offline mode:**
Press to switch the printer to menu mode.
- **Menu mode:**
Cancels the current menu operation and switches to online mode. If a maintenance cartridge error is being displayed, this also temporarily clears the error and allows you to switch the printer to online mode. However, you cannot switch to online mode when other messages are displayed or when there is no paper loaded.
- **While a job is processing:**
Puts the printer in pause mode. The current print job pauses temporarily.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

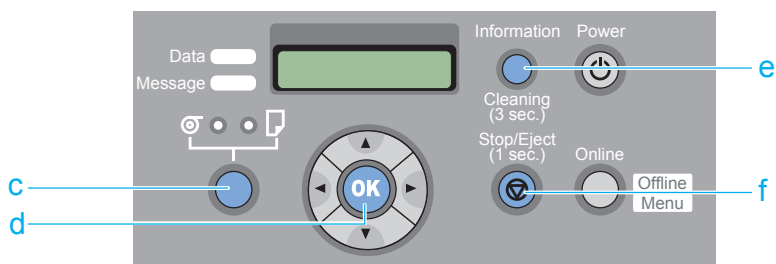
Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index



c Paper Source button

- Online, offline, or menu modes:

Press and hold for 1 second or more to switch between Roll Media and Cut Sheet as the feed source. You cannot change the paper source if the top cover, right back cover, or release lever is open.

d OK button

- Setting value display:

Selects the value or setting, or executes the function, currently displayed on the operation panel.

e Information button

Displays the submenu. The submenu displays information about ink, the maintenance cartridge, media, printhead height, printhead service life, and parts service life in a prescribed order. Press and hold this button for 3 seconds to start **Head Cleaning A.** (→ P.4-39)

Further, if the roll has been loaded and the remaining paper amount detection function has been turned ON, the length of the roll will be displayed.

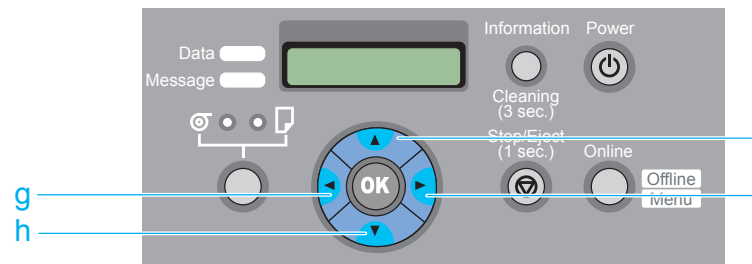
f Stop/Eject button

- Online, offline, and menu modes:

Press and hold for 1 second or more to cancel printing or ink drying, or to eject the media.

- Pause mode:

Press and hold for 1 second or more to cancel a paused job and eject the media.



g [◀] button

- Offline mode:

Press and hold for 1 second or more to move the carriage to the center of the platen.

- Menu mode:

Operates as a menu selection button that displays the previous menu item or setting value.

h [▼] Button

- Offline mode:

If you are using the roll feed, this functions as a manual feed button that advances the paper.

- Menu mode:

Press this button to open the next menu level below.

i [▲] Button

- Offline mode:

If you are using the roll feed, this functions as a manual feed button that reverse feeds the paper back onto the roll.

- Menu mode:

Press to return one level up and display the previous menu item.

j [▶] Button

- Offline mode:

Press and hold for 1 second or more to move the carriage to the center of the platen.

- Menu mode:

Operates as a scroll button to display the next candidate for selection on the operation panel.

Reading Operation Panel Lamps

The lamps on the operation panel indicate the following states.



a Data lamp

- **Flashing:**

If the printer is printing, this indicates that the printer is receiving or processing a print job.

If the printer is not printing, the printer is either in pause mode and has a paused job, or the printer has received data that it cannot process, or the firmware is being updated.

- **Off:**

There are no jobs in the printer.

b Message lamp

- **On:**

A warning is displayed on the operation panel.

- **Flashing:**

An error has occurred.

- **Off:**

The printer is operating normally, or the printer is switched off.

c Roll Media lamp

- **On:**

Roll media is selected as the paper source.

d Cut Sheet lamp

- **On:**

Cut sheet is selected as the paper source.

e Online lamp

- **On:**

The printer is online or the printer is processing or spooling a print job.

- **Off:**

The printer is either offline, in pause mode, in menu mode, is initializing immediately after power on, or has been switched off.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Function Menu

You can use the operation panel to access and use all the functions built into the printer. You can use the menus to make system settings, set up options, clean the printhead, and make test prints, etc. You can press the **Information** button at any time to view the submenu and view information about the ink levels, media, and height of the printhead.

■ Printer Function Priorities

The settings configured on the printer operation panel are used as the default settings for all print jobs.

However, if the same settings have been configured by the printer driver then the printer driver settings have priority when print jobs are executed.

■ Function Menu Flow Summaries

The following illustration shows you how the menu items in the function menus are organized. Press [◀] or [▶] to display the previous or next item, press [▼] to display the next level below, or press [▲] to return to the previous level. You can also press the **OK** button to accept the settings for each menu item.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

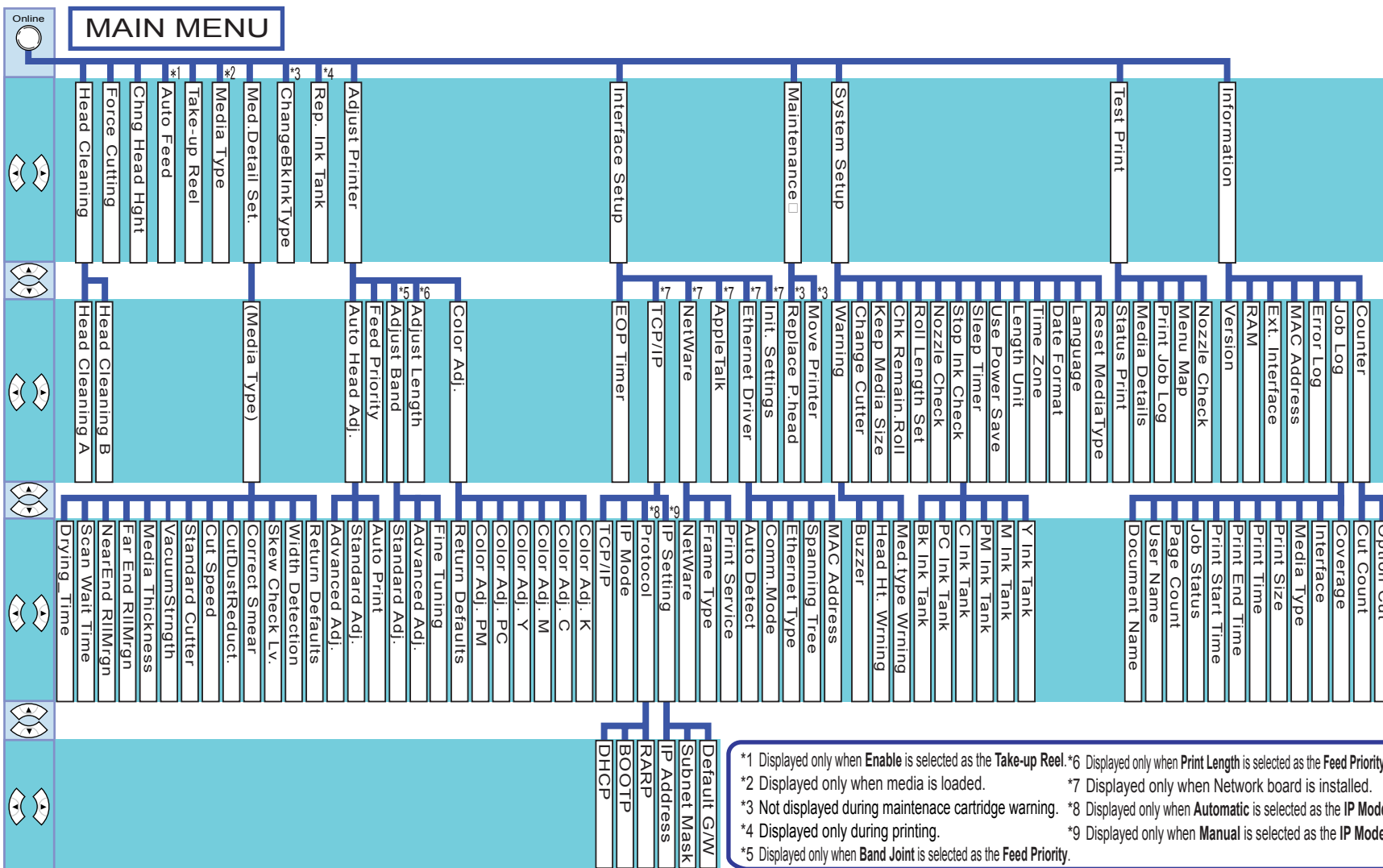
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

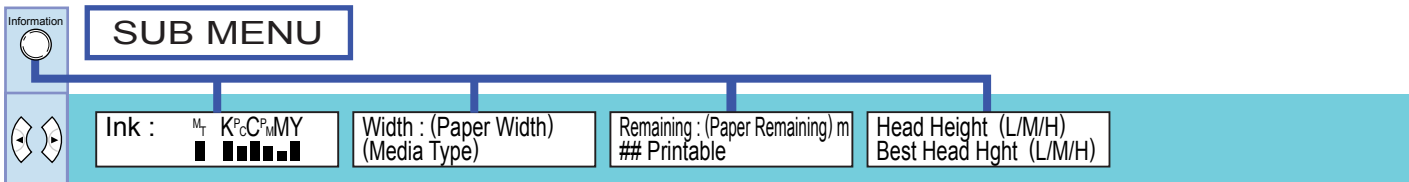
Contents

Index

● MAIN MENU



● Submenu (Information Button)



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

How to Perform Menu Settings

When making the function menu settings, press the **Online** button to display the menus, then use the [◀], [▶], [▼], [▲], and **OK** buttons to operate the menus.

■ Making Settings

This section explains how to set the sleep timer as an example of how to use the operation panel buttons.



Note

- Check that the **Use Power Save** function is turned ON. If the **Use Power Save** function is turned OFF, the sleep timer cannot be set.

- 1 If the printer is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

After a few seconds **Online** is displayed in the operation panel and the Online lamp lights.



- 2 Press the **Online** button to select the **MAIN MENU**.



- 3 Press the [◀] or [▶] button to select **System Setup**, and then press [▼].



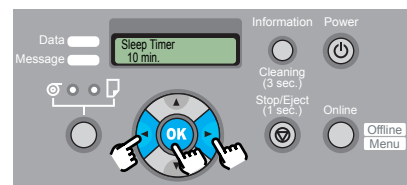
The next level of the menu is displayed.

- 4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Sleep Timer** then press [▼].



The setting value for the selected item appears.

- 5 Press the [◀] or [▶] button to select the desired setting then press the **OK** button.



An equals sign (=) is displayed to the left of the setting value and setting is updated.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

6 Press the **Online** button to display **Online**.



The Online lamp lights and the printer is ready to print.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Menu Settings Summary Tables

Each menu has the functions described below. Setting values marked with an asterisk "*" are the default settings for the corresponding menu items.


■ MAIN MENU

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Head Cleaning	Head Cleaning A	Cleans the printhead.
	Head Cleaning B	Performs stronger cleaning than Head Cleaning A.
Force Cutting	No, Yes	Executes a roll cut at the current position. If there is 10 cm or less from the edge of the paper, however, the paper will be fed to the prescribed length before cutting is performed. If the feed amount is too small, cutting will not be performed. This menu item is displayed only while "Roll Media" is selected for printing. 20cm If the feed amount is too small, cutting will not be performed.
Chng Head Hght	No, Yes	Adjusts the height of the Printhead. (→ P.2-43)
Auto Feed	No, Yes	Selects whether or not to perform automatic winding using the Media Take-up Unit. This menu is displayed only if the Take-up Reel has been turned Enable .
Take-up Reel	Disable*, Enable	Selects whether or not to use the Media Take-up Unit.
Media Type	Plain Paper*, CAD Plain Paper, Plain Paper HQ, Recycled Coated, Coated Paper, HW Coated, Premium Matte, Ex HW Coated, Glossy Photo, Semi-GI Photo, HW Glossy Photo, HW SemiGI Photo, Syn. Paper, Adh. Syn. Paper, Backlit Film, Flame-Res.Cloth, Fabric Banner, Proofing paper, News Proof 1, News Proof 2, News Proof 3, FineArt Photo, FneArt HW Photo, FineArt Txtr, Canvas Matte, Canvas Semi-GI, JPN Paper Washi, Colored Coated, CAD Trace Paper, CAD Matte Film, CAD Clear Film, Special 1-5	Selects the media type. Only the names of the types of media that can be used with the currently installed ink tank are displayed. (→ P.2-4)

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents


Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Med. Detail Set. (Media Type)	Plain Paper*, CAD Plain Paper, Plain Paper HQ, Recycled Coated, Coated Paper, HW Coated, Premium Matte, Ex HW Coated, Glossy Photo, Semi-GI Photo, HW Glossy Photo, HW SemiGI Photo, Syn. Paper, Adh. Syn. Paper, Backlit Film, Flame-Res.Cloth, Fabric Banner, Proofing paper, News Proof 1, News Proof 2, News Proof 3, FineArt Photo, FneArt HW Photo, FineArt Txtr, Canvas Matte, Canvas Semi-GI, JPN Paper Washi, Colored Coated, CAD Trace Paper, CAD Matte Film, CAD Clear Film, Special 1-5	These are the names of media that you can select. Only the names of the types of media that can be used with the currently installed ink tank are displayed.
Drying Time	Off, 30 sec., 1 min., 3 min., 5 min. 10 min., 30 min., 60 min.	The default ink drying time between printed sheets can be set to match the current media.
Scan Wait Time	Off, 1 sec., 3 sec., 5 sec., 7 sec., 9 sec.	The amount of time that printhead pauses after each printing pass (scan) to wait for the ink to dry can be set to match the absorption properties of the current media. However, using this setting will increase the printing time.
NearEnd RIIMrgn	20 mm, 5 mm	<p>Sets the margin to reserve at the leading edge of roll media to ensure printing quality is maintained at the leading edge.</p> <p> Important</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If set to 5 mm, the print quality at the leading edge, or the accuracy of feeding, may deteriorate, or the surface of the print may be scratched. Ink may also adhere to the leading edge of the media.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents


Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Far End RollMrgn	10 mm, 5 mm	<p>Sets the margin to reserve at the trailing edge of roll media to ensure printing quality is maintained at the trailing edge.</p> <p> Important</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If set to 5 mm, the print quality at the trailing edge, or the accuracy of feeding, may deteriorate, or the surface of the print may be scratched. Ink may also adhere to the trailing edge of the media.
Media Thickness	Thick, Standard, Thin	Selects the ideal thickness for the media type. The printhead alert will display based on the value of this setting.
VacuumStrngth	Weak, Standard, Strong, Strongest	Sets the amount of suction on the media on the platen.
Standard Cutter	Enable, Disable	Determines whether the standard, flat blade cutter is enabled.
Cut speed	Standard, Fast	Sets the speed of the cutter cutting the media. For media such as film that has a tendency to produce debris, select Fast to reduce the amount of debris produced. This item is enabled for the standard cutter only.
CutDustReduct.	Off*, On	A line is printed at the cut line in order to reduce the amount of dust generated by film and other media during cutting.
Correct Smear	Off*, On	Use this setting to correct the printing problems if the media appears to smear easily.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Skew Check Lv.	Standard*, Loose, Off	<p>If are printing on Japanese washi paper or other media of non-standard width, you can relax the skew detection threshold or switch the detection function off.</p> <p> Important</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If media is loaded crooked when this setting is Off, this could cause jams or foul the platen.
Width Detection	ON*, OFF, Media Size?	The Width Detection function can be switched to Off only when printing on cut sheets. You can switch width detection off for Japanese washi or other media of non-standard widths. If you switch this function Off , then Media Size? is displayed and you can enter the width of the media.
Return Defaults	No, Yes	This function restores the media type settings to their default values.
ChangeBkInkType	No, Yes	If you want to change the type of black ink, use this setting to make the printer perform the necessary processing so that you can change the black ink tank.
Rep. Ink Tank	No, Yes	If you need to change an ink tank during a print job, use this setting to make the printer perform the necessary processing so that you can change the ink tank. This menu is displayed during printing only.
Adjust Printer		
Auto Head Adj.		Adjusts the printhead. (→ P.4-41)
Advanced Adj.	No, Yes	Prints the pattern used to adjust nozzle gaps, print direction, and color gaps; the printer reads the printed pattern and performs automatic adjustment based on the results of the printout.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Standard Adj.	No, Yes	Prints the adjustment pattern used to adjust the position of the printhead, reads the results of the pattern, and then automatically adjusts the values for printhead positioning.
Auto Print	On*, Off	After the printhead has been replaced, Advanced Adj. will be implemented automatically.
Feed Priority	Band Joint*, Print Length	Selects the feed accuracy priority. Select Print Length when you want the media feed length to be accurate. When Print Length is selected, color may blur slightly in the direction of carriage scanning.
Adjust Band		Adjusts the amount of paper feed for each type of media. (→ P.4-43)
Standard Adj.	No, Yes	The printer prints a band adjustment pattern, then scans the resulting printout to automatically determine adjustment values for the paper feed settings for each type of media.
Advanced Adj.	No, Yes	Use if any paper other than standard Canon paper or paper that has been approved for output has been loaded. The adjustment value is set automatically by reading the printed pattern. This function takes more time than Standard Adj. , however, and consumes more ink.
Fine Tuning	-3 ~ 0* ~ +3	Allows manual entry of a value to fine tune the banal adjustment of the media selected for printing.
Adjust Length	-0.70 ~ 0.00* ~ 0.70%	Adjusts the amount of stretching and shrinking for each media type. Adjust the value to the plus (+) side to set a larger feed volume for media that stretches easily, or adjust it to the minus (-) side to reduce the amount of feed for media that shrinks easily. This menu is displayed only if the Feed Priority has been set to Print Length .

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Color Adj.	No, Yes	Returns all colors to default settings (2).
Return Defaults	No, Yes	Returns all colors to default settings (2).
Color Adj. PM	1, 2*, 3	You can adjust the density of PM Y, M, C, K, PM, PC one by one and perform the corrections. The settings can be performed in the range 1 to 3 (the standard default setting is 2). Set to 1 for a light adjustment or set to 3 for a dark adjustment.
Color Adj. PC	1, 2*, 3	
Color Adj. Y	1, 2*, 3	
Color Adj. M	1, 2*, 3	
Color Adj. C	1, 2*, 3	
Color Adj. K	1, 2*, 3	
Interface Setup		
EOP Timer	10 sec., 30 sec., 1 min., 2 min., 5 min., 10 min*., 30 min., 60 min.	Sets the job timeout setting for the printer.
TCP/IP		Sets the TCP/IP protocol settings of the network interface. After setting each TCP/IP item, select Store Setting to save the settings and enable them. This menu is displayed only when the network interface is installed. (→ P.5-12)
TCP/IP	On	The setting for TCP/IP protocol is locked On . This setting cannot be changed.
IP Mode	Manual*, Automatic	This setting determines whether the IP address is set automatically or a fixed IP address is entered manually.
Protocol		Selects the type of server when the printer is set for automatic entry of the IP address.
DHCP BOOTP RARP	Off*, On	
IP Setting		Sets the printer network information when using a static IP address.
IP Address Subnet Mask Default G/W	0.0.0.0* to 255.255.255.255	Enter the IP address allocated to the printer, network subnet mask, and default gateway.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents


Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
NetWare		Sets the network interface for NetWare protocol. After configuring all of the settings, select Store Setting to save the settings and enable them. This menu is displayed only when the network interface is installed. (→ P.5-35)
NetWare	Off*, On	Determines whether the NetWare protocol is used.
Frame Type	Auto Detect, Ethernet 2, Ethernet 802.2*, Ethernet 802.3, Ethernet SNAP	Selects the frame type to use.
Print Service	BindaryPserver, RPrinter, NDSPserver*, Nprinter	Selects the print service.
AppleTalk	On, Off*	Determines whether AppleTalk protocol is used. After configuring all of the settings, select Store Setting to save the settings and enable them. This menu is displayed only when the network interface is installed. (→ P.5-30)
Ethernet Driver		Sets the method of communication for the network interface board. After configuring all of the settings, select Store Setting to save the settings and enable them. This menu is displayed only when the network interface is installed. (→ P.5-6)
Auto Detect	On*, Off	Sets the network card to automatically detect the LAN communication protocol. If set to OFF, the communication method and Ethernet type setting values are enabled.
Comm. Mode	Half Duplex*, Full Duplex	Selects the LAN communication method.
Ethernet Type	10 Base-T*, 100 Base-TX	Selects the LAN communication method.
Spanning Tree	Not Use*, Use	This selection determines whether the LAN spanning tree packets are received and supported.
MAC Address		Displays the MAC address of the network interface board.
Store Setting	Ok?	
Init. Settings	Ok?	Resets all of the Interface Setup settings to their factory defaults.
Maintenance		

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Replace P.head	No, Yes	Performs the processing required for printhead replacement. This menu is not displayed if the maintenance cartridge capacity warning is displayed. (→ P.4-21)
Move Printer	No, Yes	Performs the processing required before transporting the printer to another location. This menu is not displayed if the maintenance cartridge capacity warning is displayed. (→ P.4-33)
System Setup		
Warning		
Buzzer	On*, Off	Sets the buzzer function. When set to On , the buzzer sounds when an error occurs.
Head Ht. Wrning	ON*, OFF, Check Head Hght	Determines whether a prompt is issued when the printhead is not at the correct height for the print media.
Med.type Wrning	On*, Off	Determines whether a warning is issued when the media loaded in the printer does not match the media specified for the print job.
Change Cutter	No, Yes	Prepares the printer so the cutter can be replaced when replacement is necessary. After replacement, you can reset the number of cuts.
Keep Media Size	Off*, On	<p>When set to On, printing is performed according to the specified paper size. The image may extend beyond the top, bottom, right, and left edges.</p> <p> Important</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If set to Off, the image will be printed cleanly, leaving the recommended 5-mm border at the top, bottom, right, and left edges. However, a long sheet with ample top, bottom margins should be used.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Chk Remain.Roll	Off, On*	If set to On , a bar code is printed when the roll is removed in order to keep track of the amount of media remaining on each roll. If set to Off , a bar code is not printed when the roll is removed. If this is set to Off, the edge will be cut off regardless of the roll paper loading position.
Roll Length Set	## m (if meter is selected using Length Unit), ## feet (if feet/inch is selected using Length Unit), Manual Setting, Unknown	The sets the length of the roll media when the Chk Remain.Roll function is On and roll media with no bar code has been loaded. This is displayed only when Chk Remain.Roll function is On. Setting values are displayed in meters or feet depending on the values of the Length Unit setting. You can choose the Manual Setting to directly enter the length. If this setting is set to Unknown , the Chk Remain.Roll function is switched Off .
Nozzle Check	Off, 1 Page, 10 Pages*	Allows you to set the number of pages to print when a nozzle clogs during an automatic check.
Stop Ink Check	Bk Ink Tank PC Ink Tank C Ink Tank PM Ink Tank M Ink Tank Y Ink Tank	Switches off the ink level detection function. (→ P.4-8)
Sleep Timer	5 min., 10 min., 15 min*., 20 min., 30 min., 40 min., 50 min., 60 min.	Sets the amount of time the printer remains idle before it enters sleep mode.
*Use Power Save	On, Off	Set the printer sleep function. If the sleep function is turned ON , the printer will enter sleep mode when the time set using Sleep Timer has elapsed if the covers are closed, print data has been received, or the printer controls are not being operated, to conserve power consumption. If set to OFF , sleep mode is disabled. (→ P.1-9)

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Length Unit	meter*, feet/inch	Sets the units used to display the length of the roll media on the display. This changes the units used to display the roll media length and remaining roll length.
Time Zone	0:London (GMT) +1:Paris,Rome +2:Athens,Cairo +3:Moscow +4:Eerevan,Baku +5:Islamabad +6:Dacca +7:Bangkok +8:Hong Kong +9:Tokyo,Seoul +10:Canberra +11NewCaledonia +12:Wellington -12:Eniwetok -11:Midway is. -10Hawaii(AHST) -9:Alaska(AKST) -8:Oregon (PST) -7:Arizona(MST) -6:Texas (CST) -5:NewYork(EST) -4:Santiago -3:Buenos Aires -2: -1:Cape Verde	You can select a representative city in the appropriate time zone, along with the selection of the GMT time difference.
Date Format	yyyy/mm/dd dd/mm/yyyy mm/dd/yyyy	Sets the display format for the date.
Language	カタカナ, English*, Français, Italiano, Deutsch, Español	Selects the display language.
Reset Media Type	No, Yes	Details changed using the Media Configuration Tool are restored to the default values.
Test Print		
Status Print		Prints the printer information and setting values.
Menu Map		Prints a list of all the items on the MAIN MENU.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Print Job Log		Prints a list of information about printed jobs, including media size and type, amount of ink consumed, etc.
Nozzle Check		Prints the nozzle check pattern.
Media Details		Prints a list of media type settings.
Information		
Version		Displays the version numbers of the printer unit and firmware.
RAM		Displays the memory capacity of the printer.
Ext. Interface		Displays the name of the interface that can be used at the expansion slot.
MAC Address		Displays the MAC address of the network interface. This menu is displayed only when the network interface is installed.
Error Log		Displays the most recent error message.
Job Log		Displays information regarding the maximum of the last three print jobs printed.
Document Name		Displays the document name from the print job.
User Name		Displays the user name from the print job.
Page Count		Displays the number of pages in the print job.
Job Status		Displays the result of processing the print job.
Print Start Time		Displays the time that the print job was started.
Print End Time		Displays the time that the print jobs ended.
Print Time		Displays the time elapsed for the print job.
Print Size		Displays the size of the media used in the print job.
Media Type		Displays name of the media type used in the print job.
Interface		Displays the job interface.
Coverage		Displays the ink density of each color used in the print job.
Counter		
Cut Count		Displays the number of cuts made by the standard cutter. You can reset this counter after the cutter blade has been replaced.
Option Cut		Displays the number of cuts made by the optional cutter. You can reset this counter after the cutter blade has been replaced.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Submenu

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Ink: M _T K P _C C P _M M Y ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■		The center of the display shows the remaining amount of ink in each ink tank from the 7 levels of (100%, 80%, 60%, 40%, 20%, 0%), and no ink. The right side of the display shows the amount of ink that the maintenance cartridge can still absorb as a 7-level bar.
Width: X Y	X: Media width Y: Media Type	The width of the media is shown on the top line, and the type of media is shown on the bottom line.
Remaining: X m ## Printable	X: Roll Remains Y: Sheets printable with remaining ink.	When the roll media supply detection is On, this displays the length of media that remains on the roll. When the low ink alert is displayed, a guide to the number of sheets that can be printed is also displayed.
Head Height X Best Head Hght Y	X: Current printhead position (L, M, H) Y: Optimum position for media (L, M, H)	Displays the current and optimum position of the printhead. When the Head Ht. Wrning is Yes , an alert is issued if the current height of the printhead is lower than the ideal height for the media.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

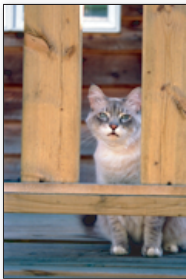
Index

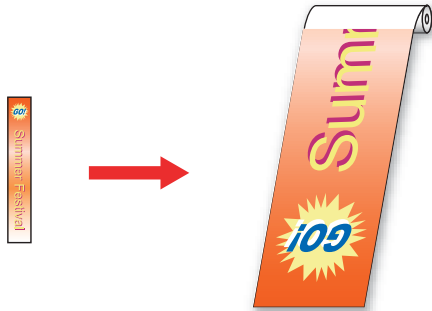
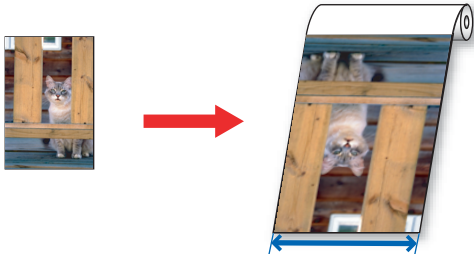
Printer Driver

The computer uses the printer driver to send print jobs to the printer. This section describes the functions of the printer driver.

What the Printer Driver Can Do

The printer driver is used to configure the information that is need to print a print job, including the media type, print quality, color, and page size. The printer driver also provides a variety of functions that allow you to easily perform the following tasks. For details about operation procedures, refer to Chapter 3 “Printing Methods for Basic Tasks”, or the printer Online Help.

<p>Borderless Printing</p>	
	<p>The printer can print without borders on any of the 4 sides, similar to a photograph. (→ P.3-13, P.3-78)</p>

<p>Banner Printing</p>	
	<p>You can make long printouts of up to 15.24 meters long to make vertical hangings or horizontal banners (up to 18m with Mac OS X). (→ P.3-31, P.3-95)</p>
<p>Enlarged/ Reduced Printing</p>	
	<p>You can print such that the print data is automatically enlarged or reduced to fit the width of the currently loaded roll media. This makes it easy to make printouts that fill the entire width of the media. (→ P.3-6, P.3-66)</p>

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

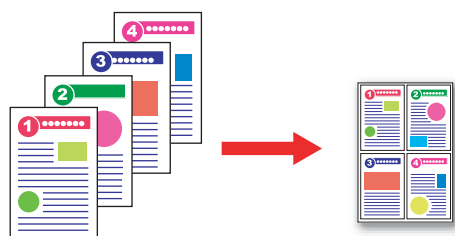
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

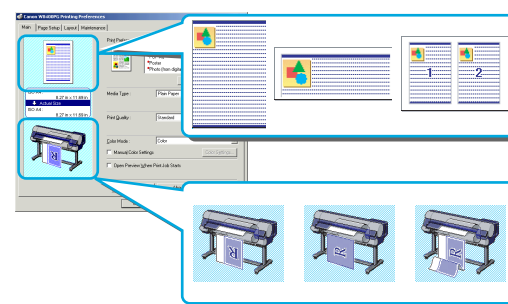
Index

Multiple Page Printing



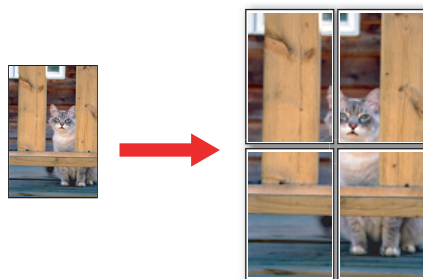
You can reduce the size of the page images to print multiple pages on each sheet. Use this feature to save paper when you want to check the content of a printout. (→ [P.3-24](#), [P.3-90](#))

Preview Display



Displays a graphical representation of what the printout will look like by showing the effects of the printer driver settings. This allows you to confirm what the print job will look like before you print it. (→ [P.3-5](#), [P.3-65](#))

Poster Printing



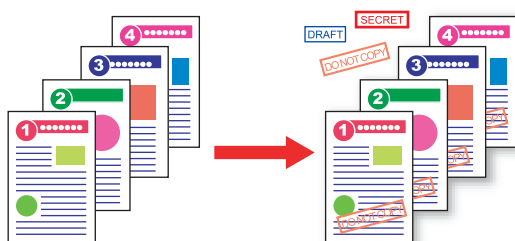
You can enlarge a single page of print data and print it out across multiple sheets. This is convenient when you need to paste together sheets to form a large poster. (→ [P.3-27](#), [P.3-93](#))

Color Adjustment



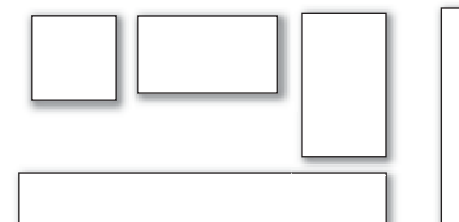
You can use the printer driver to adjust the tones of the colors in your printed materials. (→ [P.3-43](#), [P.3-108](#))

Printing Watermarks



You can print watermarks or transparent overlays onto printed material. (→ [P.3-29](#))

Custom Sizes



You can register custom sizes for paper and other media. (→ [P.3-53](#), [P.3-122](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

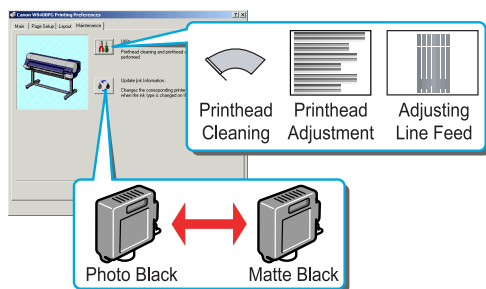
Index

Print Types



The printer driver provides predefined settings that match the purpose of the document. You can easily performing printing that meets the purpose of the job. Further, you can register the settings that you have made on each sheet under a name. (→ [P.3-2](#), [P.3-60](#))

Maintenance



You can print nozzle check patterns, perform printhead cleaning, adjust the printhead, and adjust the amount of feed all from the computer screen. (→ [P.4-39](#), [P.4-41](#), [P.4-43](#), [P.4-46](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

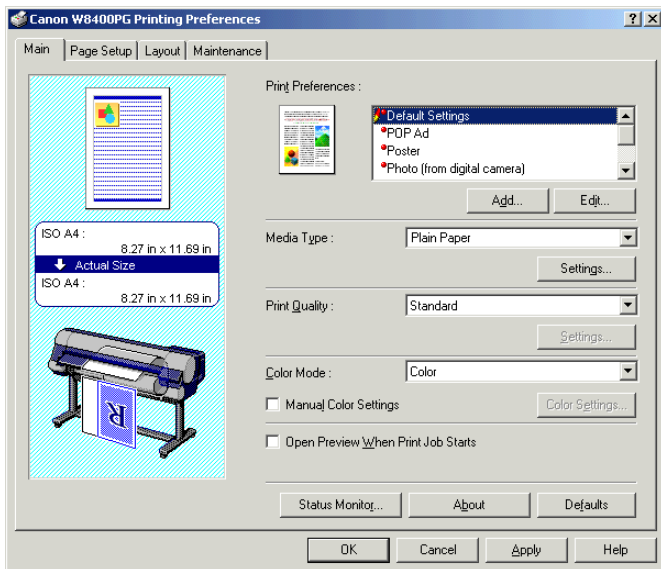
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Main Sheet

The Main sheet provides the following settings.



<p>Print Preferences</p>	<p>Default Settings: Use these settings to print a document that contains text, images, and graphics mixed together.</p> <p>POP Ad: Best selection for printing sharp, bright posters for store advertising.</p> <p>Poster: Best selection for printing posters that primarily use photographs.</p> <p>Photo (from digital camera): Best for printing photographs taken with a digital camera.</p> <p>Photo (from scanner): Best selection when you need faithful reproduction of color photos captured with a scanner.</p> <p>Long Format (Banner): Best for long print jobs with mixed text and illustrations, such as for vertical hangings and horizontal banners.</p> <p>CAD: Best choice when you want to print fine, sharp lines in architectural or engineering plans.</p>
<p>Media Type</p>	<p>Sets the media type to use. Printing is performed to match the characteristics of the media. If this setting does not match the type of media loaded in the printer, this will cause poor print quality.</p>

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

<p>Print Quality</p>	<p>High: This print mode places priority on quality. Standard: Prints the printout at normal quality. Draft: This print mode places priority on speed. Custom Settings: Printing is performed using the process set by the user. If Highest is selected, the printed image will be the highest quality.</p>
<p>Settings...</p>	<p>If selecting Custom Settings in Print Quality, set the processing methods for Print Quality, Resolution, Enhance Text with Photos, and Halftones. The set values that can be selected for each item depends on the paper type and type of black ink.</p>
<p>Color Mode</p>	<p>Color: Uses all the inks to print the job in color. Monochrome (Photo): Provides stable monochrome photo printing with minimal tone change and enables detailed adjustment of gray scale gradations and color tones. Monochrome: Converts all print data to grayscale and prints using only the black ink. Solid Color: Solid colors are printed differently so they stand out, light color lines print sharp. Black Only: All areas other than white are printed in black.</p>
<p>Manual Color Settings</p>	<p>Allows manual adjustment of color balance, saturation, brightness, and contrast.</p>

<p>Open Preview When Print Job Starts</p>	<p>An image of the print job is displayed on the screen as soon as the print job starts so you can confirm the content before you start the print.</p>
<p>Status Monitor...</p>	<p>Starts the Status Monitor of the GARO Status Monitor.</p>
<p>About</p>	<p>Displays the version number of the printer driver.</p>
<p>Defaults</p>	<p>Returns the settings on the sheets to their initial (default) settings.</p>

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

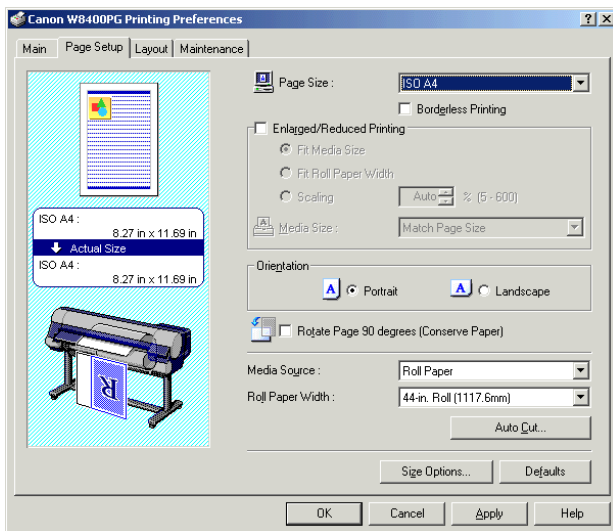
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Page Setup Sheet

The Page Setup sheet provides the following settings.



Page Size	Sets the size of the page for the print data.
Borderless Printing	Prints the image with no margin at the four edges of the sheet. There are limitations on the width and type of media. (→ P.2-4, P.3-13, P.3-78)
Enlarged/Reduced Printing	Allows you to enlarge or reduce printing. You can select one of the following methods to do this.
Fit Media Size	Automatically sets the enlargement/reduction ratio to match the Media Size setting.
Fit Roll Paper Width	Automatically sets the enlargement/reduction ratio to between 5% to 600% to match the Roll Paper Width setting.
Scaling	Allows you to scale the size of the image manually in the range 5% to 600%.
Media Size	Specifies the actual size of the media that the print data will print on.
Orientation	Allows you to select either portrait or landscape printing.
Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)	Automatically rotates the image 90 degrees when print job would result in a printout with the length smaller than the width. This saves paper.
Media Source	Specifies whether to use roll media, roll media (banner printing), or cut sheets.
Roll Paper Width	Specifies the width of the roll media to use.
Auto Cut...	Specifies whether the sheet is cut after printing.
Size Options...	Allows you specify arbitrary paper sizes outside of the standard paper sizes for long printouts, etc.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

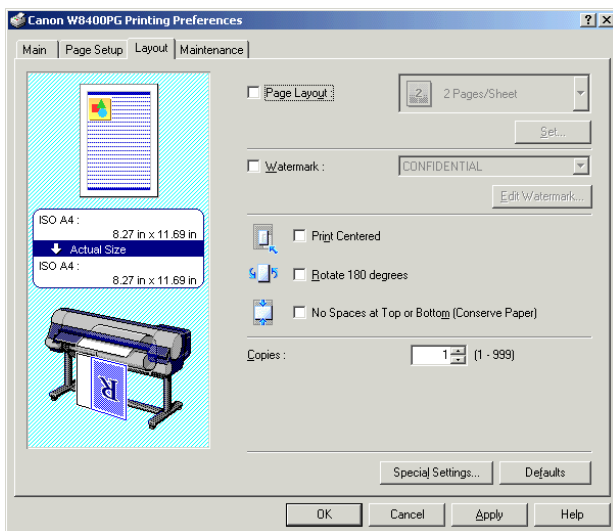
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

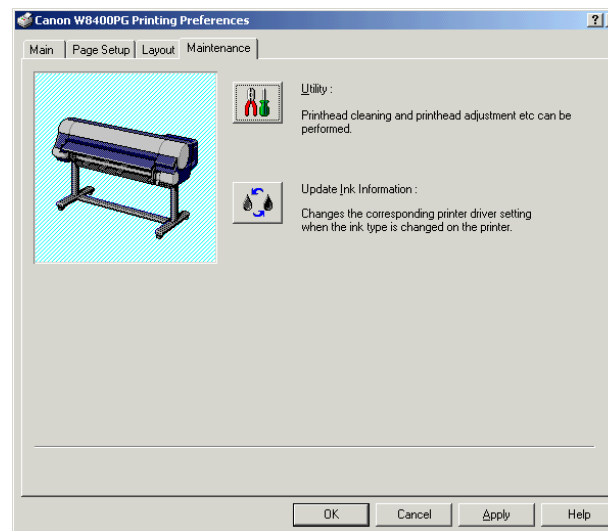
Layout Sheet

The Layout sheet provides the following settings.



Maintenance Sheet

The Maintenance sheet provides the following settings.



Page Layout	This feature allows you to print multiple pages onto a single sheet or enlarge a single page and print it over several sheets (poster printing).
Watermark	Overlays a watermark on the printed image. You can freely configure the text, border, angle, position and transparency settings of a watermark and register the watermark under an arbitrary name.
Print Centered	When the image to be printed is smaller than the sheet, you can print the image centered so the margins are even.
Rotate 180 degrees	This feature rotates the image 180 degrees.
No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)	When the image to be printed is smaller than the media, you can set the printer it does not feed and there is no margin at the top or bottom. This conserves roll paper.
Copies	Specifies the number of copies to print.
Special Settings...	If the print results are not what you expect, you can change how the print job is processed.

Utility	Open the Status Monitor and display the Utility sheet. This is used to print the nozzle check pattern, perform printhead cleaning, adjust the printhead position, and adjust the feed amount. For status prints, refer to the Information tab in the status monitor.
Update Ink Information	Sets the type of black ink. Click the Ink Information button to automatically set this setting to the black ink currently loaded in the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Printing

Follow the procedure below to start a print job.

Printing From Windows

To print a job from a Windows software application, use the **Print...** command in the **File** menu.

Important

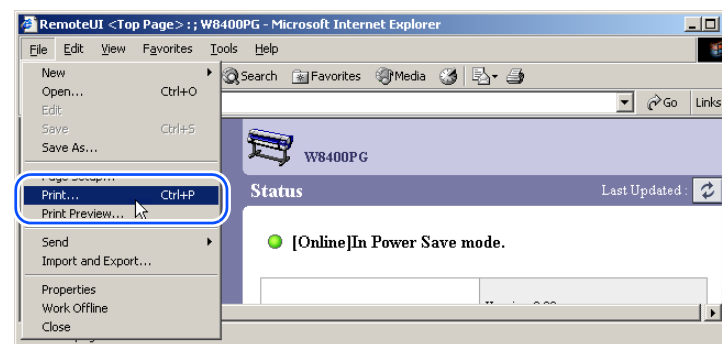
- The Windows printer driver for this printer can be used with Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows 98, and Windows NT 4.0. The printer driver is not compatible with Windows 95. (→ Quick Start Guide)
- Before you start a print job on the computer, close any software applications running in the background. Another program running in the background could break the flow of print data and temporarily stop the printer or cause poor print quality.

Note

- For more details about how to use the printer driver, refer to [Chapter 3 “Printing by Objective”](#).

Print Operations

- 1 In the software application, select **Print...** from the **File** menu.



The **Print** window opens.

- 2 Make sure the name of the printer is displayed in the **Select Printer** box, set the **Page Range** and **Number of copies** settings, then click the **Print** button.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

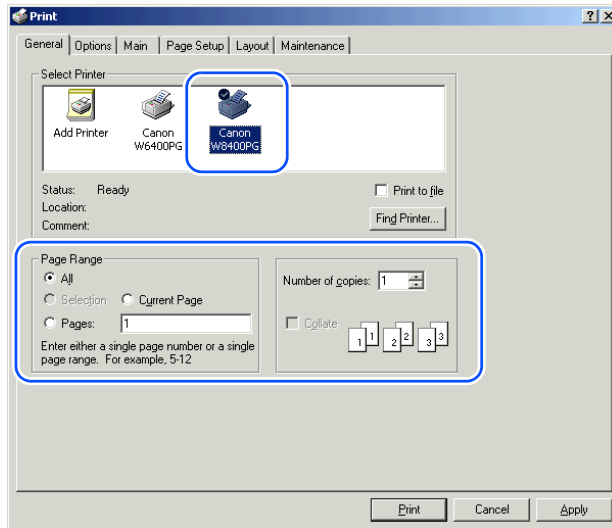
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

On the **Main** and **Page Setup** sheets, select the Media Type, Print Quality, Color Settings, and Scaling settings for the print job.




The print job starts.

Important

- As soon as each sheet prints, remove it from the output stacker.

Note

- If the printer estimates that there is not enough ink available to do a very long print or print several copies of the same document, it will issue the **Not Enough Ink** alert. If you see this message, replace the ink tank that is low on ink. If you reinstall an ink tank that is nearly out of ink, this may also cause the print quality to deteriorate. Do not re-install an ink tank if the  mark is displayed in the ink supply level display.

Printing from a Macintosh

To print a job from a Macintosh software application, first select the printer then use the **Print** command in the **File** menu.

Important

- Before you start a print job on the computer, close any software applications running in the background. Another program running in the background could break the flow of print data and temporarily stop the printer or cause poor print quality.

Note

- For more details about how to use the printer driver, please refer to the online Help of the printer driver.

■ Selecting a Printer

● For Mac OS 8.6/9.x

If you are using Mac OS 8.6 or Mac OS 9.x, select the printer with the Chooser. This printer will not be displayed in the list if it is not switched on, or if the printer cable is disconnected. Start the print job after you confirm that the printer is in working order.

Note

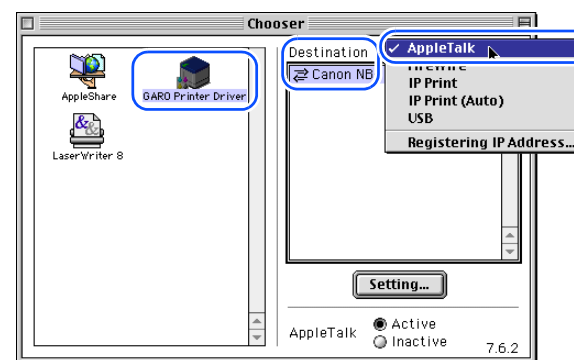
- You may not be able to share the printer with a USB connection. In this case, connect the printer directly to the computer through the USB or IEEE1394 port (optional). If you want to share the printer, print from a Windows computer.

1 From the Apple menu, select **Chooser**.



2 Click the **GARO Printer Driver** icon from the list on the left, select the connection method from the **Destination** field, then select the name of the printer from the list on the right.

Select the appropriate setting for the output destination: **USB** for a USB connection, **FireWire** for a IEEE1394 connection, or **AppleTalk**, **IP Print** or **IP Print (Auto)** for a network connection.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

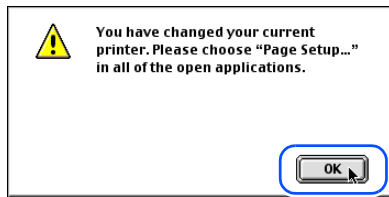
Contents

Index

Important

- If the printer is connected to a network, make sure that **Active** is selected for **AppleTalk**.
- The AppleTalk setting on network interface card used with this printer is disabled when the card is shipped. On the printer operation panel, select **Interface Setup**, then select **AppleTalk**, and then select **On**. (→ P.5-30)
- For an IP print connection, register the IP address under **Registering IP Address...** and then select the name of the printer under **IP Print**.

- 3** Close the **Chooser** window and click the **OK** button in the message window.



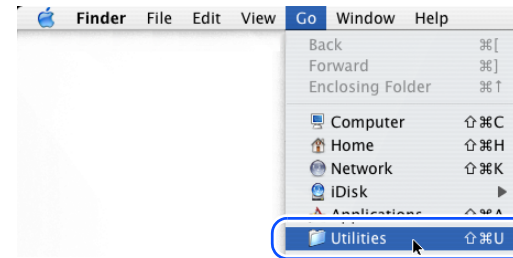
This completes the selection of the printer.

● Mac OS X

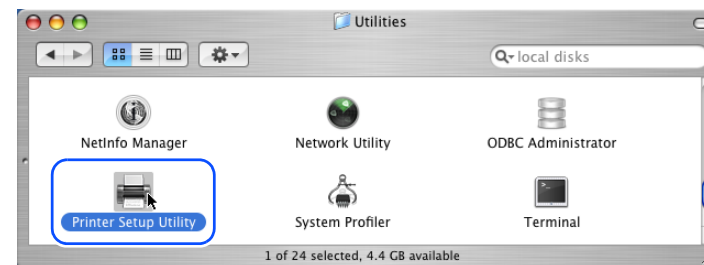
If you are using Mac OS X, use the **Printer Setup Utility** to select the printer from the Print Center. This printer will not be displayed in the list if it is not switched on, or if the printer cable is disconnected. Start the print job after you confirm that the printer is in working order.

The example here describes Mac OS X Ver. 10.3. The icon name and graphic may be different for other versions.

- 1** Select Finder, then select **Utilities** or **Applications** from the **Go** menu.



- 2** Open the **Utilities** folder then open **Printer Setup Utility**.

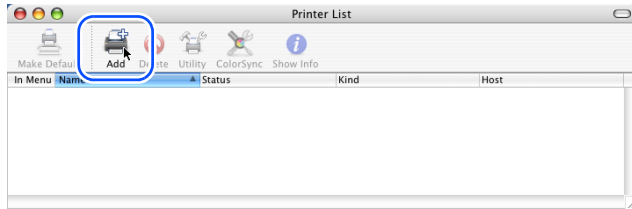
Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

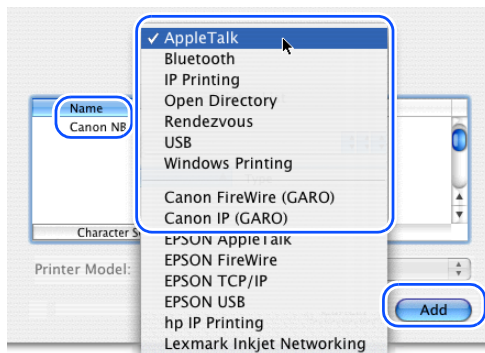
3 If the name of the printer is not in the **Printer List**, click the **Add** icon.

If the printer is already displayed, go to [Step 4](#).



4 In the connection menu select the connection destination for the printer, select the name of the printer from the list, then click the **Add** button.

Select the appropriate setting for the connection destination: **USB** for a USB connection, **Canon FireWire (GARO)** for a IEEE1394 connection, or **Canon IP (GARO)**, Zeroconf or **AppleTalk** for a network connection.



Important

- For the AppleTalk connection, confirm these settings: **Network** on the **System Preferences**, next select **Network**, and **AppleTalk**, and then select **Make AppleTalk Active**.
- The AppleTalk setting on the network interface card used with this printer is disabled when the card is shipped. On the printer operation panel, select **Interface Setup, AppleTalk**, and **On**. (→ [P.5-30](#))

Note

- This printer can be connected and operated with Zeroconf of Mac OS X. If you are using Mac OS X Ver. 10.2.5 or later with a network connection using Zeroconf functions selected on the Connection menu, then you can select the name of this printer. Further, if using Mac OS 8.6 or 9.x, if the Canon imagePROGRAF printer driver for Macintosh has been installed, connection can be made using the Zeroconf function.
- This printer can be connected and operated with Canon IP (GARO). Select **Canon IP (GARO)** on the Connection menu, and then enter the IP address and printer name of this printer.
- If the name of the printer is not displayed, check the printer connection cable, and make sure that the printer and network device are both switched on.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

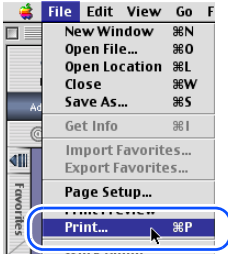
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

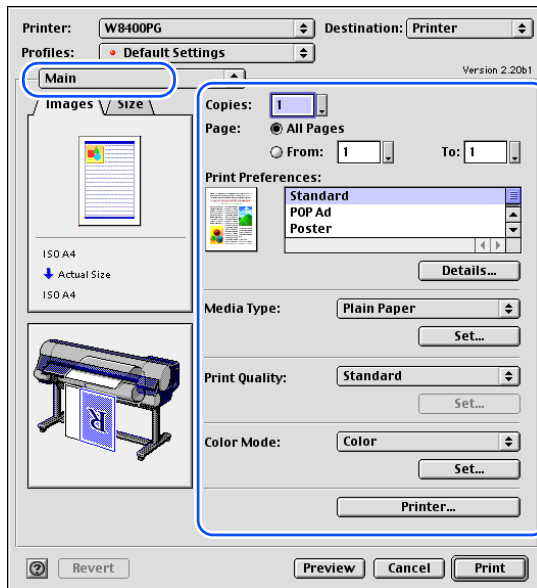
■ Print Operations

- 1 In the software application select **Print** from the **File** menu.



The **Print** window appears.

- 2 Check the **Printer** box and make sure that the name of the printer is displayed. On the **Main** panel select the settings for the **Page**, number of **Copies**, **Media Type**, **Print Quality**, **Color Mode** and other settings.



If you are using Mac OS X, set the **Copies & Pages** panel and the **Main** panel.

- 3 Click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.

Important

- As soon as each sheet prints, remove it from the output stacker.

Note

- Before you start printing a long sheet or multiple copies, you should always check the ink supply levels of the ink tanks. To confirm the ink supply level of the ink tanks, click the **Printer...** button on the **Main** panel to display the levels. If you reinstall an ink tank that is nearly out of ink, the print quality may deteriorate. Do not re-install an ink tank is the mark is displayed in the ink supply level display.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

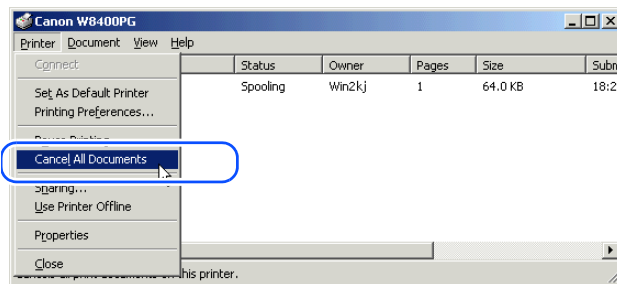
Canceling a Print Job

Follow this procedure to cancel a print job.

Canceling a Print Job from Windows

- 1 In the **Printers** folder, double-click the icon for the printer.
- 2 Click the name of the job that you want to cancel, click **Printer** in the menu bar and select **Cancel All Documents**.

The print job is deleted.

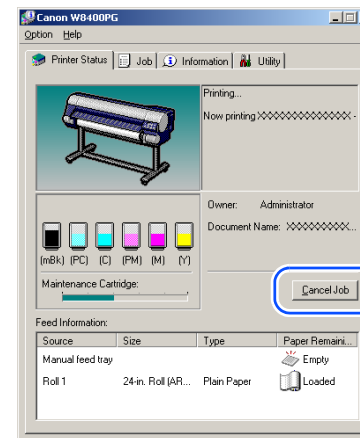


- 3 If the print in progress display on the printer does not go off and Online lamp is flashing, press and hold the **Stop/Eject** button for 1 sec.



The print job in progress is canceled.

- 4 If the Data lamp is OFF and you cannot cancel the print job, click and open the GARO Status Monitor icon on the right end of the taskbar, and then on the **Printer Status** sheet, select the print job that you want to cancel, then press the **Cancel Job** button.



Note

- Individual jobs that are currently printing and queued jobs can also be canceled by selecting the job using the **Job** sheet.

- 5 If the GARO Status Monitor is not installed, hold down the **Power** button for 1 second or more until the **Shut Down..** is displayed, then switch the printer power off and on.

All of the print data currently processing in the printer is lost after the printer is switched off. Any print job required must be restarted.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Canceling a Print Job from Macintosh

The procedure to cancel a print job varies depending on whether the job is printing in the background or the foreground.

Note

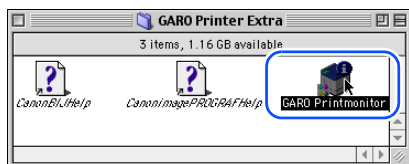
- On Mac OS X all jobs print in the background. Printing cannot be done in the foreground.

■ Canceling a Background Print Job

During background printing you can check the status of print jobs and cancel them. Follow this procedure to cancel a print job.

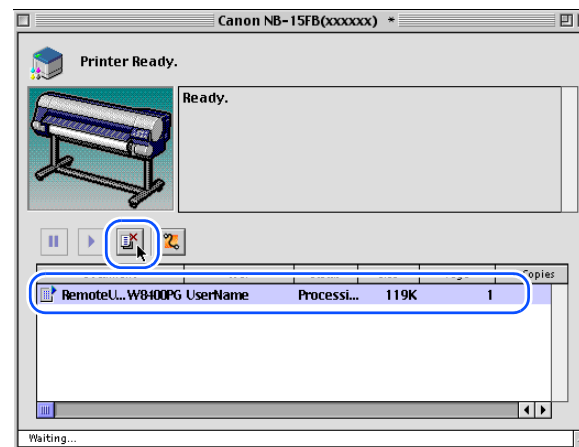
- For Mac OS 8.6/9.x

- 1** In the **GARO Printer Extra** folder installed on the hard disk, click the **GARO Printmonitor** icon.



- 3** With the job selected for deletion, click the **Printing Paused** button again.

- 2** Select the print job to cancel, then click the **Printing Paused** button.



The printer queue (print jobs being processed) will be cancelled, and the printer status will change from **sending** to **waiting**. When the print queue is cancelled, a red mark will be displayed on the right.

Select a job against which the [●] mark is displayed next to the **Job** icon when the printer is in **waiting** mode, and then press the **Printing Paused** button to delete the job. Perform this operation from [Step 4](#).

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

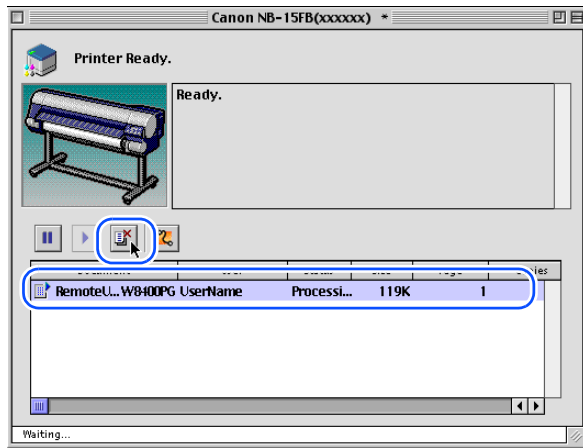
Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

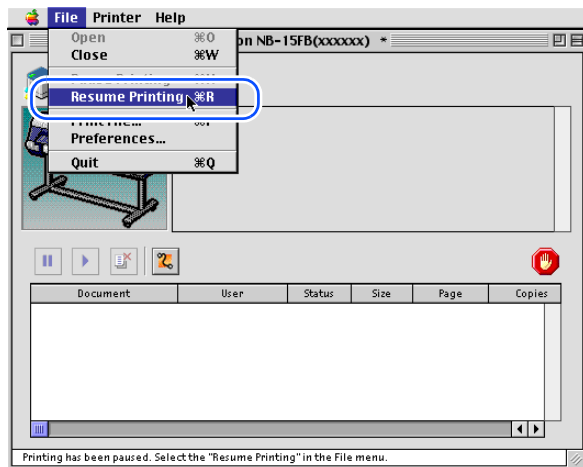
Contents

Index



The print job is deleted.

4 Select **Resume Printing** from the **File** menu.

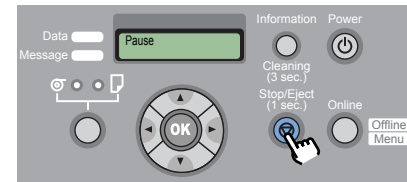


The printer re-enters print mode and is ready for operation.

Important

- After you have paused printing, you must select **Resume Printing**. Printing cannot be done while the print queue is paused (with the red dot displayed).

5 If the print in progress display on the printer does not go off and online lamp is flashing, press and hold the **Stop/Eject** button for 1 sec.



The print job in progress is canceled.

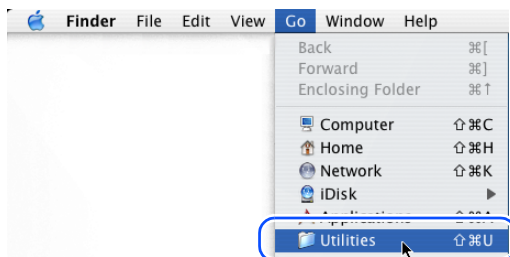
6 If the printer Data lamp turns OFF and you cannot cancel the print job, hold down the **Power** button for 1 second or more until **Shut Down..** is displayed, and then release the button. Next, turn the printer OFF and then ON again.

All of the print data currently processing in the printer is lost after the printer is switched off. Restart any print jobs that you need.

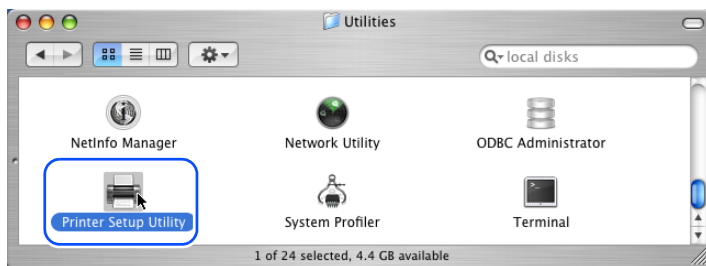
● Mac OS X

The example here describes Mac OS X Ver. 10.3. The icon name and graphic may be different for other versions.

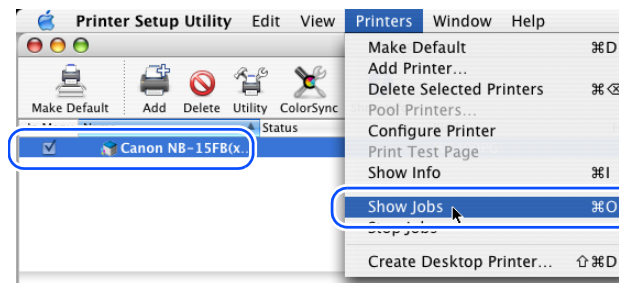
1 Select **Finder**, then select **Utilities** or **Applications** from the **Go** menu.



2 Open the **Utilities** folder then open **Printer Setup Utility**.

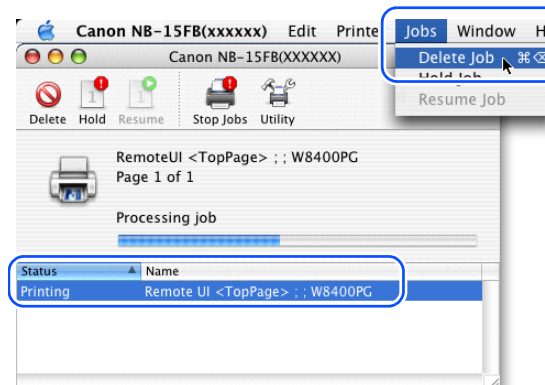


3 Select the name of the printer from the **Printer List**, then select **Show Jobs** from the **Printers** menu.



The queue list for the printer is displayed.

4 Select the print job to cancel, then select **Delete Job** from the **Jobs** menu.



The print job in progress is canceled.

Important

- A print job that has already been sent to the printer cannot be canceled. If you want to cancel other remaining jobs, cancel them with the GARO Printmonitor.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- Select the name of the printer in the **Printer Setup Utility**, and then click the Set icon to open the remote UI for a USB, FireWire, AppleTalk, Canon IP (GARO), GARO Printmonitor, or Zeroconf connection. Select the print job to delete, then click the **Print Cancel** button to cancel the job.

- 5** If the print in progress display on the printer does not go off and online lamp is flashing, press and hold the **Stop/Eject** button for 1 sec.



The print job in progress is canceled.

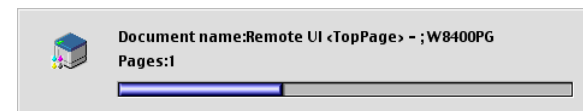
- 6** If the printer **Data** lamp turns OFF and you cannot cancel the print job, hold down the **Power** button for 1 second or more until **Shut Down..** is displayed, and then release the button. Next, turn the printer OFF and then ON again.

All of the print data currently processing in the printer is lost after the printer is switched off. Restart any print jobs that you need.

■ Canceling a Foreground Print Job

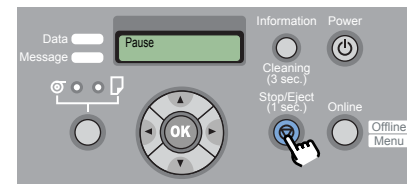
If you are printing in the foreground with Mac OS 8.6/9.x, a print processing dialog box remains open while the job prints. Follow this procedure to cancel a print job.

- 1** When the print-in-progress dialog box opens, press and hold down the Command key and press the period [.] key.



The print job is canceled.

- 2** If the print in progress display on the printer does not go off and online lamp is flashing, press and hold the **Stop/Eject** button for 1 sec.



The print job in progress is canceled.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 3** If the printer Data lamp turns OFF and you cannot cancel the print job, hold down the **Power** button for 1 second or more until **Shut Down..** is displayed, and then release the button. Next, turn the printer OFF and then ON again.



All of the print data currently processing in the printer is lost after the printer is turned OFF. Restart any print jobs that you need.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

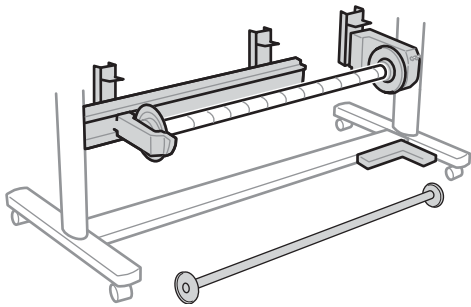
Options

The following options are provided for this printer.

■ Media Take-up Unit

Printed media can be automatically spooled when you are using roll media. This is convenient for printing long prints or performing continuous printing.

- Media Take-up Unit TU-04



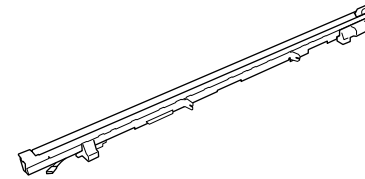
Note

- Refer to the “Media Take-up Unit Setup Guide” binding to the Media Take-up Unit for the installation.
- Refer to the “Using the Media Take-up Unit” (→ P.2-46) for the Media Take-up Unit usage.

■ Cutter Unit

This is a high-performance cutter blade with long service life that can cut more types of media than the flat blade, which is mounted as standard.

- Cutter Unit CU-04



Note

- Refer to “Replacing Optional Cutter Blades (Round Cutters)” (→ P.4-30) or the “Round Blade Cutter Unit Setup Guide” binding to the Cutter Unit for the installation.
- Refer to the “Media Type” (→ P.2-4) for the available paper type with the Cutter Unit.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

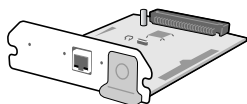
Contents

Index

■ Network Interface Expansion Board

The interface board that allows you to add a LAN board.

- Canon Network Interface Board NB-15FB



Printers sold in the U.S.A. are shipped with the Network board installed as a standard item (not an option).

■ IEEE1394 Expansion Board

This board provides the IEEE1394 (FireWire) interface.

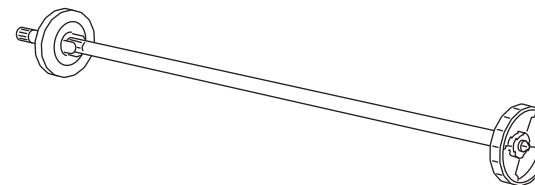
- IEEE1394 Expansion Board EB-04



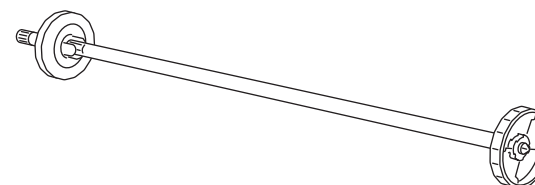
■ Roll Holder Sets

This set contains the roll holder and holder stoppers. If you need different types of media and different widths, you should keep multiple sets available and ready to use. Two types are available: 2 inch (provided on the printer) and 3 inch.

- Roll Holder Set (For 2 inch Tubes) RH2-42



- Roll Holder Set (For 3 inch Tubes) RH3-42



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Consumables

The following consumables are available for this printer.
You should have consumables on hand before they run out. Purchase consumables at the dealer where you purchased the printer.

■ Print Media

The following types of media can be used with this printer.

● Type

Photo:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Glossy Photo Paper ● Semi-Glossy Photo Paper ● Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper ● Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper
Art:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Premium Matte Paper ● Fine Art Photo ● Fine Art Heavyweight Photo ● Fine Art Textured ● Canvas Matte ● Canvas Semi-Glossy ● Japanese Paper Washi
Signs:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Synthetic Paper ● Adhesive Synthetic Paper ● Backlit Film ● Flame-Resistant Cloth ● Fabric Banner
CAD:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● CAD Plain Paper ● CAD Tracing Paper ● CAD Translucent Matte Film ● CAD Clear film

Proof:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Proofing paper ● Newsprint for Proofing
Generic:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Plain Paper ● Plain Paper (High Quality) ● Recycled Coated Paper ● Coated Paper ● Heavyweight Coated Paper ● Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper ● Colored Coated Paper

● Roll Media Sizes

Width:	44 inch (1117.6 mm), 42 inch (1066.8 mm), JIS B0 (1030.0 mm), ISO A0 (841.0 mm), 36 inch (914.4 mm), 30 inch (762.0 mm), 24 inch (609.6 mm), ISO A1 (594.0 mm), JIS B2 (515.0 mm), ISO A2 (420.0 mm), 16 inch (406.4 mm), 14 inch (355.6 mm), ISO A3 (297.0 mm), 10 inch (254.0 mm)
Roll diameter:	150 mm max.
Media core inside diameter:	2 inch, 3 inch
Print surface:	Front side

● Cut Sheets

Sizes: Photo 6P (203.2 x 254.0 mm) to poster (44 x 62 inch) (1117.6 x 1574.8 mm)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index



Note

- For more details about media sizes, please refer to [“Media You Can Use”](#). (→ P.2-2)
- The quality of media varies with the manufacturer. To purchase print media, contact the dealer where you purchased the printer.

■ Ink Tanks

The following seven types of ink tanks are used in this printer.

- Ink Tanks for the W8400



Yellow Ink	BCI-1441Y
Magenta Ink	BCI-1421M
Photo Magenta Ink	BCI-1421PM
Cyan Ink	BCI-1421C
Photo Cyan Ink	BCI-1421PC
Photo Black Ink	BCI-1421BK
Matte Black Ink	BCI-1441MBK



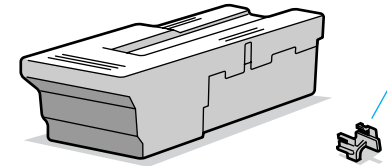
Note

- For more details about how to replace the ink tanks, see [“Replacing Ink Tanks”](#). (→ P.4-2)
- To differentiate Black Ink BCI-1431BK from Matte Black Ink, “Photo Black Ink” will be used hereinafter.

■ Maintenance Cartridge

The replaceable maintenance cartridge number is as follows. A shaft cleaner (a) is included with the maintenance cartridge.

- Maintenance Cartridge MC-04



Note

- For more details about how to replace the maintenance cartridge, see [“Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge”](#). (→ P.4-14)

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

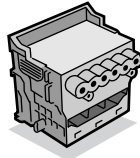
Contents

Index

■ Printhead

The product number of the printhead that can be used on the printer is:

- Printhead BC-1350



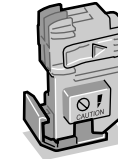
Note

- For more details about how to replace the printhead, see [“Replacing the Printhead”](#). (→ P.4-21)

■ Cutter Blade

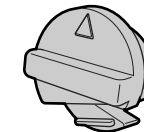
The product number of the cutter blade that can be used on the printer is:

- Cutter Blade CT-02



Note

- For more details about how to replace the cutter blade, see [“Replacing Standard Cutter Blades \(Flat Cutters\)”](#). (→ P.4-27)
- Cutter Blade CT-04



Note

- For replacing the cutter blades, refer to [“Replacing Optional Cutter Blades \(Round Cutters\)”](#). (→ P.4-30)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Specifications

W8400	
Print Features	
Print Method	Serial Bubble Jet
Print Modes	Highest (Custom Settings), High, Standard, Draft
Max. Resolution	2400 x 1200 dpi
Interface	
USB Interface (USB 2.0 Standard)	1 (If the computer port, operating system, or USB cable does not support USB 2.0 High Speed Mode, you will not be able to use High Speed Mode.)* ¹
Network Interface (10base-T/100base-TX)	Option* ²
IEEE1394 Interface (IEEE1394.a standard)	Option* ²
Interface Connector	USB Interface: USB Standard Series B Receptacle USB Interface Recommended Printer Cable: Material: AWG28 or above Type: Twisted-pair sealed cable (high speed mode compliant) Length: 5.0 m max. Connector: USB Standard Series B Plug
	IEEE1394 Interface (option): IEEE1394-1995 Standard 6-pin (without feed) IEEE1394 Interface Recommended Printer Cable: Material: AWG28 (signal) AWG22 (power) or later Type: Dual twisted pair shielded cable (100, 200, 400 Mbps mode compliant) Length: 4.5 m max. Connector: IEEE1394-1995 Compliant 6-pin
Printhead	Replacement Printhead BC-1350
Resolution	1200 dpi (600 dpi x 2 lines)
Number of nozzles	1280 nozzles per color x 6 colors

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

W8400	
Ink Tanks	
Yellow Ink	Replacement Ink Tank BCI-1441Y
Magenta Ink	Replacement Ink Tank BCI-1421M
Photo Magenta Ink	Replacement Ink Tank BCI-1421PM
Cyan Ink	Replacement Ink Tank BCI-1421C
Photo Cyan Ink	Replacement Ink Tank BCI-1421PC
Photo Black Ink *3	Replacement Ink Tank BCI-1421BK
Matte Black Ink *3	Replacement Ink Tank BCI-1441MBK
Ink type	Pigment ink
Ink tank capacity	330 ml per color
Print Media	
Media Width	Range: 203.2 min. to 1,117.6 mm max.
Maximum length	Roll media: 18 m, Cut sheet: 1600 mm
Thickness	70 to 800 μm
Type	Plain Paper, CAD Plain Paper, Plain Paper (High Quality), Recycled Coated Paper, Coated Paper, Heavy Coated Paper, Premium Matte Paper, Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper, Photo Glossy Paper, Photo Semi-Glossy Paper, Heavyweight Glossy Paper, Heavyweight Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, Synthetic Paper, Adhesive Synthetic Paper, Back Light Film, Flame Resistant Cloth, Fabric Banner, Proofing Paper, Newsprint for Proof*4, Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas Matte, Canvas Semi-Glossy, Japanese Washi Paper, Colored Coated Paper, CAD Tracing Paper, CAD Translucent Matte Film, CAD Clear Film, Special 1 to 5
Media Size and Print Area *5	<p>Normal Size: Printable Area "Roll Media" Top 5 mm, Bottom 5 mm, Left/Right: 5 mm "Cut Sheet" Top 5 mm, Bottom 23 mm, Left/Right: 5 mm</p> <p>Recommended Print Area "Roll Media and Cut Sheet" Top 20mm, Bottom 23mm, Left/Right: 5mm</p> <p>Borderless Size: Printable Area "Roll Media" Top 0 mm, Bottom 0 mm, Left/Right: 0 mm</p> <p>Oversize*6: "Roll Media, Cut Sheet" Top 0 mm, Bottom 0 mm, Left/Right: 0 mm</p>
Compatible Borderless Media	254.0 mm, 355.6 mm, 406.4 mm, 515.0 mm, 594.0 mm, 609.6 mm, 841.0mm, 914.4mm, 1030.0mm, 1066.8mm Media types: Heavy Coated Paper, Premium Matte Paper, Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper, Photo Glossy Paper, Photo Semi-Glossy Paper, Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas Matte, Flame Resistant Cloth, Fabric Banner, Special 1-5
Output Stacker Capacity	1 sheet
Main Unit	
Power source	AC 100 V to 240 V, 1.6 A, 50/60 Hz

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

W8400	
Power consumption	Max. 160 W ^{*7} (same as using Network Interface Board) Sleep Mode: 100-115V: Less than 6W (same as using Network Interface Board) 220-240V: Less than 9W Power off : Less than 1 W ^{*8}
Noise (Operation)	Approximately 54 dB (A) or less (less than 6.9 Bels)
Ideal operating environment	15 °C to 30 °C (59 ~ 86 °F), 10% to 80% RH with no condensation
Operating Environment	5 °C to 35 °C (41 ~ 95 °F), 10% to 90% RH with no condensation
Dimensions (w x d x h)	
Printer only	1642 mm x 715 mm x 478 mm
Printer + Stand	1642 mm x 972 mm x 1075 mm
Weight (including printhead, ink tanks)	
Printer only	Approx. 80 kg
Printer + Stand	Approx. 98 kg

*1. If using a USB 2.0 interface in Hi-Speed mode, the following environment is required.

- Computer: USB 2.0 Hi-Speed-compatible
- OS: Windows Server 2003/Windows XP/Windows 2000/Mac OS X v10.3.3 or later
- USB2.0 driver: Microsoft USB 2.0 driver (The Microsoft USB 2.0 driver can be obtained using Windows Update, or from the Service Pack.)
- USB cable: USB 2.0-authorized cable
- USB 2.0 interfaces whose operations have been approved by Cannon (i.e., Microsoft OS standard USB drivers):
 - Adaptec USB 2.0 expansion card: USB2CONNECT3100
 - Adaptec USB 2.0 expansion card: USB2CONNECT5100
 - Adaptec USB 2.0 expansion card: USB2CONNECT2000LP
 - Intel: 845G chip set
 - Sis: SiS740 chip set

For problems concerning the chip sets described above, consult the relevant computer manufacturer.

- *2. Either a network interface port or an IEEE1394 board can be mounted. Printers sold in the U.S.A. are shipped with the Network board installed as a standard item (not an option).
- *3. Either a photo black ink or matte black ink can be mounted.
- *4. If printing to Newsprint for Proof, use the RIP software (sold separately).
- *5. **Borderless Size** and **Oversize** may not be able to be printed, depending on the media type and size. Further, depending on the paper type, **Borderless Size** may be at the left and right edges only.
- *6. If oversize has been selected, set media 10 mm min. wider than the media size selected, and set the roll height 10 mm min. higher than the roll media, or 28 mm min. higher than the cut sheet.
- *7. If an option board has been mounted, this may be different.
- *8. A considerable amount of power is consumed even when the power supply has been turned OFF. To completely eliminate power consumption, remove the power supply plug from the outlet.

- These specifications are subject to change for improvements.
- The above specifications may vary for different operating environments.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Basic Environmental Performance

W8400	
Printer	
Power Consumption (Operation)	
Standby Power	100-115V: Less than 6W (same as using Network Interface Board) 220-240V: Less than 9W
Power supply OFF (with power plug connected)	Less than 1 W
Power Source Efficiency	
Printer Weight	Approx. 80 kg
Dimensions (w x d x h)	1642 mm x 715 mm x 478 mm
Recycling	Exterior covers are technically certified as fully recyclable.
Product Safety	
Content of Harmful Materials	Total Configuration: No special unburnable bromide materials (PBB, PBDE) used.
	External Cover Plastic: No heavy metals (Pb, Hg, Cr (VI), Cd) or Halogen unburnable materials used.
Noise (Operation)	Approximately 54 dB (A) or less (less than 6.9 Bels)
External Cover Material	
Content of Heavy Metals (Pb, Hg, Cr (VI), Cd)	Not used (Packing Material)
Recycling	All containers, packing material recyclable (from April, 2004)
Applicable Standards	International Energy Star Program, VCCI (Class B)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Chapter 2 Using Various Media

You can print the items that have been checked.

Media You Can Use	2-2
The Suitable Black Ink for Media	2-2
Paper Type	2-4
Media Size	2-20
Media Type Sizes and Print Area	2-22
Handling Paper and Other Print Media	2-27
Printing with Rolls Media	2-28
Loading Roll Media	2-28
Removing a Roll	2-35
Printing with Cut Sheets	2-38
Loading Cut Sheets	2-38
Removing a Cut Sheet	2-42
Change the height of the printhead	2-43
Changing Printhead Height	2-43
Aligning the Printhead	2-45
Changing Printhead Height Again	2-45
Using the Media Take-up Unit	2-46
Settings for Using the Media Take-up Unit	2-47
Attaching Roll Media	2-47
Removing Media that Has Finished Printing	2-53
Settings to Not Use the Media Take-up Unit	2-56

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Media You Can Use

The printer is compatible with various paper types and sizes. The following types of media can be used with this printer.

Important

- Depending on the media, it may take considerable time for the ink to dry. Wait until the ink has dried before removing the printed media.
- With some print media, the hue of some colors may change slightly when the ink on the surface of the media has dried completely.

Note

- For details about how to handle and store print media, please refer to the instructions provided with the packet.

The Suitable Black Ink for Media

You can select either photo black ink or matte black ink as the printer black ink to use. The two types of black ink differ in their suitability for different media types, and in their characteristics. Carefully examine the print frequency by media type and the print application before selecting the type of black ink to use.

Caution

- If you print with the black ink that is not suited to the type of media, this can cause unsatisfactory results in printing and foul the media or printer with ink.

Important

- To switch the type of black ink, execute **ChangeBkInkType** on the printer operation panel and follow the instructions displayed. You can switch between the types of black ink, but please remember that every time you switch the black ink tanks the printer consumes about 55 ml of black ink and about 15 ml of the colored inks in total. (→ P.4-48)

■ Black Ink Types and Characteristics

- **Photo Black (Bk) Ink (BCI-1421Bk)**
This ink has excellent gloss and black density for glossy media and proof media. Nearly all types of media can be printed, including glossy media.
- **Matte Black (MBk) Ink (BCI-1441MBk)**
This ink has excellent black density for standard paper, fine art media, and matte media. It cannot be used for glossy media.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Black Ink Characteristics

Print Application	Media Type	Usable Ink Types	
		Photo Black	Matte Black
Photo	Glossy Photo Paper	◎	×
	Semi-Glossy Photo Paper		
	Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper		
	Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper		
Proof	Proofing Paper	◎	×
	Newsprint for Proofing	×	◎
Generic	Plain Paper	○	◎
	Plain Paper (High Quality)		
	Recycled Coated Paper		
	Coated Paper		
	Heavyweight Coated Paper		
	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper		
Art	Premium Matte Paper	○	◎
	Fine Art Photo		
	Fine Art Heavyweight Photo		
	Fine Art Textured		
	Canvas Matte		
	Canvas Semi-Glossy		
	Japanese Paper Washi		
Signs	Synthetic Paper	○	◎
	Adhesive Synthetic Paper		
	Backlit Film		
	Flame-Resistant Cloth		
	Fabric Banner		
CAD	CAD Plain Paper	○	◎
	CAD Tracing Paper		
	CAD Translucent Matte Film		
	CAD Clear film	◎	○

◎: Recommended ink ○: Usable ink ×: Unusable ink

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Paper Type

This section explains the media that can be used with the printer. Consult the dealer where you purchased the printer for new information regarding the media.

The following items are described in the tables.



- Media types with the “ * ” mark are products set as Canon recommended paper.
- If using media types other than Canon-recommended paper, refer to the enclosed manual, and then consult the paper manufacturer.
- For detailed information concerning media types that are compatible with this printer, refer to the “Media Guide” enclosed with the printer.

■ Media Type

Characteristics	Describes the characteristics of each media.	
Print Application	Describes print jobs best suited for media.	
Display	Indoors	○: Indoor display possible ×: Indoor display not possible
	Outdoors	○: Indoor display possible ×: Indoor display not possible * If displaying outdoors, use laminate processing.
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	◎: Recommended ○: Possible ×: Not possible
	Matte Black	◎: Recommended ○: Possible ×: Not possible

Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Describes the Media Type setting in the printer driver.
	Roll Paper Width	The width of pure, commercial printing media.
	Borderless	○: Borderless printing possible △: Borderless printing is possible only with optional cutter ×: Borderless printing not possible
	Auto Cut	○: Auto Cut Possible △: Possible only with optional cutter
Operation panel function	Media Type	Name of the media type to appear on the operation panel display
Printhead Optimum Height	L: Low position M: Center position (Standard) H: High position * Press the Information button to display the printhead optimum height.	
Media Take-up Unit	○: Possible ×: Not possible	
Comments	Enter special notes and precautions.	

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Plain Paper*

Characteristics	This inkjet media is highly economical. It can be used freely in monochrome prints depending on the format, and color prints such as research presentations, etc. Due to the low cost, this media can also be used for test prints.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Plain Paper
	Roll Paper Width	36 inch, 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	Plain Paper
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	×	
Comments	You can use standard copy machine cut sheets (64 to 105 g/m ²) in place of plain paper with the printer.	

■ CAD Plain Paper*

Characteristics	This inkjet media is highly economical.	
Print Application	CAD	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	CAD Plain Paper
	Roll Paper Width	36 inch, 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	CAD Plain Paper
Printhead Optimum Height	L	
Media Take-up Unit	×	
Comments		

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Plain Paper (High Quality)*

Characteristics	It is a plain paper that is comparatively thick and with good whiteness.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Plain Paper (High Quality)
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	Plain Paper HQ
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	×	
Comments		

■ Recycled Coated Paper

Characteristics	Thin coated paper. Ideal for outputting presentation data, path diagrams, maps, and line drawings.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Recycled Coated Paper
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	Recycled Coated
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments		

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Coated Paper*

Characteristics	Thin coated paper. Ideal for outputting presentation data, path diagrams, maps, and line drawings.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Coated Paper
	Roll Paper Width	36 inch, 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	Coated Paper
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments		

■ Heavyweight Coated Paper*

Characteristics	Coated paper based on thick paper. Fine printing of full color images that are mostly graphics can be performed. Enables various uses, such as storefront posters and presentation data.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Heavyweight Coated Paper
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, 24 inch, A0, A1, B2
	Borderless Printing	○
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	HW Coated
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments		

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Premium Matte Paper

Characteristics	High-quality ultraheavyweight matte coated paper, the thickest of all Canon's genuine Matte Papers, which supports the widest range of color reproduction. This paper offers a soft texture free of reflective glare for a tranquil feel. Suitable for wide-ranging applications from Photo/Fine Art to Materials for Display such as High-Quality Poster/POP.	
Print Application	Art	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Premium Matte Paper
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	△
	Auto Cut	△
Operation panel function	Media Type	Premium Matte
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	If using a standard cutter, cut manually after printing. (→ P.2-36) Borderless printing is to the right and left edges only when you use the standard cutter or optional round blade cutter.	

■ Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper

Characteristics	This is a thicker coated paper than ordinary thick coat, and use can be differentiated from thick coated paper due to differences in texture, with a feel when handled similar to textured paper.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	○
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	Ex HW Coated
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments		

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Glossy Photo Paper*

Characteristics	Glossy feeling similar to the photographic paper used with silver nitrate photographs. Suitable for high-quality photo images. Uses a resin coat process, so cockling (striations) due to ink absorption do not occur, and a flat finish can be assured.	
Print Application	Photo	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	◎
	Matte Black	×
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Glossy Photo Paper
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, 24 inch, 14 inch, 10 inch, A0, A1, B2
	Borderless Printing	○
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	Glossy Photo
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	Manually remove paper after cutting such as trimmed paper and pre-cut paper.	

■ Semi-Glossy Photo Paper*

Characteristics	A soft and settled finish is achieved with no sense of oiliness using white gloss to suppress reflection. As there is little reflection, this is suitable for display panels, presentation materials, point-of-purchase displays, etc.	
Print Application	Photo	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	◎
	Matte Black	×
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Semi-Glossy Photo Paper
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, 24 inch, 14 inch, 10 inch, A0, A1, B2
	Borderless Printing	○
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	Sem-Gl Photo
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	Manually remove paper after cutting such as trimmed paper and pre-cut paper.	

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper

Characteristics	Glossy feeling similar to the photographic paper used with silver nitrate photographs. Suitable for high-quality photo images. Uses a resin coat process, so striations due to ink absorption do not occur, and a flat finish can be assured. This is a thick type close in tactile sensation to argentite photos.	
Print Application	Photo	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	◎
	Matte Black	×
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper
	Roll Paper Width	44 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	○
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	HW Glossy Photo
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	Manually remove paper after cutting such as trimmed paper and pre-cut paper.	

■ Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper

Characteristics	A soft and settled finish is achieved with no sense of oiliness using white gloss to suppress reflection. As there is little reflection, this is suitable for display panels, presentation materials, point-of-purchase displays, etc. This is a thick type close in tactile sensation to argentite photos.	
Print Application	Photo	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	◎
	Matte Black	×
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper
	Roll Paper Width	44 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	○
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	HW SemiGI Photo
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	Manually remove paper after cutting such as trimmed paper and pre-cut paper.	

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Synthetic Paper*

Characteristics	This is a synthetic paper with excellent economy that uses polypropylene film suited to posters for display. If laminated, it can be displayed outdoors.	
Print Application	Signs	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Synthetic Paper
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	Syn. Paper
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	Manually remove paper after cutting such as trimmed paper and pre-cut paper.	

■ Adhesive Synthetic Paper*

Characteristics	This is an adhesive synthetic paper with excellent economy that uses polypropylene film suited to posters for display. If laminated, it can be displayed outdoors.	
Print Application	Signs	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Adhesive Synthetic Paper
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	△
Operation panel function	Media Type	Adh. Syn. Paper
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	Manually remove paper after cutting such as trimmed paper and pre-cut paper.	

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Backlit Film*

Characteristics	Prints on the rear surface of glossy translucent film so that the beauty of the printed images are brought out when illuminated from behind. Can be used for vivid displays and utility pole signboards both indoors and outdoors.	
Print Application	Signs	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Backlit Film
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	Backlit Film
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	Manually remove paper after cutting such as trimmed paper and pre-cut paper.	

■ Flame-Resistant Cloth

Characteristics	A cloth roll for indoor use, with excellent service life and flame-resistant effects. If used for banners and tapestries, etc., an atmospheric production can be achieved.	
Print Application	Signs	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Flame-Resistant Cloth
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	△
	Auto Cut	△
Operation panel function	Media Type	Flame-Res.Cloth
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	If using a standard cutter, cut manually after printing. (→ P.2-36) Borderless printing is to the right and left edges only when you use the standard cutter or optional round blade cutter.	

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Fabric Banner

Characteristics	A highly waterproof cloth for outdoor use, it can be displayed for short periods outdoors even without being laminated. Ideal for outdoor vertical banners, horizontal banners, and tapestries.	
Print Application	Signs	
Display	Indoors	×
	Outdoors	○
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Fabric Banner
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch
	Borderless Printing	△
	Auto Cut	△
Operation panel function	Media Type	Fabric Banner
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	If using a standard cutter, cut manually after printing. (→ P.2-36) Borderless printing is to the right and left edges only when you use the standard cutter or optional round blade cutter.	

■ Proofing Paper*

Characteristics	Covers the range of colors that can be reproduced by offset printing to give color tones close to offset printing results for proofing work. This is ideal for color proof output in print work, etc.	
Print Application	Proof	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	◎
	Matte Black	×
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Proofing Paper
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	Proofing paper
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments		

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Newsprint for Proofing

Characteristics	Ideal for newspaper proofing. Achieves a texture close to that of newspapers, with broad color recreation. There are main types of proofing paper for the three main newspapers in Japan.	
Print Application	Proof	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	×
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Newsprint for Proofing 1 ~ 3
	Roll Paper Width	A1
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	News Proof 1 News Proof 2 News Proof 3
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	×	
Comments	Requires the use of optional RIP software to print.	

■ Fine Art Photo

Characteristics	Art paper with high-quality images and a settled feeling from portraits and landscapes to digital works of art.	
Print Application	Art	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Fine Art Photo
	Roll Paper Width	44 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	△
	Auto Cut	△
Operation panel function	Media Type	Fine Art Photo
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	If using a standard cutter, cut manually after printing. (→ P.2-36) Borderless printing is to the right and left edges only when you use the standard cutter, and to all four edges only when you use the optional cutter blade.	

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Fine Art Heavyweight Photo*

Characteristics	Thick art paper with high-quality images and a settled feeling from portraits and landscapes to digital works of art.	
Print Application	Art	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Fine Art Heavyweight Photo
	Roll Paper Width	44 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	△
	Auto Cut	△
Operation panel function	Media Type	FneArt HW Photo,
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	If using a standard cutter, cut manually after printing. (→ P.2-36) Borderless printing is to the right and left edges only when you use the standard cutter, and to all four edges only when you use the optional cutter blade.	

■ Fine Art Textured*

Characteristics	Art paper with high-quality images and a settled feeling for landscapes and watercolors, etc..	
Print Application	Art	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Fine Art Textured
	Roll Paper Width	44 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	△
	Auto Cut	△
Operation panel function	Media Type	FineArt Txtr
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	If using a standard cutter, cut manually after printing. (→ P.2-36) Borderless printing is to the right and left edges only when you use the standard cutter, and to all four edges only when you use the optional cutter blade.	

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Canvas Matte

Characteristics	A matte cloth based on polyester fibers with a unique feel. This media is ideal for creating oil painting reproductions and digital works of art.	
Print Application	Art	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Canvas Matte
	Roll Paper Width	44 inch, 36 inch
	Borderless Printing	△
	Auto Cut	△
Operation panel function	Media Type	Canvas Matte
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments	Borderless printing is to the right and left edges only when you use the standard cutter, and to all four edges only when you use the optional cutter blade.	

■ Canvas Semi-Glossy

Characteristics	A matte cloth based on polyester fibers with a unique feel. This media is ideal for creating oil painting reproductions and digital works of art.	
Print Application	Art	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Canvas Semi-Glossy
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	△
Operation panel function	Media Type	Canvas Semi-Gl
Printhead Optimum Height	H	
Media Take-up Unit	×	
Comments	Manually remove paper after cutting such as trimmed paper and pre-cut paper.	

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Japanese Paper Washi

Characteristics	This media combines suitability for ink jet printing with the texture of Japanese Paper Washi. This media is suited to warm, settled productions such as watercolors, pen-and-ink drawings, Japanese-style images, and Japanese-style pop art, etc.	
Print Application	Art	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Japanese Paper Washi
	Roll Paper Width	42 inch, 36 inch, and 24 inch
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	JPN Paper Washi,
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	×	
Comments		

■ Colored Coated Paper

Characteristics	This media is ideal for pop art productions such as storefront price displays, etc. This is two-sided yellow coated paper, for great impact.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Colored Coated Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24 inch
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	Colored Coated
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Media Take-up Unit	○	
Comments		

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ CAD Tracing Paper

Characteristics	This is a tracing for color printing, which is ideal for CAD (line) drawings.	
Print Application	CAD	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	CAD Tracing Paper
	Roll Paper Width	36 inch, 24 inch, A0, A1
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	CAD Trace Paper
Printhead Optimum Height	L	
Media Take-up Unit	×	
Comments		

■ CAD Translucent Matte Film

Characteristics	This is a translucent film for CAD (line) drawings. It is ideal for highly accurate printing, such as master plans etc., and has excellent dimensional stability.	
Print Application	CAD	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	CAD Translucent Matte Film
	Roll Paper Width	36 inch, A0, A1
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation panel function	Media Type	CAD Matte Film
Printhead Optimum Height	L	
Media Take-up Unit	×	
Comments	Manually remove paper after cutting such as trimmed paper and pre-cut paper.	

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ CAD Clear film

Characteristics	A translucent film for CAD (line) drawings, it is mainly used for multiple overlapping diagrams.	
Print Application	CAD	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	◎
	Matte Black	○
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	CAD Clear film
	Roll Paper Width	36 inch
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	△
Operation panel function	Media Type	CAD Clear Film
Printhead Optimum Height	L	
Media Take-up Unit	×	
Comments	Manually remove paper after cutting such as trimmed paper and pre-cut paper.	

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Media Size

The following table lists the media sizes and feeding methods that can be used with this printer.

■ Roll Media

This table lists roll media with maximum diameters of 150 mm (5.1 in.) and media core inside diameters of 2 or 3 inches that can be used in this printer.

Width	Size Name in Printer Driver ^{*1}	Borderless Printing ^{*2}
Non-category 44" Width: 1,117.6 mm (44 in.)	Poster 44 x 62 inch	×
Non-category 42" Width: 1,066.8 mm (42 in.)	ARCH E1 Poster 42 x 60 inch	○
JIS B0 Width: 1,030.0 mm (40.55 in.)	JIS B0 JIS B1	○
Non-category 36" Width: 914.4 mm (36 in.)	ARCH E ARCH D	○
ISO A0 Width: 841.0 mm (33.11 in.)	ISO A0 ISO A1	○
Non-category 30" Width: 762.0 mm (30 in.)	Poster 30 x 40 inch Poster 20 x 30 inch	×
Non-category 24" Width: 609.6 mm (24 in.)	ARCH D ARCH C Complete Works (20 x 24 inch)	○
ISO A1 Width: 594.0 mm (23.39 in.)	ISO A1 ISO A2	○
JIS B2 Width: 515.0 mm (20.28 in.)	JIS B2 JIS B3	○

Width	Size Name in Printer Driver ^{*1}	Borderless Printing ^{*2}
ISO A2 Width: 420.0 mm (16.54 in.)	ISO A2 ISO A3	×
Non-category 16" Width: 406.4 mm (16 in.)	US Photo (16 x 20 inch)	○
Non-category 14" Width: 355.6 mm (14 in.)	14 x 17 ANSI Legal	○
ISO A3 Width: 297.0 mm (11.69 in.)	ISO A3 ISO A4	×
Non-category 10" Width: 254.0 mm (10 in.)	10 x 15 10 x 12 8 x 10	○

*1. Borderless printing is also possible using the user media settings for the paper widths described above.

*2. **Media Type** can be set to borderless printing for the following: Heavyweight Coated Paper, Premium Matte Paper, Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper, Glossy Photo Paper, Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper, Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas Matte, FlameResistant Cloth, Fabric Banner, Special 1 to 5. However, borderless printing for Premium Matte Paper, Flame-Resistant Cloth, Fabric Banner, Fine Art Photo with using standard cutter, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas Matte is to the right and left edges only.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Cut Sheet

Cut sheets up to 1,117.6 mm wide (44 inches) can be used.

Size (Width)	Dimensions
ISO A0	841.0 x 1189.0 mm (33.11 x 46.81 inch)
ISO A1	594.0 x 841.0 mm (23.39 x 33.11 inch)
ISO A2	420.0 x 594.0 mm (16.54 x 23.39 inch)
ISO A3+	329.0 x 483.0 mm (12.95 x 19.02 inch)
ISO A3	297.0 x 420.0 mm (11.69 x 16.54 inch)
ISO A4	210.0 x 297.0 mm (8.27 x 11.69 inch)
ISO B0	1000.0 x 1414.0 mm (39.37 x 55.67 inch)
ISO B1	707.0 x 1000.0 mm (27.83 x 39.37 inch)
ISO B2	500.0 x 707.0 mm (19.69 x 27.83 inch)
ISO B3	353.0 x 500.0 mm (13.90 x 19.69 inch)
ISO B4	250.0 x 353.0 mm (9.84 x 13.90 inch)
JIS B0	1030.0 x 1456.0 mm (40.55 x 57.32 inch)
JIS B1	728.0 x 1030.0 mm (28.66 x 40.55 inch)
JIS B2	515.0 x 728.0 mm (20.28 x 28.66 inch)
JIS B3	364.0 x 515.0 mm (14.33 x 20.28 inch)
JIS B4	257.0 x 364.0 mm (10.12 x 14.33 inch)
ANSI F	711.2 x 1060.0 mm (28 x 41.73 inch)
ANSI E	863.6 x 1117.6 mm (34 x 44 inch)
ANSI D	558.8 x 863.6 mm (22 x 34 inch)
ANSI C	431.8 x 558.8 mm (17 x 22 inch)
ANSI B	279.4 x 431.8 mm (11 x 17 inch)
ANSI B Super	330.2 x 482.6 mm (13 x 19 inch)
ANSI Letter	215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 inch)
ANSI Legal	215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 inch)
ARCH E	914.4 x 1219.2 mm (36 x 48 inch)
ARCH E1	762.0 x 1066.8 mm (30 x 42 inch)
ARCH E2	660.4 x 965.2 mm (26 x 38 inch)
ARCH E3	685.8 x 990.6 mm (27 x 39 inch)

Size (Width)	Dimensions
ARCH D	609.6 x 914.4 mm (24 x 36 inch)
ARCH C	457.2 x 609.6 mm (18 x 24 inch)
ARCH B	304.8 x 457.2 mm (12 x 18 inch)
ARCH A	228.6 x 304.8 mm (9 x 12 inch)
DIN C0	917.0 x 1297.0 mm (36.10 x 51.06 inch)
DIN C1	648.0 x 917.0 mm (25.51 x 36.10 inch)
DIN C2	458.0 x 648.0 mm (18.03 x 25.51 inch)
DIN C3	324.0 x 458.0 mm (12.76 x 18.03 inch)
DIN C4	229.0 x 324.0 mm (9.02 x 12.76 inch)
Poster 44 x 62 inches	1117.6 x 1574.8 mm (44 x 62 inch)
Poster 42 x 60 inches	1066.8 x 1524.0 mm (42 x 60 inch)
Poster 30 x 40 inches	762.0 x 1016.0 mm (30 x 40 inch)
Poster 20 x 30 inches	508.0 x 762.0 mm (20 x 30 inch)
Photo Full Size	508.0 x 609.6 mm (20 x 24 inch)
Photo Whole Sheet	457.2 x 558.8 mm (18 x 22 inch)
Photo 14 x 17	355.6 x 431.8 mm (14 x 17 inch)
Photo 10 x 15	254.0 x 381.0 mm (10 x 15 inch)
Photo 10 x 12	254.0 x 304.8 mm (10 x 12 inch)
Photo 8 x 10	203.2 x 254.0 mm (8 x 10 inch)
US Photo	406.4 x 508.0 mm (16 x 20 inch)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Media Type Sizes and Print Area

The printer is equipped with “borderless size” and “oversize” paper types in addition to the normal paper sizes. The printable area, the size of the paper that is actually loaded, and the range that that is actually printed varies between these types. Select the paper size according to your objective.

 Note

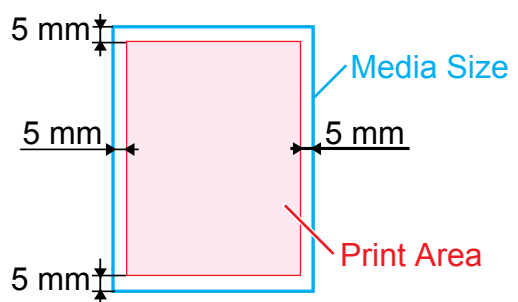
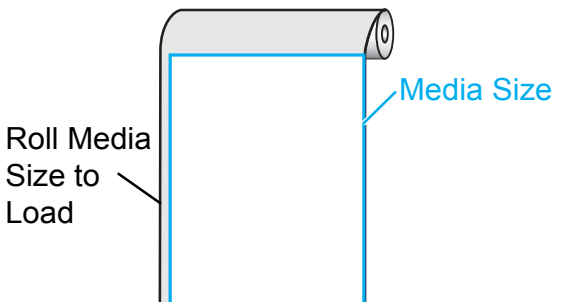
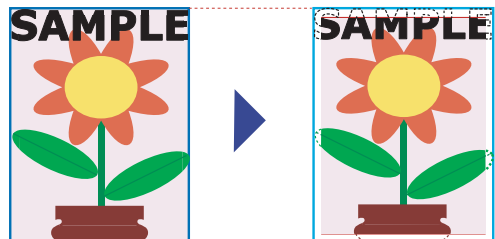
- To display the oversize, click the **Size Options** button on the **Page Setup** sheet, then select the **Oversize** of the **Display Series**.

■ Normal Size

Print results can be obtained for the same size as the paper size. All paper sizes and types can be printed. The resulting printouts have margins at the top, bottom, left, and right, and the image beyond these margins is discarded.

● Roll Media

Printable Paper Sizes	Width 44 inch, 42 inch, JIS B0, 36 inch, ISO A0, 30 inch, 24 inch, ISO A1, JIS B2, ISO A2, 16 inch, 14 inch, ISO A3, 10 inch (all fixed sizes), and user-set paper of the widths described above.
Printable Paper Types	All media types

Printable Area	<p>Printing possible inside the area 5 mm in from the top, bottom, left and right margins.</p> 
Media to Load	<p>Same size as the Media Size or wide roll paper.</p> 
Print Data and Results	<p>Data created the same size as Media Size.</p> 

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

● Cut Sheet

Printable Paper Sizes	All fixed sizes from poster 44 x 62 inch to photo 8 x 10, and user-defined paper sizes from 203.2 x 203.2 mm to 1117.6 x 1600 mm
Printable Paper Types	All media types
Printable Area	<p>Printing possible inside the area 5 mm in from the top, left, right and 23 mm from the bottom margins.</p>
Media to Load	<p>Data created the same size as cut sheet.</p>
Print Data and Results	<p>Data created the same size as Media Size.</p>

Important

- The print quality or the feed precision may deteriorate at the top margin of the media, or the printhead may scratch the surface of the print. Further, ink may adhere to the top and bottom edges. If the printhead scratches the media, the printer may be damaged. If the printhead scratches the media, raise the height of the printhead before printing. (→ P.2-43)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

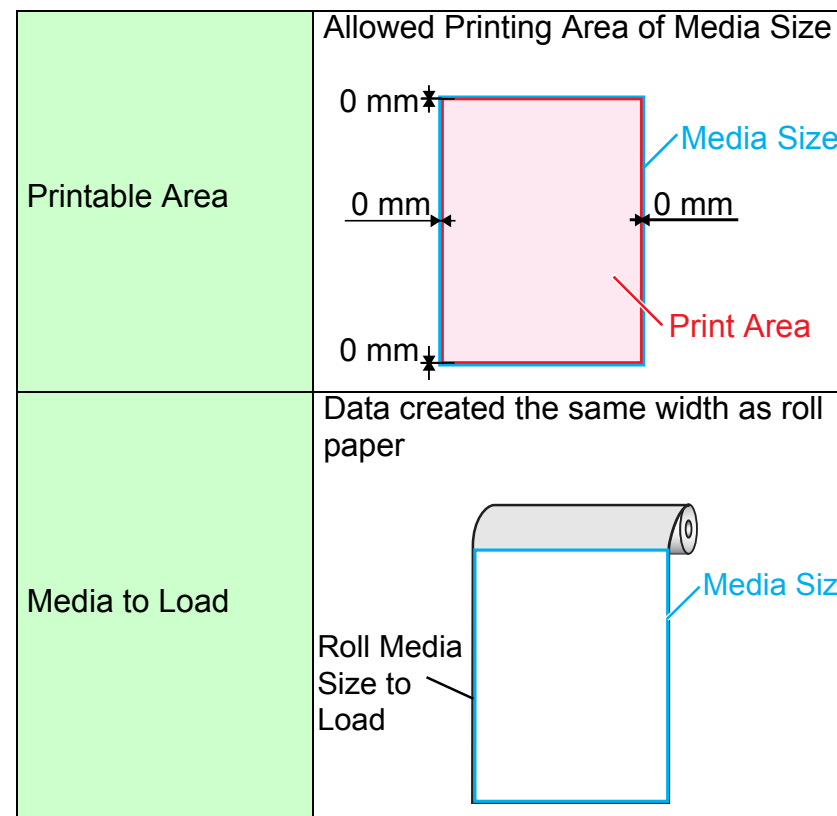
Index

■ Borderless Printing

Borderless printing can be performed on all paper sizes. Media on which borderless printing can be performed, however, have the following limitations. For borderless printing, refer to [Chapter 3 “Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders \(Borderless Printing\)”](#) (→ [P.3-13](#), [P.3-78](#)).

● Roll Media

Printable Paper Sizes		Width 42 inch, JIS B0, 36 inch, ISO A0, 24 inch, ISO A1, JIS B2, 16 inch, 14 inch, 10 inch (all fixed sizes), and user-defined paper sizes of the widths described above.
Printable Paper Types	Borderless printing to all edges is possible.	Heavyweight Coated Paper, Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper, Glossy Photo Paper, Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper, Special 1 to 5
	Borderless printing to all edges is possible if using the optional cutter, and to the left and right edges only if using the standard cutter.	Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas Matte
	Borderless is possible at left and right only.	Premium Matte Paper, Flame-Resistant Cloth, Fabric Banner



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

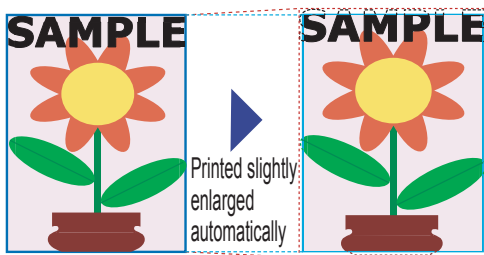
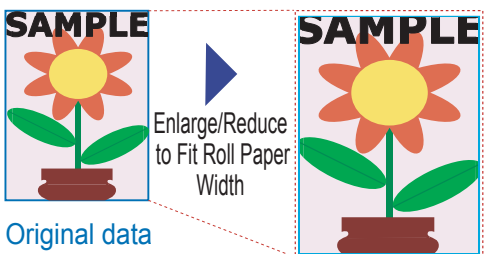
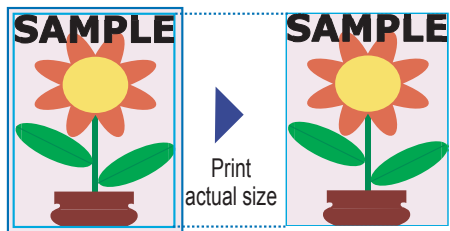
Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

<p>Scale to fit the Page Size Print Example</p>	<p>Data created the same size as Media Size.</p>  <p>Original data the same as the media</p> <p>Print Results</p>
<p>Scale to fit the Roll Paper Width Print Example</p>	<p>Create data of any size.</p>  <p>Original data of desired size</p> <p>Print Results</p>
<p>Print Image with Actual Size Print Example</p>	<p>Create data larger by 3 mm at the top, bottom, left, and right margins.</p>  <p>Original data 3 mm larger than the media size at the top, bottom, left, right margins.</p> <p>Print Results</p>

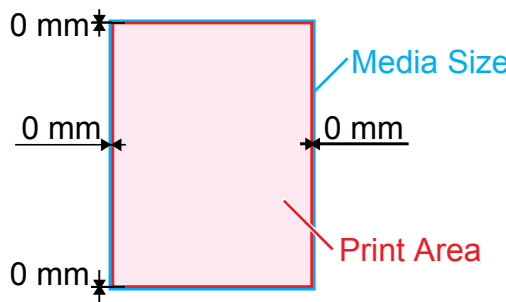
■ Oversize

With oversize media, printing can be performed on the full surface of the media size. All media types can be printed. If printing using oversize, it is necessary to load paper that is larger than the media size. Further, the print results will have margins larger than the media size.



Note

- To display Oversize click the **Size Options** button on the **Page Setup** sheet, then under **Display Series** select **Oversize**.
- Roll Media

Printable Paper Widths	Width 42 inch, JIS B0, ISO B0, 36 inch, ISO A0, 30 inch, 24 inch, ISO A1, JIS B2, ISO A2, 16 inch, 14 inch, ISO A3+, ISO A3, 10 inch, ISO A4 (all fixed sizes), and user-set paper of the widths described above.
Printable Paper Types	All media types
Printable Area	<p>Allowed printing surface area of media size</p>  <p>Media Size</p> <p>Print Area</p>

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

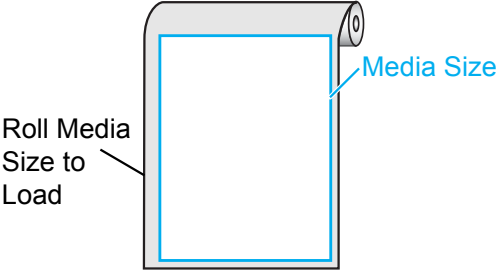
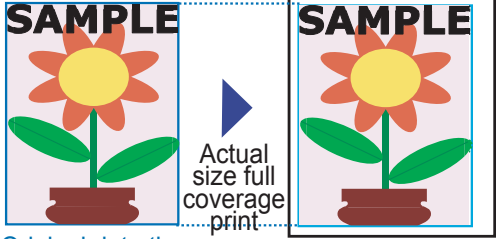
Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

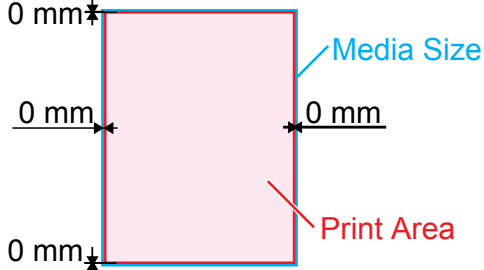
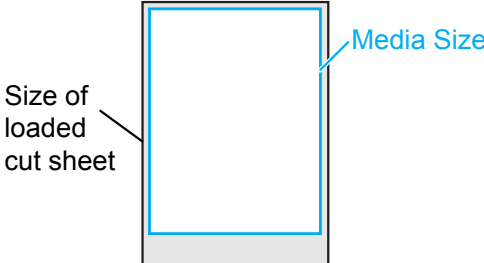
Index

Media to Load	<p>Roll paper 10 mm wider than the media size</p> 
Print Data and Results	<p>Data created the same size as Media Size</p> 

Important

- Printing may be misaligned if the end of the roll media has come off the core. Take care that the end of the roll media is not within the printing area.

● Cut Sheet

Printable Paper Sizes	All fixed sizes from poster 42 x 60 inch to photo 8 x 10, and user-set paper from 203.2 x 203.2 mm to 1107.6 x 1600 mm
Printable Paper Types	All media types
Printable Area	<p>Allowed printing surface area of media size</p> 
Media to Load	<p>Cut sheets 10 mm wider and 28 mm taller than the media size</p> 

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

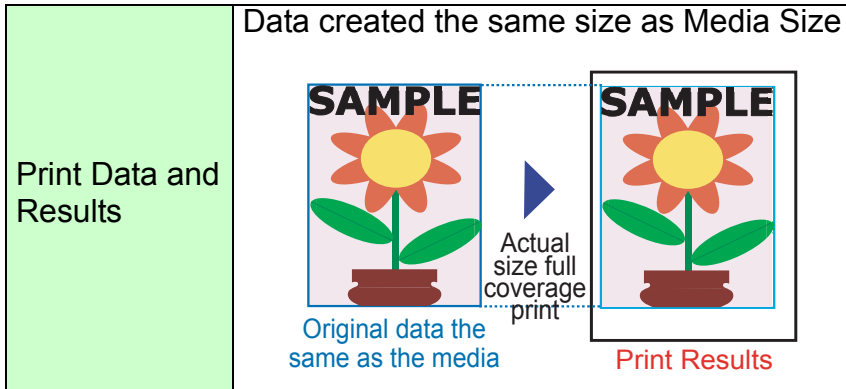
Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

**Important**

- You cannot use Oversize to print poster 44 x 62 inch and other sizes wider than 1,107.6 mm.

Handling Paper and Other Print Media

For details about how to handle and store print media, please refer to the instructions provided with the packet.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Printing with Rolls Media

Loading Roll Media

This is the general procedure for loading roll media.

- ▼ After printing remove the completed printout and any media loaded on the platen. (→ [P.2-35](#), [P.2-42](#))
- ▼ On the operation panel, select the roll media source. (→ [P.2-28](#))
- ▼ Load the roll media in the roll holder slot. (→ [P.2-29](#))
- ▼ Load the roll media on the platen. (→ [P.2-32](#))
- ▼ On the printer operation panel, select the media type. (→ [P.2-32](#))
- ▼ Adjust the amount of media feed. (→ [P.4-43](#))
- ▼ Start the print job from the computer. (→ [P.1-38](#))

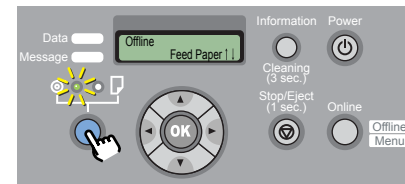
Important

- Make sure to turn off the power supply to the printer before loading the roll media. Further, if the loaded media differs from the media type setting, the print quality may be reduced.
- The roll media remaining detection function cannot be used for Tracing Paper or Translucent Matte Film. When using a Tracing Paper roll or Translucent Matte Film roll, switch off the roll media remaining detection function before loading the roll.

■ Selecting the Paper Source

When printing on roll media, select roll media as the paper source using the operation panel.

- 1** Press and hold the **Paper Source** button for 1 second or more to light the **Roll Media** lamp.



When cut paper is loaded, the printer will display **Remove CutSheet?**.

If you have loaded another roll, press and hold the **Stop/Eject** button for 1 second or more to display **Remove RollMedia?**.

- 2** If the cut sheet or roll media is set to the printer, press the **OK** button.

Remove CutSheet?
 Press OK/Stop

Remove the cut sheets or roll media. (→ [P.2-35](#), [P.2-42](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Loading the Roll Media

Load the roll media into the roll holder slot using the following procedure. If there are cut sheets or printed sheets still on the platen, remove them first.

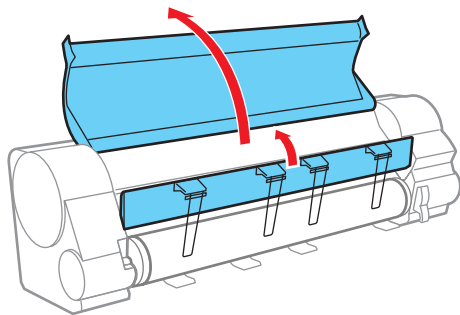
Important

- If printing banners or other long sizes, the paper may reach the floor after printing and the printing surface become dirty. Wipe the floor beforehand using a clean cloth or paper.
- If using roll media, wear clean cloth gloves when handling the media to protect the print surface.

Note

- The platen may be fouled with ink so clean inside the top cover before you switch to printing on a large size. (→ P.4-11)
- For more details about media that can be loaded in the roll holder, please refer to “Media You Can Use”. (→ P.2-2)

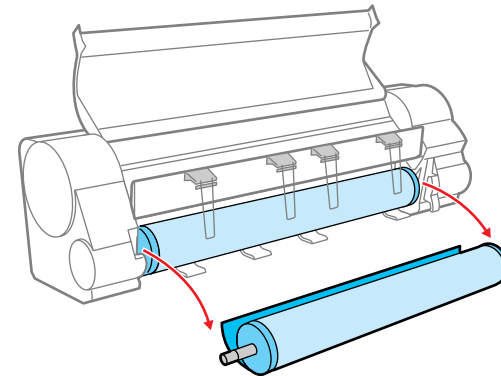
1 Open the top cover, and lift out the ejection guide.



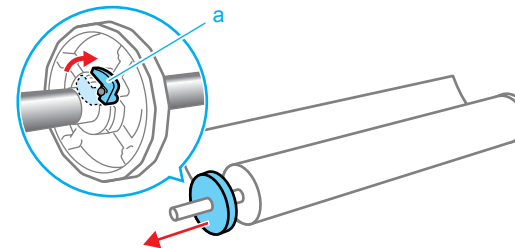
Important

- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.

2 If there is any roll media still present, rotate the top of the holder stopper towards the back, then rewind the media onto the roll and remove the roll holder.



3 Push the holder stopper lever (a) towards the outside to unlock the stopper, then pull out the holder stopper and remove the roll media.



Important

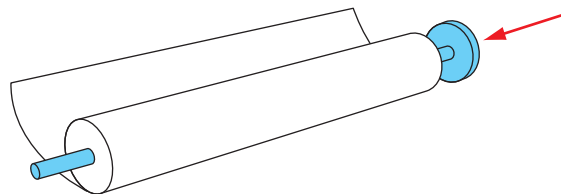
- Store unused roll media in its original package. Store the package in a cool, dry location that is not exposed to direct sunlight.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 4** Place the roll media end at the bottom, and insert the shaft of the roll holder firmly into the roll from the right side until the holder meets the roll.



Caution

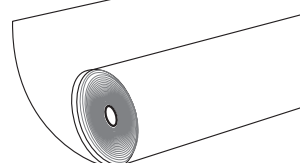
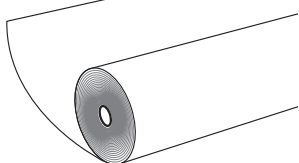
- Place the roll holder horizontally on a table, and then load the roll holder. The roll media is heavy, so dropping it may cause an injury.

Important

- If the edge of the roll paper is not straight, take up the roll paper until the edge is straight before loading it. Misalignment of the edges may cause poor paper feed.

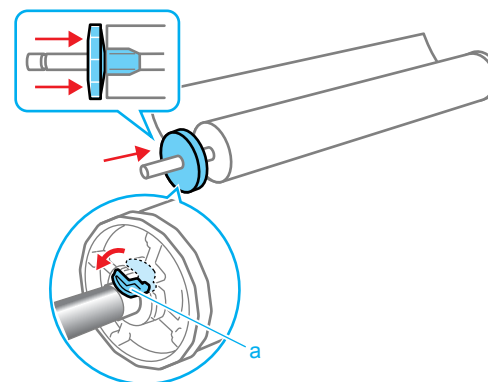
● Roll media edges aligned

● Roll media edges not aligned



- Firmly insert the roll holder into the shaft. Any gaps may cause poor paper feed.

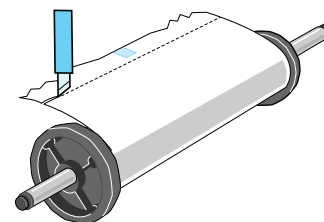
- 5** Attach the holder stopper to the left side of the roll holder and insert it until it contacts the roll media shaft, then push the holder stopper lever (a) over toward the shaft to lock it.



The roll media is locked in place by the roll holder.

Important

- If the edge of the roll paper is not straight, or there is blot or imprint of a tape. This could cause poor paper feed and reduce printing quality. In these cases, cut the edge of the roll media before loading the roll holder to the printer.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

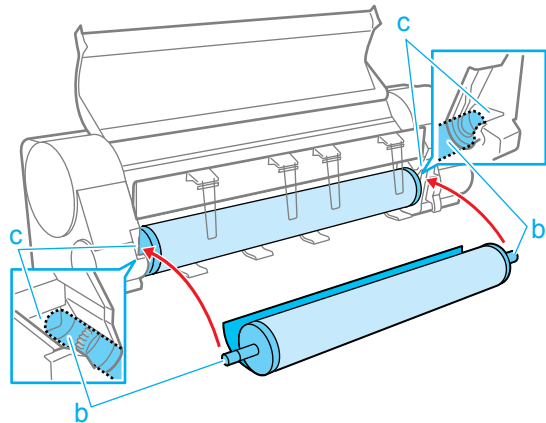
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

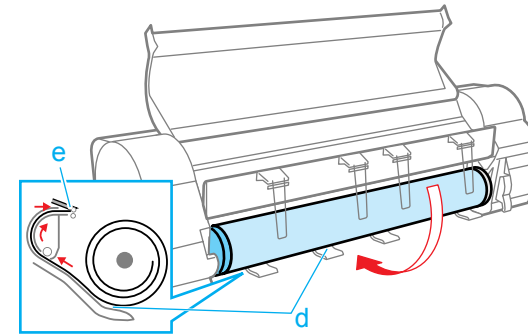
Index

6 Hold the roll holder such that the role media end is down and towards you, and then align the roll holder (b) with the left and right guide grooves (c) and load the roll holder.

If the roll paper is wide and its edge is not straight, take up the roll slack until the edges are straight then set it.



7 Pull the roll media out keeping the right and left sides even and insert it into the top of the paper feed slot (d). Feed the roll media until it makes contact with the paperweight (e).

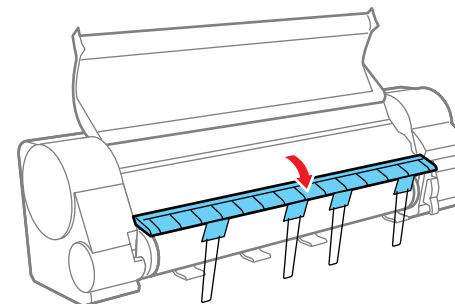


Once the roll media has been advanced to where it touches the paperweight, the roll media will automatically be fed to the platen.

Important

- If you see the media is wrinkled or curled, remove the wrinkles or curls before loading the media.

8 Close the ejection guide.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

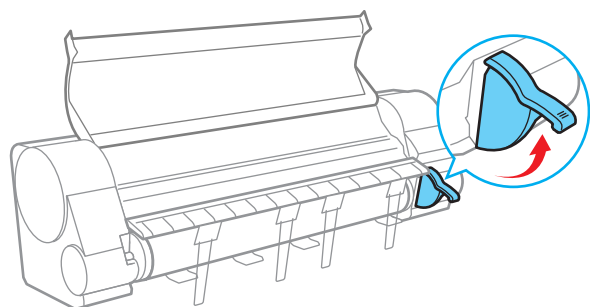
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

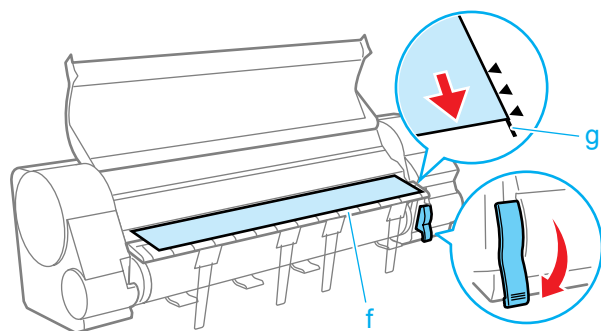
Contents

Index

9 Hold the end of the paper, and lift the release lever.



10 While gently pulling out the center of the leading edge of the roll media to the ejection guide (f), align the right edge of the media with the right side of the paper alignment line (g), then pull down the release lever.



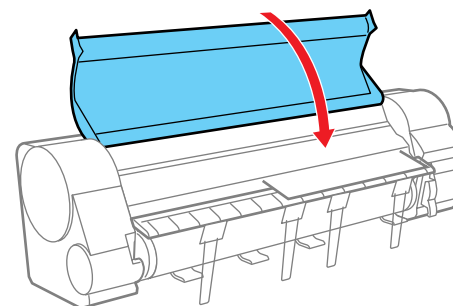
Important

- Make sure to carry out [Step 9](#) and [10](#). Otherwise, the paper may not be feed straight, or the paper may become wrinkled causing a paper jam or friction on the printhead.
- Do not pull strongly on the roll media when you align it with the paper alignment line (g). The roll media may not feed out straight in some cases.

Note

- If the release lever is open, the platen paper suction can be adjusted. If it is difficult to load the paper, adjust the suction using the [▲] button (stronger) and [▼] button (weaker) on the operation panel.

11 Close the top cover.



Media Type is displayed.

12 Press the [◀] or [▶] buttons to select the loaded media type, and then press the **OK** button.

If the same type of media already matches the loaded media, just press the **OK** button.



The selection is prefixed with an equals sign (=) to indicate the roll media type that is selected.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

The table below lists the possible settings for the cut sheet type.

Media Name	Media Type Setting
Plain Paper	Plain Paper
CAD Plain Paper	CAD Plain Paper
Plain Paper(High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
Coated Paper	Coated Paper
Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
Premium Matte Paper	Premium Matte
Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
Glossy Photo Paper	Glossy Photo
Semi-Glossy Photo Paper	Semi-GI Photo
Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper	HW Glossy Photo
Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper	HW SemiGI Photo
Synthetic Paper	Syn. Paper
Adhesive Synthetic Paper	Adh. Syn. Paper
Backlit Film	Backlit Film
Flame-Resistant Cloth	Flame-Res.Cloth
Fabric Banner	Fabric Banner
Proofing paper	Proofing paper
Newsprint for Proofing	News Proof 1/2/3
Fine Art Photo	FineArt Photo
Fine Art Heavyweight Photo	FneArt HW Photo
Fine Art Textured	FineArt Txtr
Canvas Matte	Canvas Matte
Canvas Semi-Glossy	Canvas Semi-GI
Japanese Paper Washi	JPN Paper Washi
Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated

Media Name	Media Type Setting
CAD Tracing Paper	CAD Trace Paper
CAD Translucent Matte Film	CAD Matte Film
CAD Clear Film	CAD Clear Film
Special 1-5	Special 1-5

Roll media starts to feed as soon as the type of media is selected.

 Important

- Make sure to choose the correct media type setting. If the configured media type is incorrect, perform the “Media You Can Use” operation. (→ P.2-2)
- As soon as each sheet prints, remove it from the output stacker.
- Manually remove paper from the ejection guide and output stacker after cutting such media as trimmed paper and pre-cut paper.
- If you are replacing the roll media, cut off a suitable amount of paper for the paper type to align the edge of the paper. Depending on the paper type, the paper may not be ejected but remain in the printer. If this happens, remove the paper manually.

 Note

- If a message appears in the display after loading roll paper, the operation panel lamp flashes.
- The factory default Media Type setting is **Plain Paper**. Or, when the release lever is opened and closed, the media type setting is reset automatically to Plain Paper.
- The media size is detected automatically, and so no settings are required.
- If you are replacing the roll media, cut off a suitable amount of paper for the paper type to align the edge of the paper. If the roll media remaining amount detection function is turned ON, the barcode, which is at the edge of the roll paper, will be cut off after it has been read.

13 If the roll media remaining detection feature is ON, press [◀] or [▶] to detect the length of the loaded media, then press the **OK** button.

For roll media lengths, refer to the manual that accompanies the roll media.

If you have loaded roll that has a barcode showing the remaining length printed on it, the amount of media remaining is detected automatically so you do not need to make any settings.

Roll Length Set
30.0 m →

After a few seconds, **Online** is displayed and the printer is ready to print.

■ Selecting the Media Type

If you have loaded paper into the printer, make sure to set the paper type using the operation panel. You cannot achieve accurate printing results if the paper type is incorrect. If the printer paper type settings are incorrect, the settings can be changed using the following procedure.

1 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU** on the printer display.



2 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Media Type**, then press [▼].

MAIN MENU
Media Type ↓

Important

- If you changed the paper type, make sure to adjust the paper feed amount. (→ P.4-43)

Note

- The printer adjusts the paper feed amount minutely for each media type to deliver optimum print quality. Consequently, the image size and margins may change according to the paper type.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select the name of the media type then press the **OK** button.

Media Type
HW Coated

The selection is prefixed with an equals sign (=) to indicate the roll media type that is selected.

Important

- In order to achieve the best printing results with this printer, the amount of feed is fine adjusted for each type of media. For this reason, the image size, margins, and other settings change for each media type.
- If you have changed the paper type, make sure to adjust the paper feed amount. (→ [P.4-43](#))

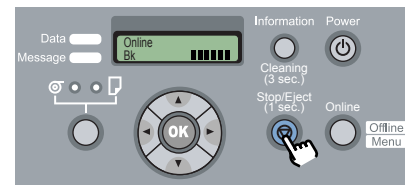
Removing a Roll

If you are removing roll media that has already been loaded, or if you are using a paper type that cannot be cut automatically, perform the following procedure. Further, if printing on a media type for which **Eject Cut** has been set to **Yes** using the Canon imagePROGRAF Media Configuration Tool (→ [P.3-59](#), [P.3-128](#)), perform the same operation if **Cut by Stop key** is displayed after printing has ended.

Important

- If the roll media remaining amount detection function has been turned ON, make sure to use the following procedure to remove the roll media. If the release lever is opened before the remaining amount bar code is printed and the roll media removed, the printer will not be able to keep track of the amount of media remaining.
- Place the roll media that has been removed in a PVC bag and store in a safe place. If you are printing on roll media that has been left to stand for some time, the print surface may be scratched and print quality reduced.

- 1** Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second.



- 2** Press the **OK** button.

Remove RollMedia?
Press OK/Stop

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

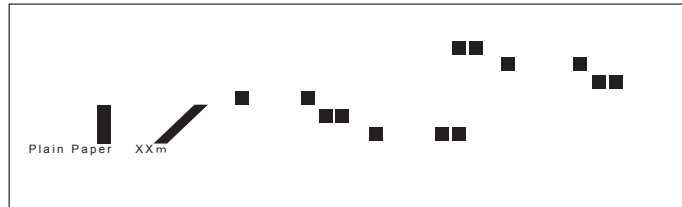
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Paper Types for which the **Standard Cutter** Has Been Turned **Enable**

1. The remaining amount barcode will be printed at the leading edge of the media, if the roll media remaining detection function is ON.



2. Roll media is ejected from the back.

Important

- When the release lever is opened, the remaining amount barcode will not be printed without pushing the **Stop/Eject** button even if the roll media remaining detection function is ON. In this case, the printer will not be able to keep track of the amount of media remaining.

■ Paper Types that Cannot be Cut Automatically

1. Press the **Online** button. The printer will become offline.
2. Press the [▼] button (not longer than 0.8 sec) to feed the media 330 mm.
3. Cut along the guideline using a pair of scissors.
4. Press and hold the [▲] button on the operation panel for more than 1 sec. until you see **Feed Limit...** The roll media will spool 300 mm, and stop automatically.
5. Press the **Online** button. The printer will become online.

Important

- If the printer receives new print data before performing this operation, printing will continue.
- Cut accurately along the guideline. If the cutting position is misaligned by 30 mm or greater from the guideline, subsequent printing may not be performed accurately.

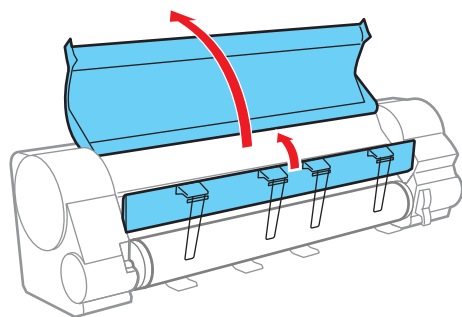
- Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, Backlight Film, CAD Translucent Matte Film

The printer will stop after printing has ended to protect the printed surface. To prevent the printed matter falling into the output stacker, support the printed matter by hand and press the **Stop/Eject** button, and then perform cutting.

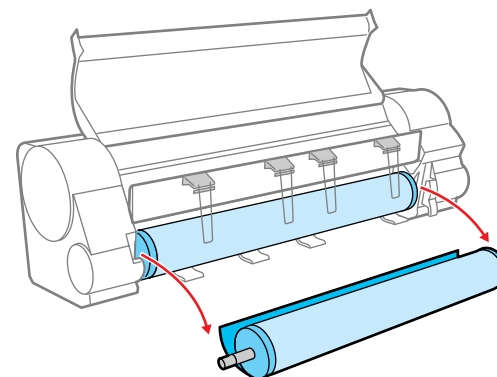
Important

- If the ink drying time has been set, cutting cannot be performed by pressing the **Stop/Eject** button until the ink drying time has elapsed.

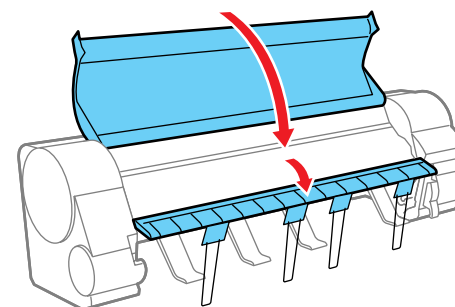
- 3** Open the top cover, and left the ejection guide.



- 4** Rotate the top of the roll holder toward the back to spool and remove the roll media.



- 5** Close the ejection guide, and then close the top cover.



Printing with Cut Sheets

Loading Cut Sheets

This is the general procedure for printing cut sheets.

- ▼ If there is a cut sheet in the printer, remove it. (→ [P.2-35](#), [P.2-42](#))
- ▼ On the printer operation panel, select cut sheet as the paper feed source. (→ [P.2-38](#))
- ▼ Place the cut sheet on the platen. (→ [P.2-39](#))
- ▼ On the printer operation panel, select the media type. (→ [P.2-40](#))
- ▼ Adjust the amount of media feed. (→ [P.4-43](#))
- ▼ Start the print job from the computer. (→ [P.1-38](#))

Important

- Make sure to turn OFF the power supply to the printer before loading the cut sheets. Further, if the paper type that has been loaded, and the paper type set using the operation panel, are different, a paper load error will occur, and print quality may be reduced.

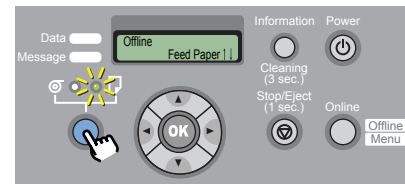
Note

- Store unused cut sheets in the original package. Store the package in a cool, dry location that is not exposed to direct sunlight.

■ Selecting the Paper Source

When printing on cut sheets, set the media source to cut sheet using the operation panel.

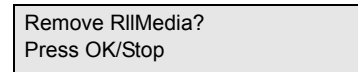
- 1** Press and hold the **Paper Source** button for 1 second or more to light the **Cut Sheet** lamp.



When a roll is loaded, the printer will display **Remove RIIIMedia?**

If another cut sheet has been set, press and hold the **Stop/Eject** button for 1 second or more. **Remove CutSheet?** will be displayed.

- 2** If the cut sheet or roll media is set to the printer, press the **OK** button.



Remove the cut sheets or roll media. (→ [P.2-35](#), [P.2-42](#))

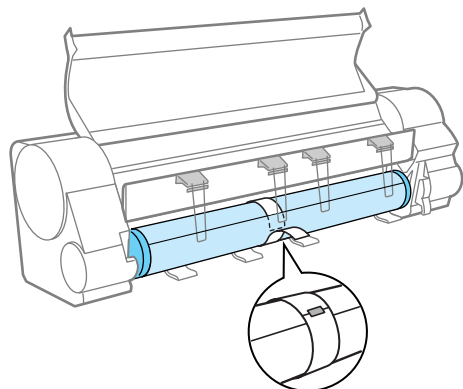
Important

- If you load a cut sheet with roll paper loaded in the printer, this may cause a jam. Before loading a cut sheet, we recommend that you remove the roll paper. To use the printer with roll paper loaded, wrap a sheet of paper (A3 size or larger) around the roll and fasten the sheet with a piece of tape to prevent the roll from loosening.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index



- When you set the cut sheet with roll paper loaded in the printer, the media may be damaged.

■ Loading Cut Sheets

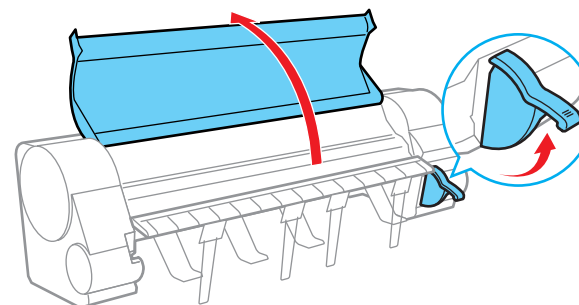
Load the cut sheets into the platen using the following procedure. If there are cut sheets or printed sheets still on the platen, remove them first.



Note

- The platen may be fouled with ink so clean inside the top cover before you switch to printing on a large size. (→ P.4-11)
- For more details about media that can be set, refer to “Media You Can Use”. (→ P.2-2)
- If the paper is creased, the paper and printhead may be misaligned, so smooth out any paper creases.

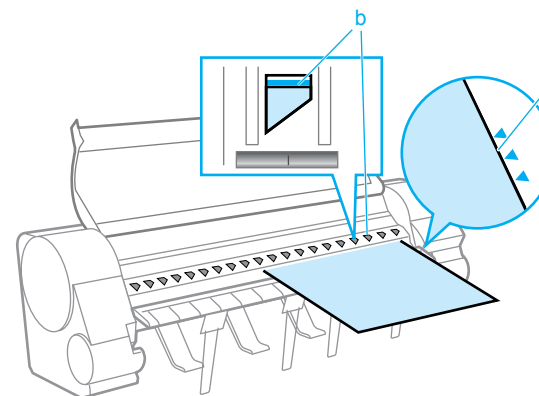
- 1 Open the top cover, and lift the release lever.



Important

- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.

- 2 With the print side of the cut sheet facing up, hold the sheet square between the paperweight, making sure that the stack is aligned with the paper alignment line (a) on the right and aligned with the paper alignment line (b) at the back.



When the cut sheet is inserted, it is held against the platen by vacuum force.

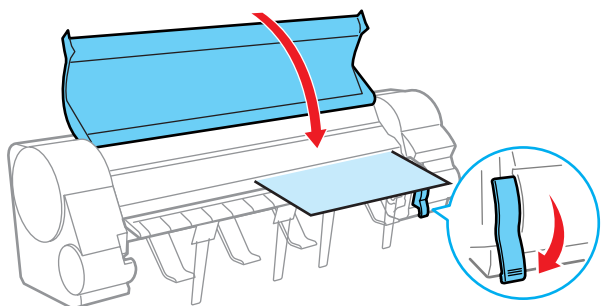
Important

- Align and load parallel the cut sheets to the paper alignment line on the right of the platen. If the paper is loaded at an angle, an error will occur. If this happens, reload the paper straight.

Note

- If the release lever is open, the platen paper suction can be adjusted. If it is difficult to load the paper, adjust the suction using the [▲] button (stronger) and [▼] button (weaker) on the operation panel.
- This printer uses vacuum to hold paper against holes in the platen. A warning may sound depending on the paper position, but this is not abnormal.
- If the buzzer sounds, align the paper with the guide and try changing the position 1 mm to the left or right.
- The suction time when the media is loaded is approx. 30 seconds. If the media cannot be loaded during suction, remove and then reinsert the paper. Suction will be performed again.

- 3 Lower the release lever, and close the top cover.



Media Type is displayed.

- 4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select the name of the media type then press the **OK** button.

If the same type of media already matches the loaded media, just press the **OK** button.

Media Type HW Coated

An equals (=) mark is displayed to the left of the option to show the media type that has been selected, and the printer begins preparing to feed the cut sheets.

The paper size and angle will be detected, and printing will be enabled if there are no problems.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

The table below lists the possible settings for the cut sheet type. The display only shows the set values for the types of paper that can be used with the type of black ink loaded in the printer.

Media Name	Media Type Setting
Plain Paper	Plain Paper
CAD Plain Paper	CAD Plain Paper
Plain Paper(High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
Coated Paper	Coated Paper
Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
Premium Matte Paper	Premium Matte
Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
Glossy Photo Paper	Glossy Photo
Semi-Glossy Photo Paper	Semi-GI Photo
Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper	HW Glossy Photo
Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper	HW SemiGI Photo
Synthetic Paper	Syn. Paper
Adhesive Synthetic Paper	Adh. Syn. Paper
Backlit Film	Backlit Film
Flame-Resistant Cloth	Flame-Res.Cloth
Fabric Banner	Fabric Banner
Proofing paper	Proofing paper
Newsprint for Proofing	News Proof 1/2/3
Fine Art Photo	FineArt Photo
Fine Art Heavyweight Photo	FneArt HW Photo
Fine Art Textured	FineArt Txtr
Canvas Matte	Canvas Matte
Canvas Semi-Glossy	Canvas Semi-GI

Media Name	Media Type Setting
Japanese Paper Washi	JPN Paper Washi
Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
CAD Tracing Paper	CAD Trace Paper
CAD Translucent Matte Film	CAD Matte Film
CAD Clear film	CAD Clear Film
Special 1-5	Special 1-5

 Important

- If the paper is loaded at an angle, an error will occur. If this happens, reload the paper from step 1.
- Make sure to set the correct media type. If an incorrect media type is set, perform the “[Selecting the Media Type](#)”. (→ P.2-34)
- As soon as each sheet prints, remove it from the output stacker.

 Note

- With the default setting, the Media Type is set for **Plain Paper**.
- The media size is detected automatically, therefore no setting for the size is required.

Removing a Cut Sheet

Follow the procedure below to remove a cut sheet from the printer.

- 1 Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second.



- 2 Press the **OK** button.

Remove CutSheet?
Press OK/Stop

The cut sheet is ejected at the front.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Change the height of the printhead

It is possible to achieve the higher print quality by adjusting the height of the printhead. Follow the procedure below to operate.

Use the following procedure.

- ▼ Change the height of the printhead. (→ [P.2-43](#))
- ▼ Set a cut sheet of the type you intend to use. (→ [P.2-28](#), [P.2-38](#))
- ▼ Aligning the Printhead. (→ [P.4-41](#))
- ▼ Printing. (→ [P.1-38](#))
- ▼ After completing the special print job, return the printhead height to its original setting and re-align the printhead. (→ [P.4-41](#))

Important

- If the printhead height was changed, make sure to adjust the print status. If adjustment is not performed, optimal printing results cannot be obtained.
- When printing on paper-base media (ex: Coated Paper, Plain Paper) or any type of media that wrinkles easily, never print with the printhead lower than the best height for each media. This could also damage the printer.

Note

- Press the **Information** button to check the current height of the printhead using **Head Hght**, and the optimum height for the paper type selected.

Changing Printhead Height

- 1** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 2** Press [◀] (or [▶]) to select **Chng Head Hght** then press [▼].



- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select Yes, then press **OK** button.

Chng Head Hght
=Yes

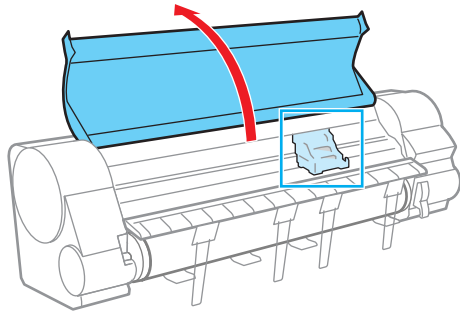
The carriage moves to the center when you see **Carriage Moving**.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

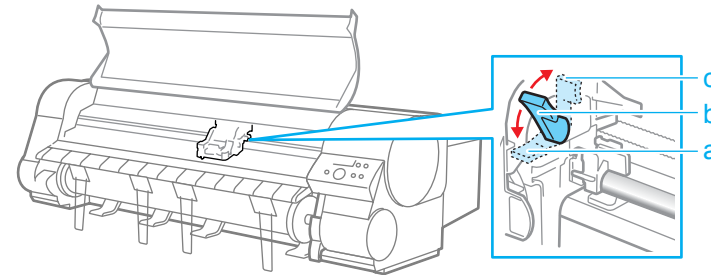
Index

- 4** Open the top cover when you see **Open UpperCover**, then **Chng Head Hght** is displayed.

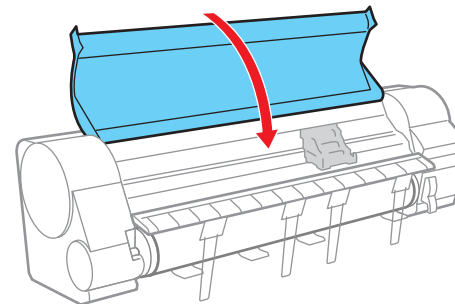


- 5** Adjust the height of the printhead with the printhead height adjustment lever.

If printing on CAD standard paper, CAD tracing paper, or CAD translucent matte film, set the lever to the down position (a). If printing on semi-glossy canvas, set the lever to the up position (c), and if printing any other type of media, set the lever to the middle (standard) position (b). If the printhead is misaligned, or if printing on paper that creases easily, set the printhead higher than the optimum printhead height for each media type.



- 6** Close the top cover.



The carriage returns to the home when you see **Carriage Moving**. The printer returns to the print ready status.

Important

- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.
- If the printhead height adjustment lever is dirty, before continuing with this procedure, wring out a damp cloth and use it to clean the printhead height adjustment lever.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Aligning the Printhead

After the printhead height has been adjusted, on the printer operation panel adjust the print mode by selecting **Auto Head Adj.**, and then **Standard Adj.** (“Aligning the Printhead” (→ P.4-41))

Changing Printhead Height Again

After a print job is finished and you want to perform the next job on a different type of media, repeat the procedure to adjust the height of the printhead “Changing Printhead Height” (→ P.2-43), and then reset the printhead height adjustment lever to the optimum position for the media type.

Further, if the printhead height was changed, readjust the printhead using the operation panel.
“Aligning the Printhead” (→ P.4-41)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Using the Media Take-up Unit

If you are using the optional media take-up unit, paper that has been printed from roll media can be spooled automatically. This is convenient if you are printing a large quantity continuously. Refer to the following table for the paper types that can be used with the media take-up unit.

Paper Types that Can Be Spooled	Paper Types that Cannot Be Spooled
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coated Paper • Heavyweight Coated Paper • Premium Matte Paper • Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper • Glossy Photo Paper • Semi-Glossy Photo Paper • Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper • Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper • Synthetic Paper • Adhesive Synthetic Paper • Backlit Film • Flame-Resistant cloth • Fabric Banner • Proofing paper • Fine Art Photo • Fine Art Heavyweight Photo • Fine Art Textured • Canvas Matte • Colored Coated Paper 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Plain Paper • Plain Paper (High Quality) • Newsprint for Proofing • Canvas Semi-Glossy • Japanese Paper Washi • CAD Plain Paper • CAD Tracing Paper • CAD Translucent Matte Film • CAD Clear film

If you are using the media take-up unit, perform the following procedure.

- ▼ Loading the Roll Media (→ [P.2-28](#))
- ▼ Set the media take-up unit to **Enable** using the operation panel (→ [P.2-47](#))
- ▼ Mount the roll media in the media take-up unit (→ [P.2-47](#))
- ▼ Printing (→ [P.1-38](#))
- ▼ Remove printed paper from the media take-up unit (→ [P.2-53](#))
- ▼ Set the media take-up unit to **Disable** using the operation panel (→ [P.2-56](#))

Important

- If you are using the media take-up unit, do not tread on the sensor, or place any object between the sensor and the paper. This could cause misoperation.
- If you are using the media take-up unit, auto cutting cannot be performed regardless of the the auto cutter setting. If **Auto Cut** is turned **ON** in the printer driver, however, auto cutting will be performed, so check that the auto cutter is turned **OFF** before printing.
- If you are using cut sheets, the media take-up unit cannot be used.
- With some print media, the hue of some colors may change slightly when the ink on the surface of the media has dried completely. Make sure the ink is dry before performing the final coloring check or handling the printed matter.
- If you are printing large quantities of ink onto thin, weak paper such as thin coated paper, etc., spooling may not operate correctly in humid environments. In such cases, improve the operating environment, or use the ink drying time function to make sure the ink is dry before the paper is spooled.
- Fabric banner and synthetic paper may not spool correctly in humid environments.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Settings for Using the Media Take-up Unit

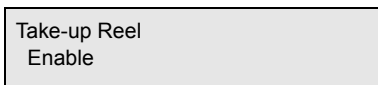
- 1 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU** on the printer.



- 2 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Take-up Reel**, and then press [▼].



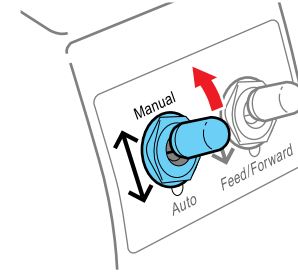
- 3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Enable**, and then press the **OK** button.



(=) will be displayed to the left of the set value, and the media take-up unit will be set.

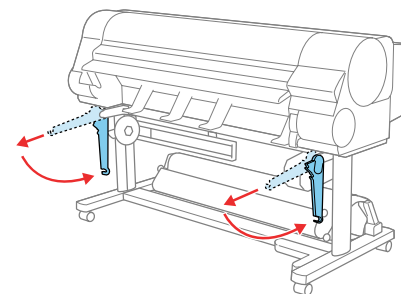
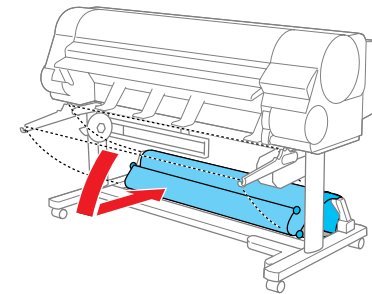
Attaching Roll Media

- 1 Set the spool mode switch on the media take-up unit to **Manual**.



- 2 If using the output stacker, remove the two basket rods at the front, and roll up the stacker cloth while placing it at the back of the stopper at the bottom the stand, and then pull the stacker arm towards you and fold it up.

Make sure that the stacker rods and cloth do not crush the sensor.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

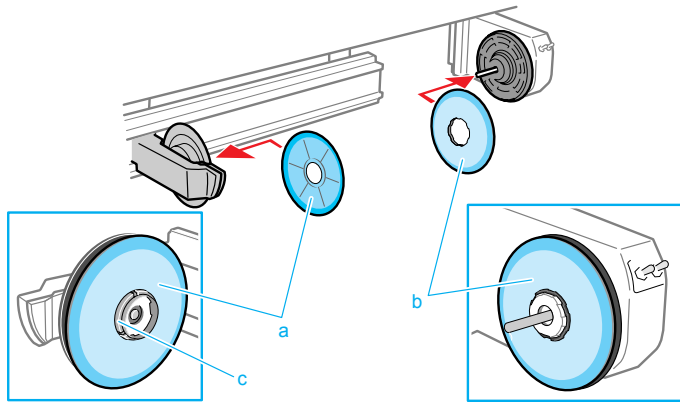
Contents

Index

3 Mount the 2 inch or 3 inch flange adaptor to the media take-up flange according to the size of the tube in the roll media to be spooled.

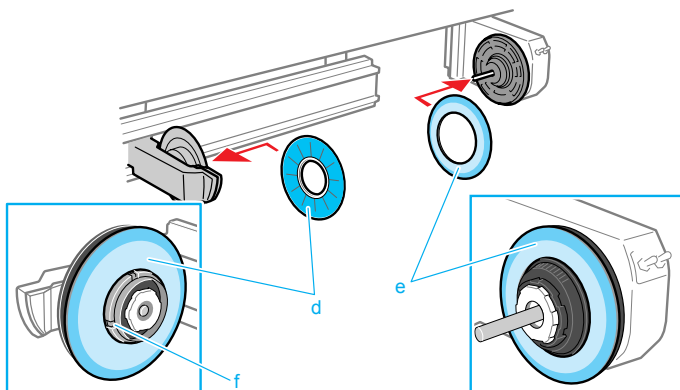
● Mounting a 2 Inch Tube

- ▼ Mount flange adaptor L (a) on the left flange and flange adaptor R (b) on the right flange such that the corrugations in the holes are aligned with the flange grooves.



● Mounting a 3 Inch Tube

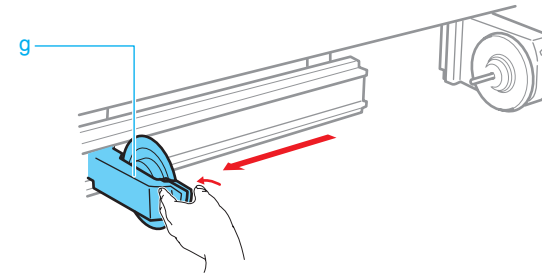
- ▼ Mount flange adaptor L (c) on the left flange and the flange adaptor R (d) on the right flange.



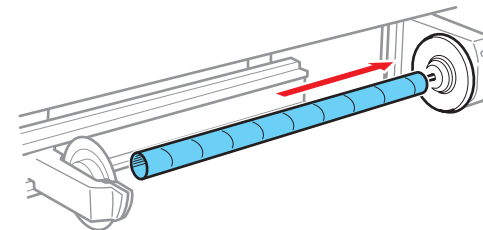
Important

- For both the 2 inch and 3 inch tubes, the flange adaptor with the spacer is located on the left side, and the flange adaptor without the spacer is on the right. Thoroughly check which adapters correspond to the left and right sides before mounting them.
- If using adhesive media and the flange adaptor is dirty, wipe the dirt from the flange adaptor using a cloth. Continuing to use a dirty flange adaptor may cause defective spooling.

4 Move the slide holder to the left while pressing the slide holder release lever (a).



5 Insert the tube into the spool holder axis.



Important

- Make sure to use roll media for spooling that is the same size as the tube installed in the media take-up unit.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

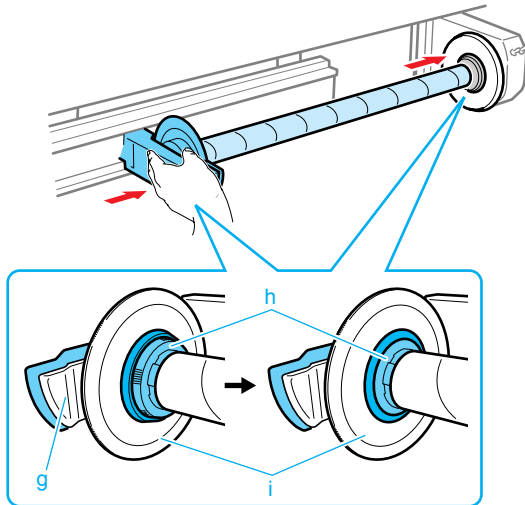
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 6** Insert the slide holder axle into the left side of the tube, then push on the right side of the slide holder until you hear a clicking sound, then push the holder firmly until it locks.

Push the slide holder until the left and right holder axles (h) are fully seated.



Important

- Take care not to catch the slide holder release lever (g) while you are pushing the slide holder. The holder will not be completely fixed in place, and may cause defective spooling.
- After firmly pushing in the slide holder, check that the tube is not loose. If the paper moves left and right, and there is a height difference between surfaces (h) and (i), remove and reset the conduits.

- 7** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU** on the printer display.



- 8** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Auto Feed**, and then press [▼].



- 9** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



(=) will be displayed to the left of the set value, and the roll media will be fed to the media take-up unit.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

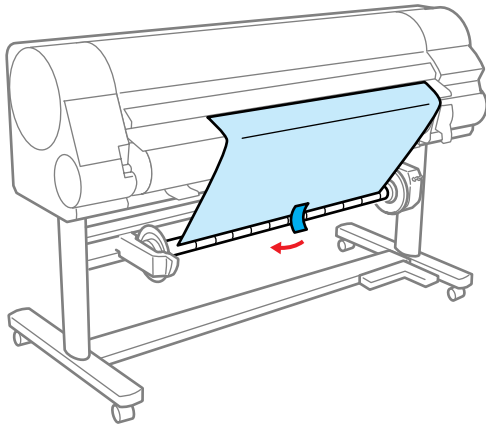
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

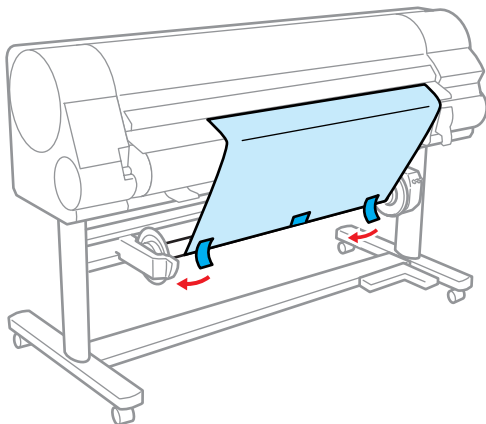
Contents

Index

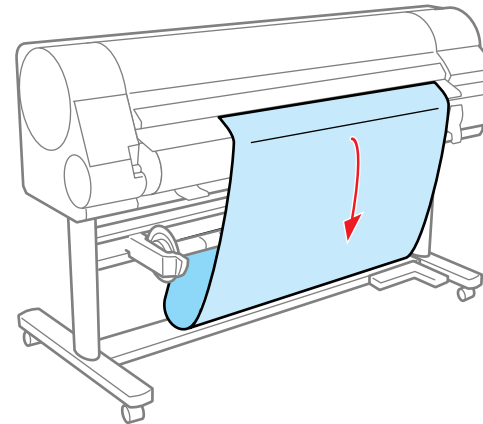
- 10** Hold the center of the roll media leading edge and align the right edge of the paper with the spool holder. Keep the roll media stretched taut and tape the center to the tube.



- 11** While taking care that the roll media does not go slack, fix the left and right lead edges of the roll media using tape.



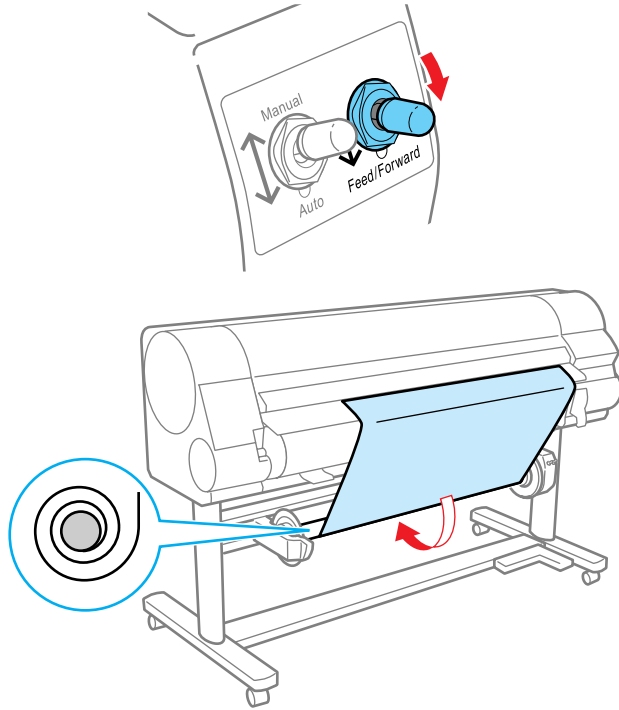
- 12** Press the **Online** button. **Offline** will be displayed. Next, press the [▼] button to slacken the roll media.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

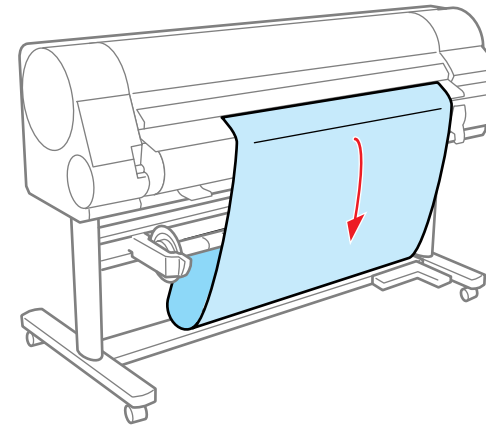
Contents

Index

- 13** Press down the spool switch on the media take-up unit, and spool the paper until there is no more slack.



- 14** Press the [▼] button to slacken the roll media.



Important

- Spool the paper until the tube has completed two full rotations. If the spooled amount is less than two full rotations, repeat [Steps 12 and 13](#).

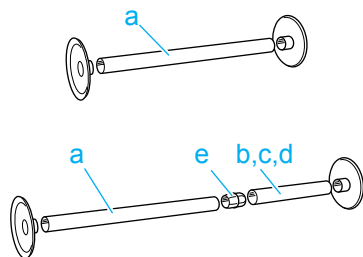
Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

15 Align to the roll media width, and then assemble the weight roll (a, b, c, d) and the weight joint (e).

Assemble the weight rolls as described below. Colored labels are affixed to the weight rolls.

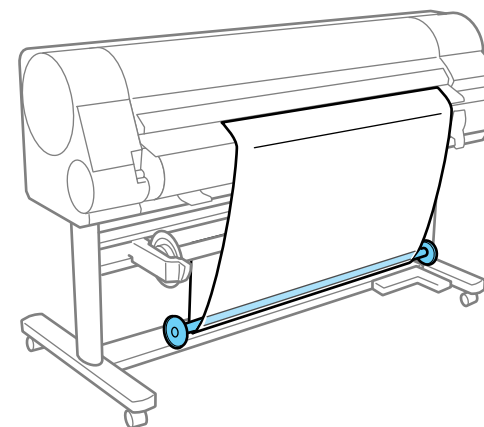


Compatible Roll Media Sizes	Weight Rolls that Can Be Used
(24"/610 mm)	Black (a)
(36"/914 mm)	Black (a) + Blue (b)
(42"/1,067 mm)	Black (a) + Red (c)
(44"/1,118 mm)	Black (a) + Yellow (d)

Note

- The weight roll top surface (b, c, d) can be used only for assembly.

16 Gently place the weight roll on the slack in the roll media.



Important

- Make sure to place the weight roll as described. Failure to do so may cause defective spooling.
- When mounting the weight roll, take care that you do not touch the tube and knock the left-right position of the roll media out of alignment.

17 Press the **Online** button to display **Online** on the printer display.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

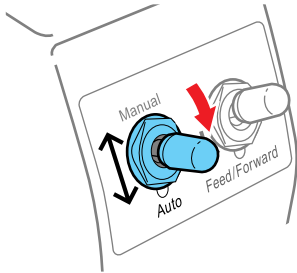
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 18** Set the spool mode switch on the media take-up unit to **Auto**.



This completes the media take-up unit preparations. Perform printing from the computer.

Removing Media that Has Finished Printing

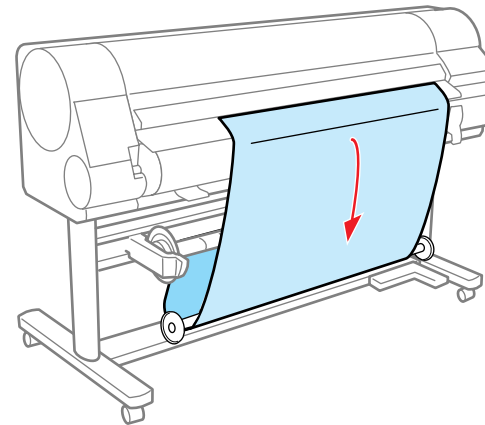
When printing has finished, use the following procedure to remove paper from the media take-up unit.

- 1 Press the **Online** button to display **Offline** on the printer display.



- 2 Press the [▼] button to feed the roll media slightly.

To protect the spooled paper, feed out paper longer than the external circumference of the roll.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

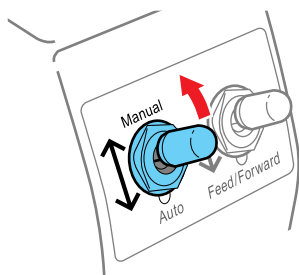
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

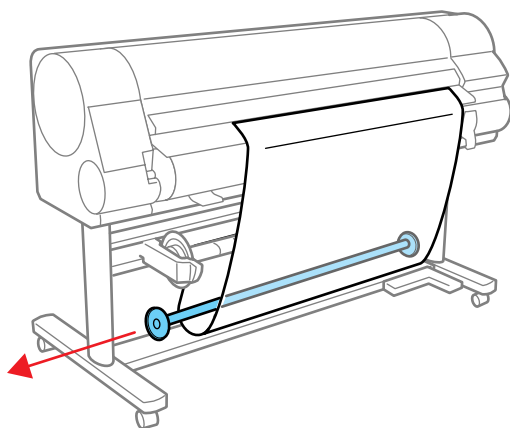
Contents

Index

3 Set the spool mode switch on the media take-up unit to **Manual**.



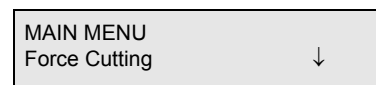
4 Remove the weight roll from the roll media.



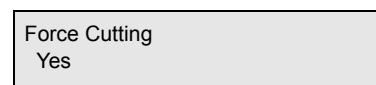
5 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU** on the printer display.



6 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Force Cutting**, then press [▼].



7 Select **Yes** using the [◀] and [▶] buttons while holding the trailing edge of the printed paper, and then press the **OK** button.



The roll media will be cut.

Important

- If you are cutting roll media, make sure to hold the trailing edge of the printed paper. If cutting is performed without holding the paper, the paper may fall to the floor and the printed surface become dirty.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

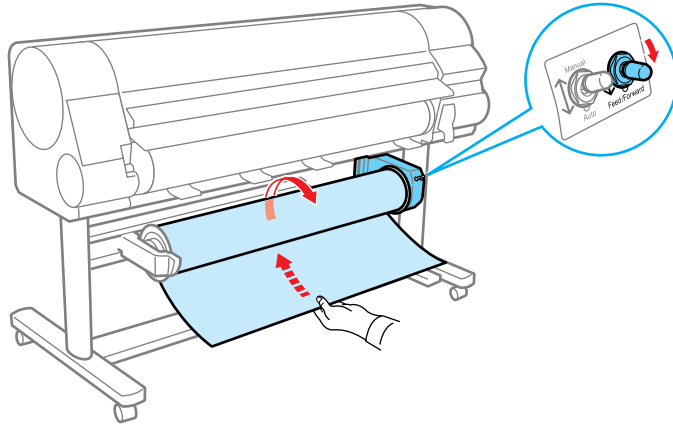
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 8** Press down the spool switch on the media take-up unit while holding the trailing end of the printed paper to spool the printed paper.

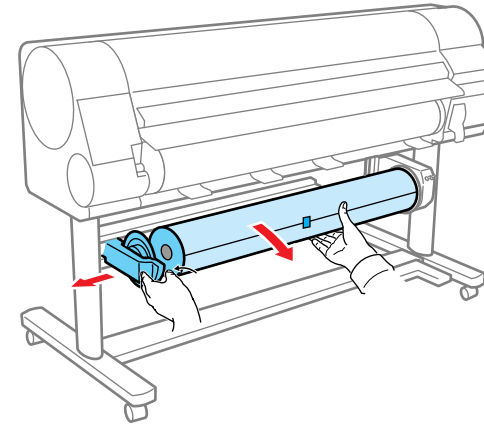


Fix the paper using tape as required.

Important

- Take care not to damage the printed surface.

- 9** Press the slide holder release lever while manually supporting the printed paper, and move the slide holder to the left to remove the printed paper.



Important

- Mount the tube even if you are not Using the Media Take-up Unit. Failure to do so may cause misfeeds.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

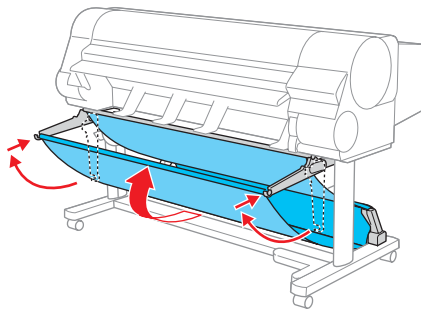
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 10** If you are using the output stacker, hold up the stacker arm keeping the left and right sides horizontal, and then press the arm towards the back until the arm locks. Next, mount the two front stacker rods on the front of the rod holder and the backmost stacker arm.



Important

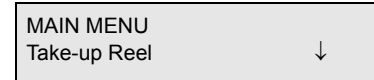
- Make sure to attach the stacker rods to the backmost rod holder and front of the stacker arm. Attaching the stacker rods to the second rod holder from the back may cause the ejected paper to miss the output stacker, causing the printed surface to become dirty. Use the second rod holder from the back as a temporary holder for the front of the stacker rod during maintenance.

Settings to Not Use the Media Take-up Unit

- 1** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU** on the printer display.



- 2** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Take-up Reel**, and then press [▼].



- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Disable**, and then press the **OK** button.



(=) will be displayed to the left of the set value, and the seeder will be set to **Disable**.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Chapter 3 Printing by Objective

You can print the items that have been checked.

Printing from Windows	3-2
Before You Begin	3-2
Enlarging and Reducing the Original	3-6
Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders (Borderless Printing)	3-13
Rotating the Page 90 Degrees for Printing (Conserve Paper)	3-23
Printing Several Pages on One Sheet (Page Layout)	3-24
Printing Posters (Page Layout)	3-27
Using Watermarks	3-29
Vertical and Horizontal Banner Printing (Long Prints)	3-31
Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)	3-39
Custom Print Quality	3-40
Fine Adjusting Color for Printing	3-43
About Size Options	3-53
When the Printout Quality Is Not Clean	3-57
Software Provided for Windows	3-57
Printing from a Macintosh	3-60
Before You Begin	3-60
Enlarging and Reducing the Original	3-66
Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders (Borderless Printing)	3-78
Rotating the Page 90 Degrees for Printing (Conserve Paper)	3-87
Printing Several Pages on One Sheet (Page Layout)	3-90
Printing Posters (Page Layout)	3-93
Vertical and Horizontal Banner Printing (Long Prints)	3-95
Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)	3-101
Custom Print Quality	3-104
Fine Adjusting Color for Printing	3-108
Custom Sizes (User Print Settings)	3-122
When the Printout Quality Is Not Clean	3-126
Software Provided for Macintosh	3-127

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Printing from Windows

The printer driver includes various printer functions to enable printing suited to the application. These functions are described here.






Before You Begin

This section describes functions for which advanced knowledge is useful if using this printer driver. Make sure to read this section before performing printing by objective.

■ Basic Settings to Meet Your Needs (Print Type)

To perform optimal printing, it is necessary to set the color adjustment corresponding to the intended text in advance. The printer driver includes optimal settings for frequently-used documents such as posters, POP, digital cameras, or CAD, etc. Simply select the type of print job by objective from the list to perform optimal printing.

The following applications are provided for the types of printing described below.

Print Types		Content	Set Values			
			Paper Type	Print Quality	Matching Method	Color Adjustment
	Default Settings	Best for printing normal documents, with text, images, graphics, etc. mixed together.	Plain Paper	Standard	Auto	Default
	POP Ad	Best for printing store posters with bright and forceful eye-catching mixed text and illustrations.	Heavyweight Coated Paper	Standard	Saturation	Contrast: +5
	Poster	Best for printing posters with centered photographs.	Proofing paper ^{*1} Heavyweight Coated Paper ^{*2}	Standard	Auto	Contrast: +10 Brightness: +5
	Photo (from digital camera)	Best for printing photos captured with a digital camera.	Glossy Photo Paper ^{*1} Heavyweight Coated Paper ^{*2}	Standard	Perceptual (Photographic)	Contrast: +10 Brightness: +5
	Photo (from scanner)	Best for reproduction of scanned photographs with color faithful to the quality of the original.	Glossy Photo Paper ^{*1} Heavyweight Coated Paper ^{*2}	Standard	Colorimetric	Default

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance



Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

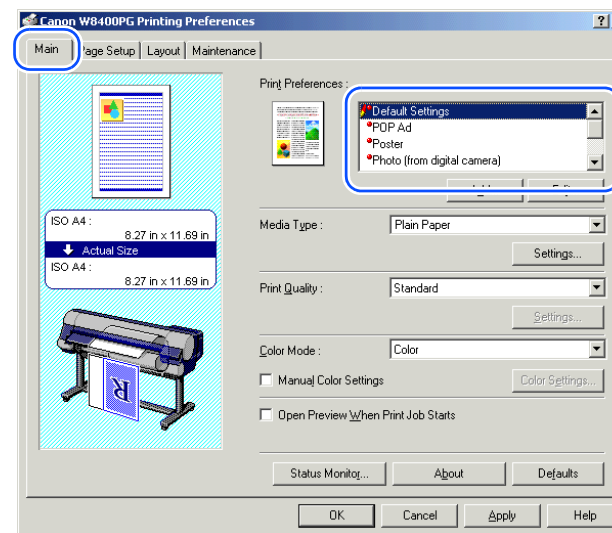
Print Types	Content	Set Values			
		Paper Type	Print Quality	Matching Method	Color Adjustment
 Long format (Banner)	Best for long banner formats (vertical and horizontal) with mixed illustrations and text.	Heavyweight Coated Paper	Standard	Saturation	Contrast: +10 Saturation: +5
 CAD	Best for plans and design drawings with fine lines.	CAD Plain Paper	Standard	Saturation	Default

- *1. The black ink loaded on the printer is photo black ink (BK).
- *2. The black ink loaded on the printer is matte black ink (MBK).

 Note

- For more details about print quality, please refer to “Custom Print Quality” in “Customizing Print Quality”. (→ P.3-40)
- For more details about color mode matching and color adjustments, please refer to “Fine Adjusting Color for Printing” in “Adjusting Color” (→ P.3-43) see “Color Matching”. (→ P.3-47)

To make the print settings, first open the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, and then in **Print Preferences**, select the type of printing that you want to perform.



 Note

- The item in the list marked by the red ball contains the settings that the printer is already set up to execute.
- Use the **Add...** button to add print objectives, and the **Edit...** button to edit print objectives. For details, use the **Help** function to select **Selecting a Print Preferences**, and **Adding a Print Preferences**, and then **Editing a Print Preferences**.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

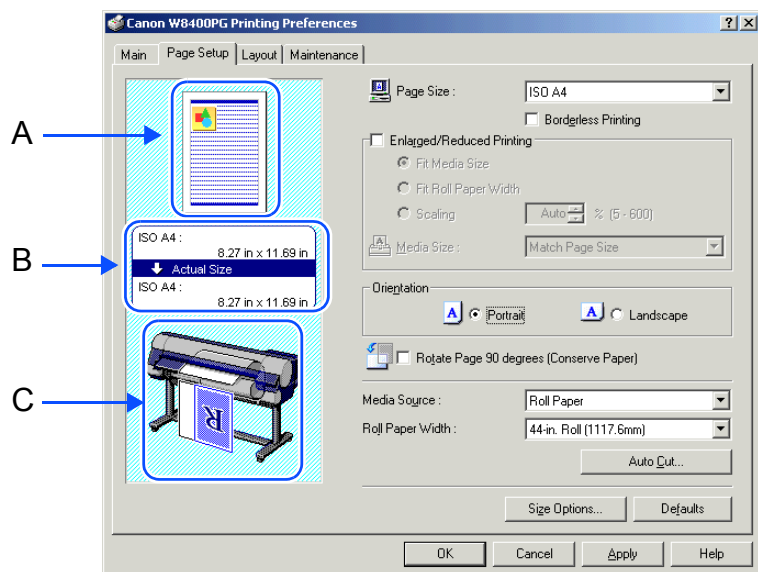
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Printer Driver Settings at a Glance (Settings Preview)

The current printer driver settings details are displayed in preview. To change the manuscript size, print orientation or paper feed method, the settings details are displayed in preview, so the details can be checked easily.



The Preview reflects changes in the settings described below.

	Setting Preview Description
A	The following settings are shown in the Preview image. : Borderless Printing, Color Mode, Orientation, Page Layout, Watermark
B	The Page Size and Media Size are displayed as numbers. Further, if Enlarged/Reduced Printing or Borderless Printing has been set, the mode and print ratio will be displayed.
C	The following settings are shown in the Preview image. : Media Source, Borderless Printing, Enlarged/Reduced Printing, Auto Cut... , Print Centered, No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper), Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper), Orientation, Rotate 180 degrees, Mirror

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

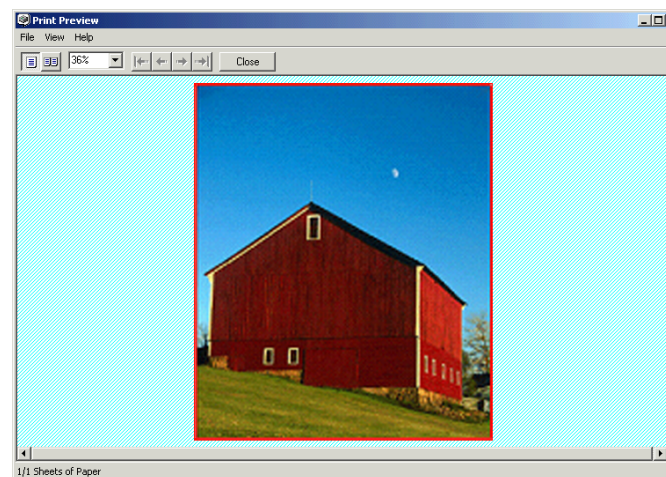
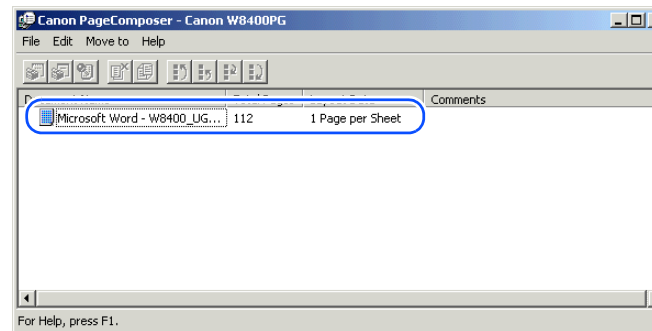
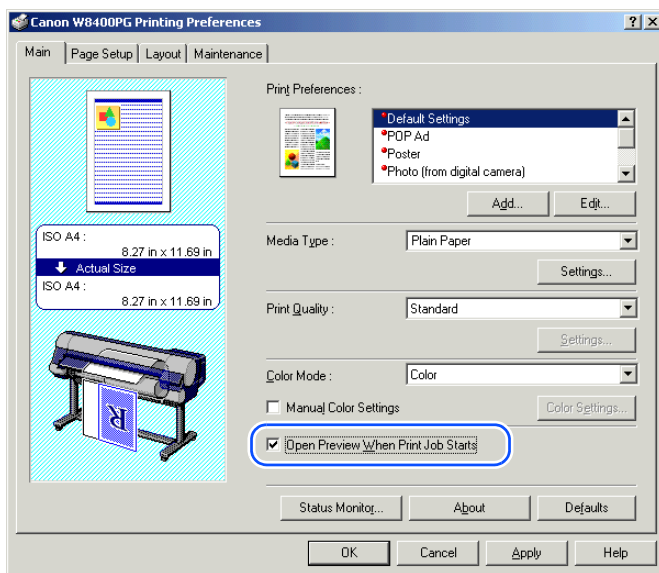
Index

■ Confirming the Print Image (Print Preview)

Preview also includes a function to display the manuscript print image without modification. This is called "Print preview". If the printer driver has been set to display the preview before printing, the preview can be displayed during printing, and print failures can be forestalled.

To have the Print Preview display, open the **Main** sheet of the printer driver and select **Open Preview When Print Job Starts**.

During printing, the PageComposer is displayed. Select the name of the document to be printed, and check the image displayed in Preview.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

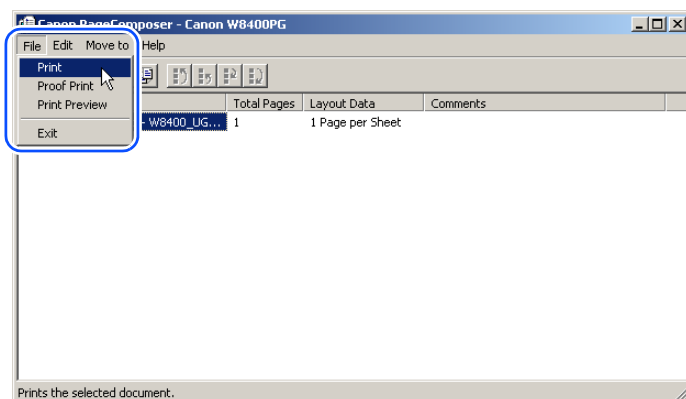
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Once you have checked that the image layout on the media is correct, close the Preview screen. Check that the name of the document to be printed has been selected using PageComposer, and then perform printing using the **File** menu.


Note

- Select the document name (print data) displayed using PageComposer, and then perform editing as required using the **Edit** menu. For the edit function, refer to the PageComposer Help.

Enlarging and Reducing the Original

The original can be printed at a larger or smaller size. There are three methods for enlargement and reduction.

- Enlarging or Reducing Printing to Fit the Size of the Media (→ [P.3-7](#))
- Enlarge/Reduce to Fit Roll Paper Width (→ [P.3-9](#))
- Selecting the Magnification Rate for Printing (→ [P.3-11](#))

Note

- When you need to enlarge TIFF image data or JPEG images captured with a digital camera, in Adobe Photoshop or a similar software application set the resolution setting above 150 dpi to achieve better printing results.

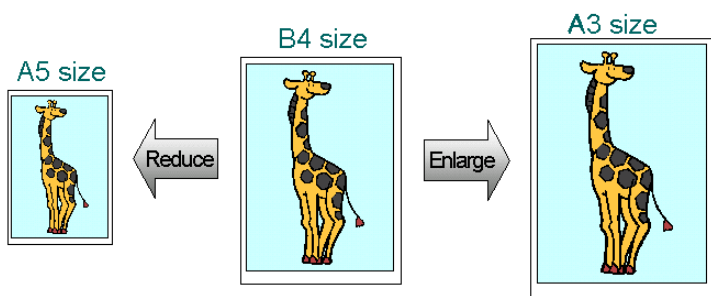
Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Enlarging or Reducing Printing to Fit the Size of the Media

By setting the size of the media actually loaded for printing, you can automatically enlarge or reduce the print automatically to match the size of the loaded media.



1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the Print dialog box of the application.

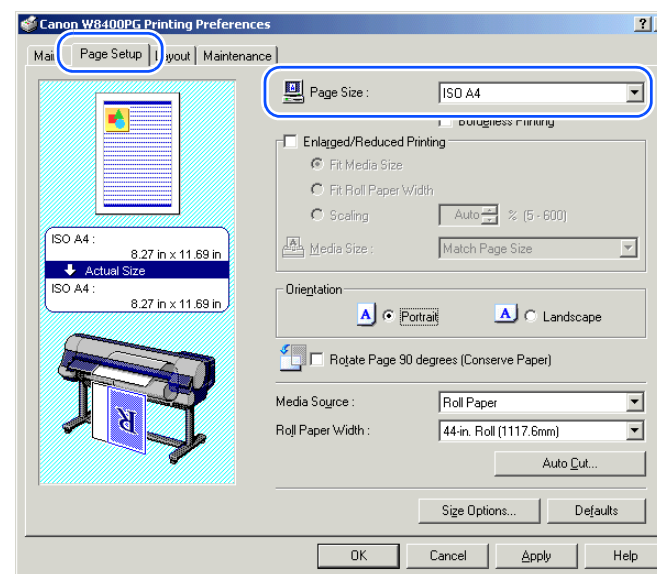


Note

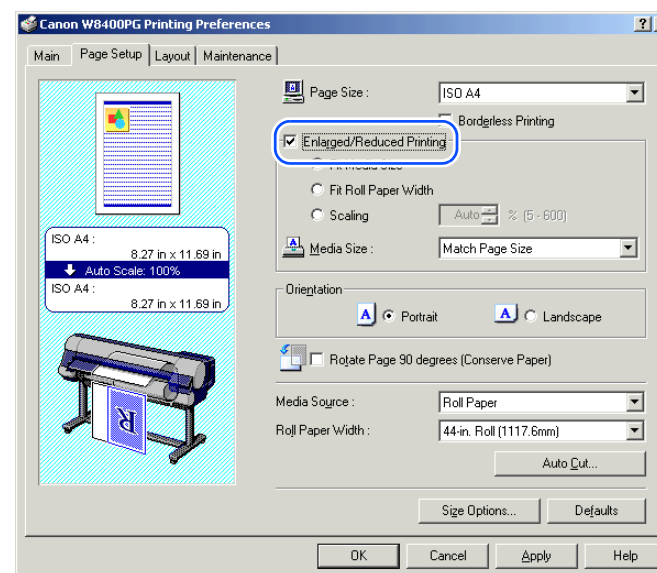
- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to [Chapter 1 "Basic Use"](#) in "Printing". (→ P.1-38)

2 Select the **Page Setup** sheet.

3 Select the size of the original created in the software application using **Page Size**.



4 Select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

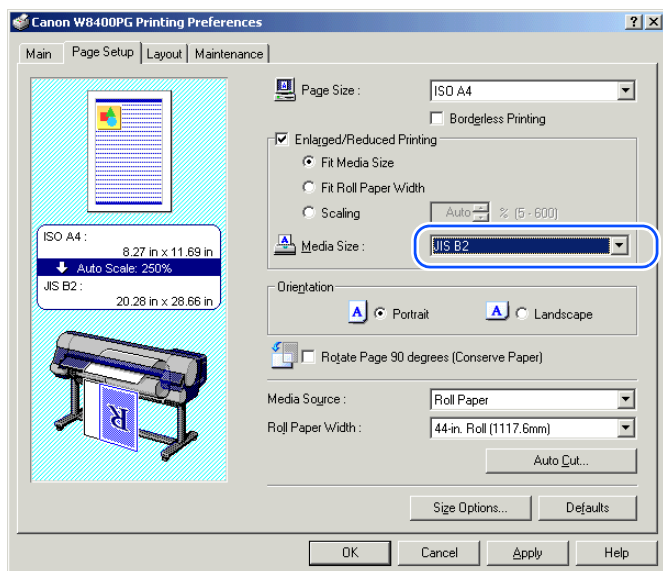
Index

 Note

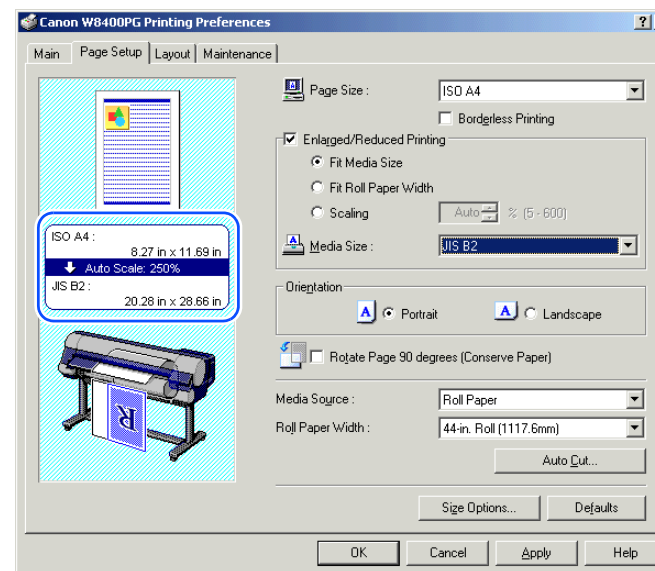
- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** checkbox is not displayed, clear the **Borderless Printing** checkbox. The **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** checkbox will be displayed.

5 Confirm that **Fit Media Size** is selected under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

6 For **Media Size** select the size of the media that will be used for printing.



7 Check the output paper size using the settings preview, and then click the **OK** button.



 Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Before You Begin](#)” in “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)”. (→ [P.3-5](#))

8 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box. The print job starts.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

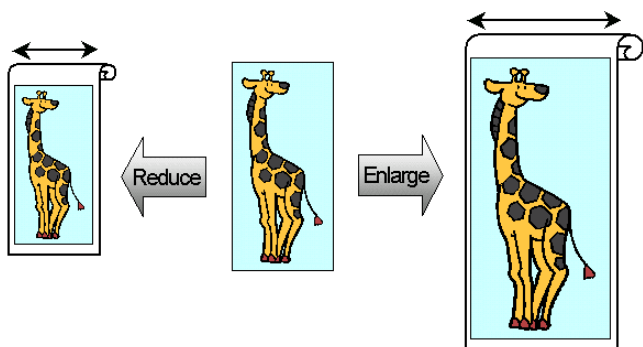
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Enlarge/Reduce to Fit Roll Paper Width

You can enlarge or reduce the entire size of the original so it fits the width of the roll.



- 1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

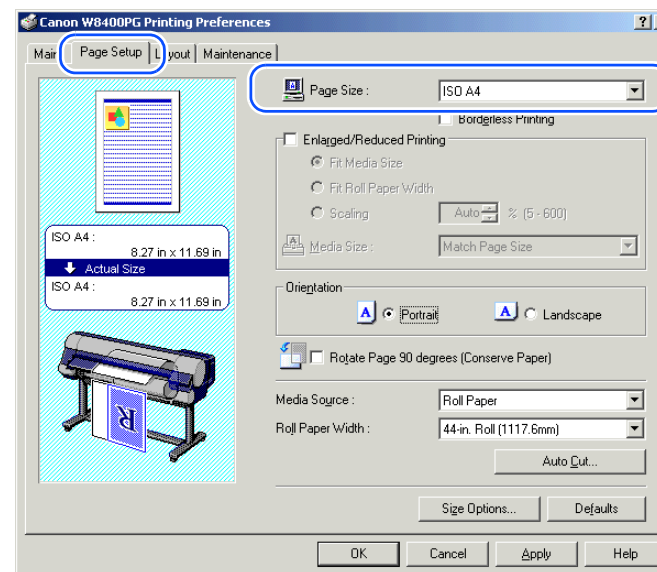


Note

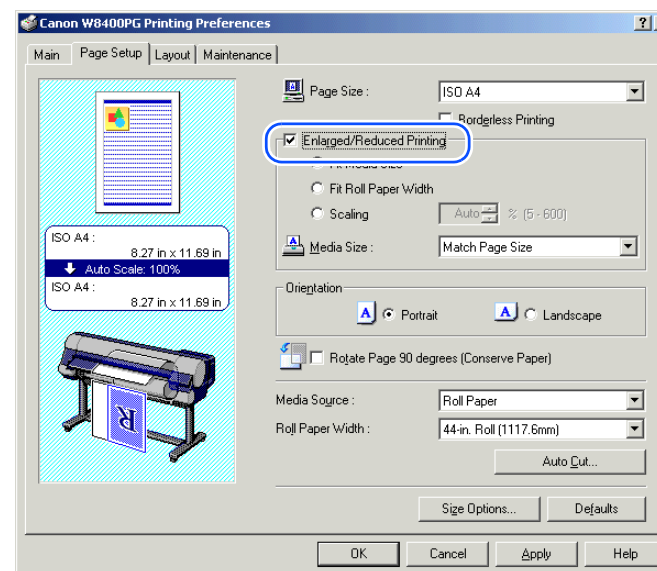
- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to [Chapter 1 “Basic Use” in “Printing”](#). (→ P.1-38)

- 2 Select the **Page Setup** sheet.

- 3 Select the size of the original created in the software application using **Page Size**.



- 4 Select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

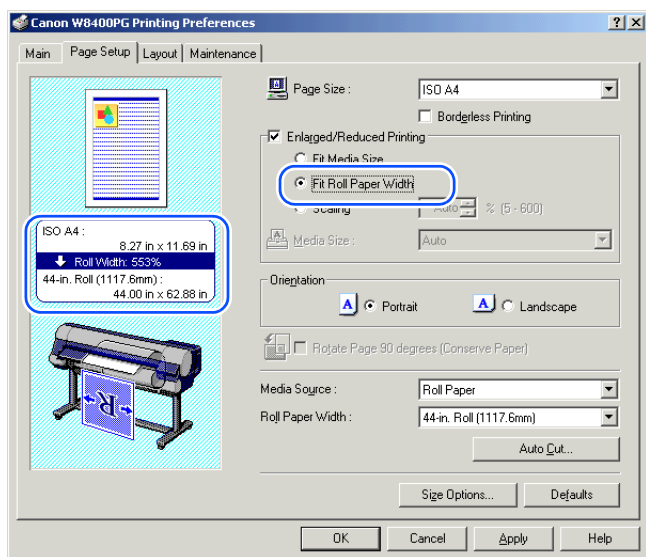
Contents

Index

Note

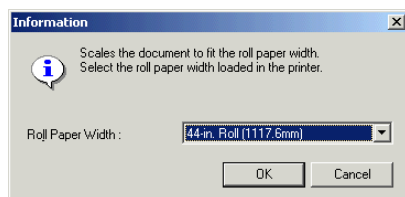
- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** checkbox is not displayed, clear the **Borderless Printing** checkbox. The **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** checkbox will be displayed.

5 Under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** select **Fit Roll Paper Width**.



Note

- If **Fit Roll Paper Width** is selected in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**, the following dialog box will be displayed. Select the roll media width loaded to the printer from the **Roll Media Width** list, and then press the **OK** button.



6 Check the content of the settings Preview, and then click the **OK** button.

Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Before You Begin](#)” in “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)”. (→ [P.3-5](#))

7 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box. The print job starts.

Note

- During printing, check that the width of the roll media loaded to the printer is the same as the width of the roll media set using the printer drivers. If the width of the roll media loaded to the printer and the printer driver settings are different, printing will pause.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

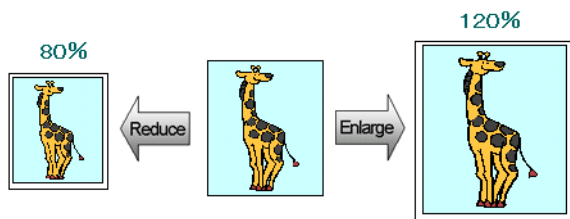
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Selecting the Magnification Rate for Printing

You can enter the rate of magnification directly if you need to scale the enlargement or reduction for a desired effect.



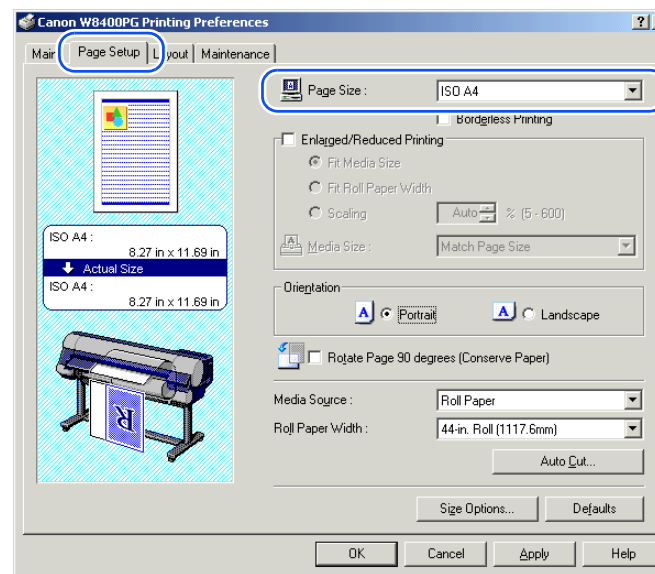
1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

Note

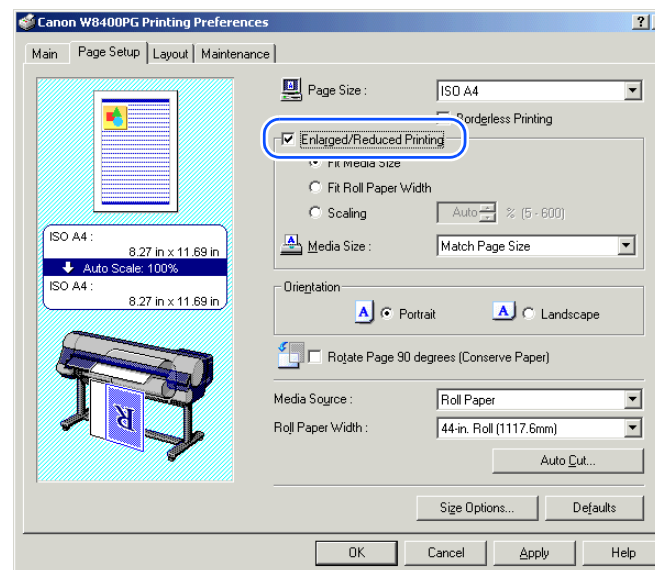
- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to [Chapter 1 “Basic Use”](#) in “Printing”. (→ P.1-38)

2 Select the **Page Setup** sheet.

3 Select the size of the original created in the software application using **Page Size**.



4 Select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

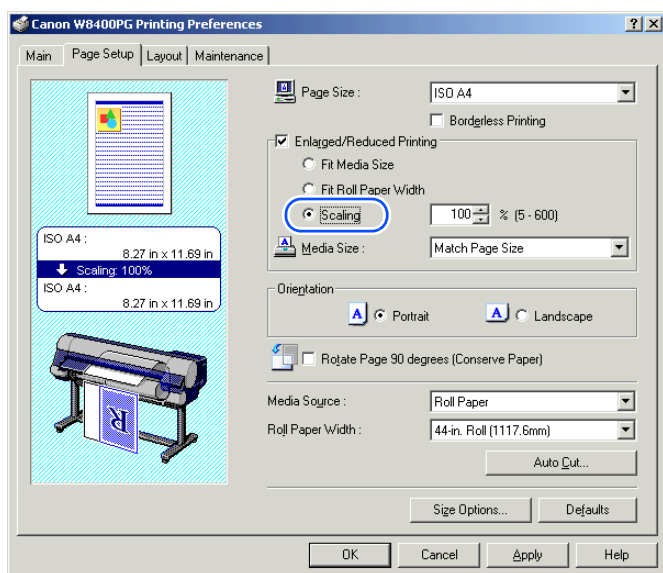
Index



Note

- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** checkbox is not displayed, clear the **Borderless Printing** checkbox. The **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** checkbox will be displayed.

5 Under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** select **Scaling** then specify the desired setting.



Important

- For the print ratio, press the direction arrow buttons to the right of the entry column, or enter the value directly. Print ratios can be specified in units of 1%. The range of possible ratio settings is displayed to the right of the ratio entry field.
- You can do a setting that is larger than the size of the media loaded in the printer, but some portions of the will be cut off and not printed.

- Reduction is done starting from the upper left corner of the image, but if you select **Print Centered** on the **Layout** sheet, the image will print in the center of the media.
- If **Scaling** has been selected, the maximum possible rate of magnification is displayed to the right of the magnification entry box.

6 Select the **Media Size** setting that you want.

7 Check the content of the settings Preview, and then click the **OK** button.



Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Before You Begin](#)” in “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)”. (→ [P.3-5](#))

8 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box. The print job starts.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders (Borderless Printing)

Normally a printed document has white space around its edges (margins), but a borderless print for a photograph or created image has no white space at its borders; its entire surface is covered by printing.

■ Settings Required for Borderless Printing

Before printing, check that the paper corresponding to borderless printing has been loaded to the printer.

Borderless printing is possible with this printer only if roll media is used in the paper feed.

Here is a list of the types of roll media and their widths that can be used for borderless printing.

Paper Type	Corresponding Roll Width
Glossy Photo Paper, Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight	10-in. Roll (254.0mm)
Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight Semi-Glos	14-in. Roll (355.6mm)
Photo Paper, Heavyweight Coated Paper, Premium Matte Paper, Extra	16-in. Roll (406.4mm)
Heavyweight coated Paper, Flame Resistant-	JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0 mm)
Cloth, Fabric Banner, Fine Art Photo, Fine Art	ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0 mm)
Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured,	24-in. Roll (609.6mm)
Canvas Matte, Special 1 to 5	ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm)
	36-in. Roll (914.4mm)
	JIS B0/B1 Roll (1,030.0mm)
	42-in. Roll (1,066.8mm)

Important

- Paper of types and roll widths other than those listed above cannot be used for borderless printing.
- If a flat cutter has been loaded to the printer in use, the following types of paper cannot be cut, so borderless printing will be performed at the left and right edges only.
Premium Matte Paper, Flame-Resistant Cloth, Fabric Banner, Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas Matte
- If, after cutting, the trimming paper, pre-cut paper, etc., remains in the ejection guide or the output stacker, remove the paper manually.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Basic Procedure for Borderless Printing

This section introduces the basic procedure for borderless printing by using media of the same size as the original.

- 1 Create the original in the software application so it matches the size of the media used for printing.

Important

- The following page sizes can be set for borderless printing. When creating a document, refer to the following table and create a document with a size for which borderless printing can be performed.
- If the media size was pre-selected in the software application, the selected size must support Borderless Printing.

■ Borderless printing on media the same size as the original document	ISO A0, ISO A1, ISO A2, JIS B0, JIS B1, JIS B2, JIS B3, ARCH E (width 36"), ARCH E1, ARCH D (width 24"), ARCH C, Full Size (20"x24"), 14"x17", 10"x12", 14"x21", 8"x10", US Photo (16"x20"), Poster (42"x60")
■ Borderless printing with enlargement and reduction	All page sizes

- The **Borderless Printing Method** that can be selected on this printer is limited by document size. If a document size other than those described above is selected, **Borderless Printing Method** will be set automatically in **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width**.

- For more details about **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** and **Print Image with Actual Size**, refer to "[More About Borderless Printing Methods](#)". (→ P.3-17)

Note

- Make sure the image created for borderless printing covers the entire original page.
- If using an application for which margins can be set, such as MSWord, etc., set the margins to 0 mm. For the settings methods, refer to the software application user guide.

- 2 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to "[Printing](#)" in [Chapter 1 "Basic Use"](#). (→ P.1-38)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

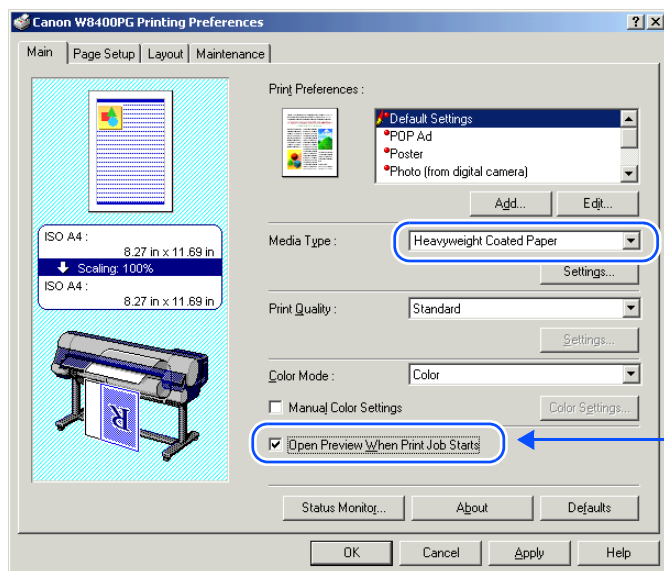
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

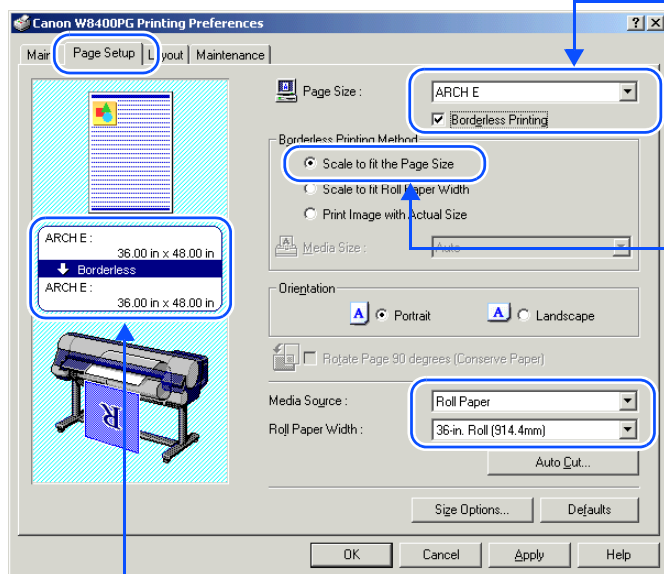
3 Display the **Main** sheet and do the settings for borderless printing.



1 Select the paper type corresponding to borderless printing.

2 Select the **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** checkbox to check the print image in the preview screen before printing.

4 Display the **Page Setup** sheet and do the settings for borderless printing.



1 Select the size of the original created in the software application using **Page Size**.

2 Select the **Borderless Printing** checkbox.

* Select a document size for which borderless printing is possible to set **Borderless Printing Method** in **Scale to fit the Page Size**.

3 Check that the **Media Source** is the same size as the roll media, or that the document size is the same as the roll media width.

* The settings details will be supplied in the settings preview.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

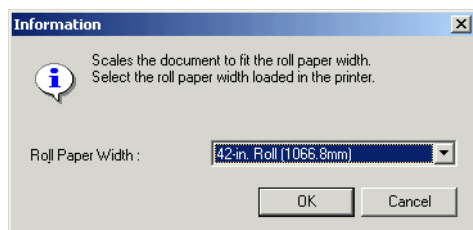
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

 Note

- If you change the page size to any other size that allows borderless printing, the setting for the width of the roll changes automatically to a roll width that matches the original width.
- If the settings are changed to a document size for which borderless printing is not possible, the following dialog box will be displayed. Specify the roll media width from the **Roll Paper Width** list and then click the **OK** button. Borderless printing will continue, but it will be enlarged or reduced as necessary to fit the roll media width. Printing to the same size as the document is not possible.



- 5** Check the content of the settings Preview, and then click the **OK** button.

 Note

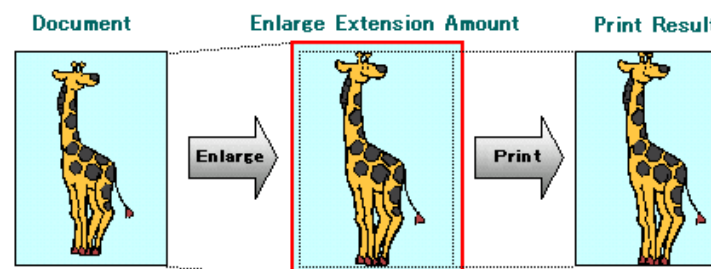
- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ [P.3-2](#))

- 6** Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.

The print job starts.

 Note

- If **Borderless Printing Method** is set to **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width**, the edges of the document will be enlarged automatically at the top, bottom, left, and right by 3 mm by the printer driver. Consequently, the margin created by the printer configuration will be covered, and borderless printing will be performed. Parts that protrude beyond the 3 mm area at the edges will not be printed.
- Use **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** in the **Borderless Printing Method** to enlarge or reduce the size of the document for borderless printing.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

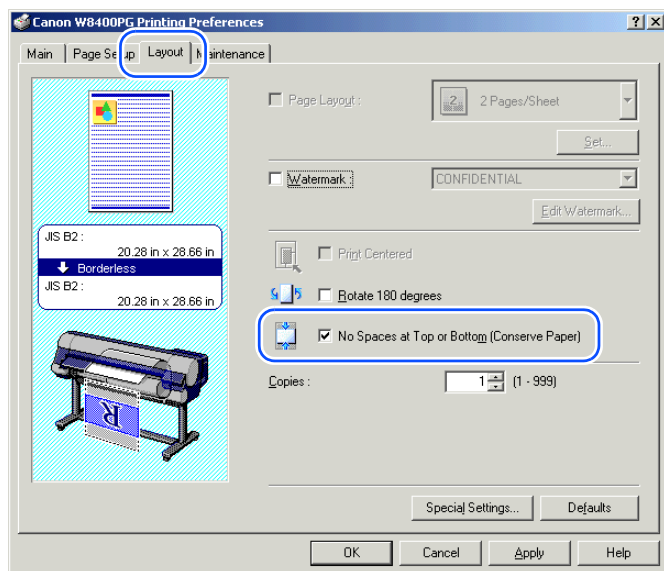
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- If performing borderless printing to images for which there are blanks at the top and bottom of the print data, combine printing with the **No spaces at Top or Bottom (conserve paper)** function in the **Layout** sheet for simpler borderless printing than borderless printing with no margins at top, bottom, left, or right. For details, refer to [“Printing without Top and Bottom Margins \(Conserve Paper\)”](#). (→ P.3-39)



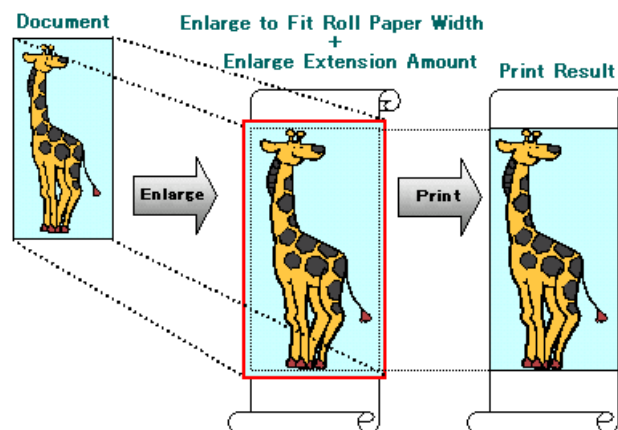
■ More About Borderless Printing Methods

There are two ways to create a document for borderless printing in addition to the methods described above (**Scale to fit the Page Size**).

<To do borderless document printing with a size not allowed for borderless printing>

- Enlarge/Reduce to Fit Roll Paper Width

You can enlarge or reduce the size of the original so it fits the width of the roll. The roll media width can be enlarged or reduced for borderless printing of document sizes that are not compatible with borderless printing (A4, A3, irregular sizes, etc).



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

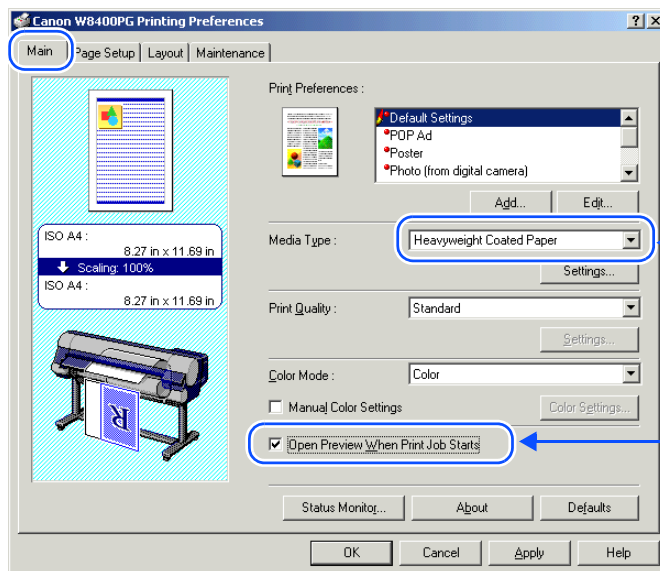
- 1 Create the original in the software application so it matches the size of the media used for printing.
- 2 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.



Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “Printing” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Use”](#). (→ [P.1-38](#))

- 3 Display the **Main** sheet and do the settings for borderless printing.



1 Select the paper type corresponding to borderless printing.

2 Select the **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** checkbox to check the print image in the preview screen before printing.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

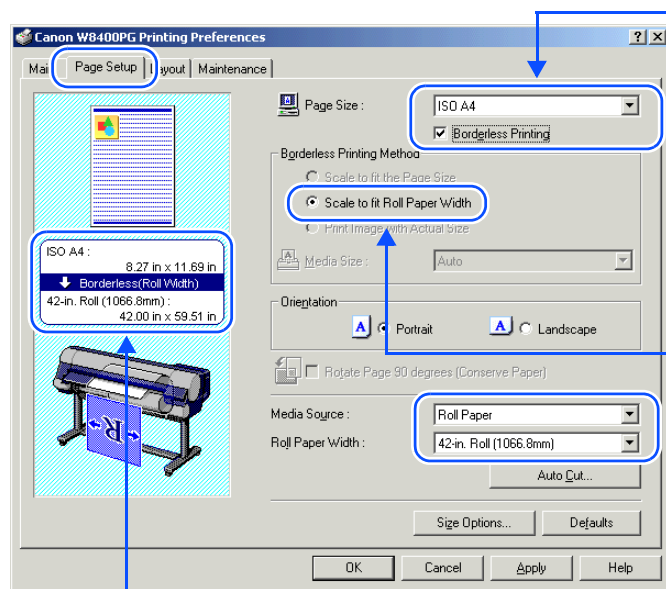
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

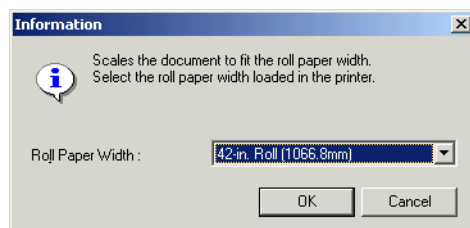
4 Display the **Page Setup** sheet and do the settings for borderless printing.



- 1 Select the size of the original created in the software application using **Page Size**.
- 2 Select the **Borderless Printing** checkbox.
- * In this example, A4 and document sizes that are not compatible with borderless printing have been selected.
- * Set **Borderless Printing Method** in **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width**.
- 3 To change the roll media width setting, select using the **Roll Paper Width** list.
- * The settings details will be supplied in the settings preview.

Note

- Select a document size compatible with borderless printing, and select the **Borderless Printing** checkbox. The following dialog box will be displayed. Select the width of the roll media loaded to the printer, and then press the **OK** button. Set **Borderless Printing Method** in **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width**.



- If performing borderless printing to images for which there are blanks at the top and bottom of the print data, combine printing with the **No spaces at Top or Bottom (conserve paper)** function in the **Layout** sheet for simpler borderless printing than borderless printing with no margins at top, bottom, left, or right. For details, refer to [“Printing without Top and Bottom Margins \(Conserve Paper\)”](#). (→ P.3-39)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 5** Check the content of the settings Preview, and then click the **OK** button.



Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ [P.3-5](#))

- 6** Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.

The print job starts.



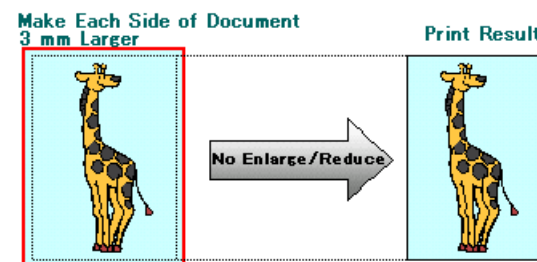
Note

- After the print data has been enlarged automatically to fit the roll media width, **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** printer driver will enlarge automatically by 3 mm the top, bottom, right, and left edges of the document. Consequently, the margin created by the printer configuration will be covered, and borderless printing will be performed. Parts that protrude beyond the 3 mm area at the edges will not be printed.

<To print a high-precision image with borderless printing>

- Print Image with Actual Size

Create a document with the top, bottom, left, and right borders and image protrusion enlarged by 3 mm, and then perform borderless printing on paper the same size as the manuscript. Use this method to avoid reduced image quality due to enlargement or reduction.



Note

- If printing having set **Borderless Printing Method** in either **Scale to fit the Page Size** or **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width**, depending on the printer driver, protrusion will be automatically enlarged, causing a slight reduction of image quality. If **Print Image with Actual Size** is selected in **Borderless Printing Method**, borderless printing can be performed while retaining the original highly-accurate quality. Select to prioritize accuracy and quality of fine lines, photos, etc.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 1 In the software application create an image with borders (top, bottom, right, left) 3 mm larger than the original document.



Note

- Example: If the media size is JIS B2 (515 x 728 mm), set the dimensions for the original as 521 x 734 mm.
- If you are using MS-Word or another Microsoft application, before you create the original select **Page Setup...** from the **File** menu and select the Page Size and Orientation.

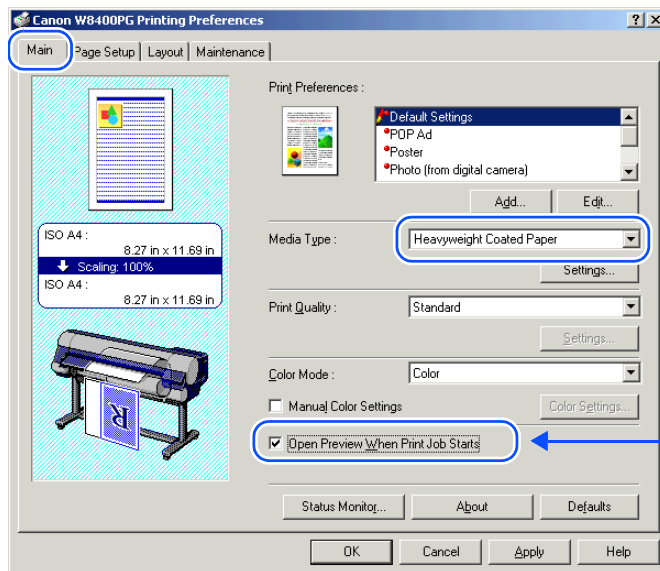
- 2 Open the printer driver dialog box from the Print dialog box of the application.



Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “Printing” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Use”](#). (→ P.1-38)

- 3 Display the **Main** sheet and do the settings for borderless printing.



1 Select the paper type corresponding to borderless printing.

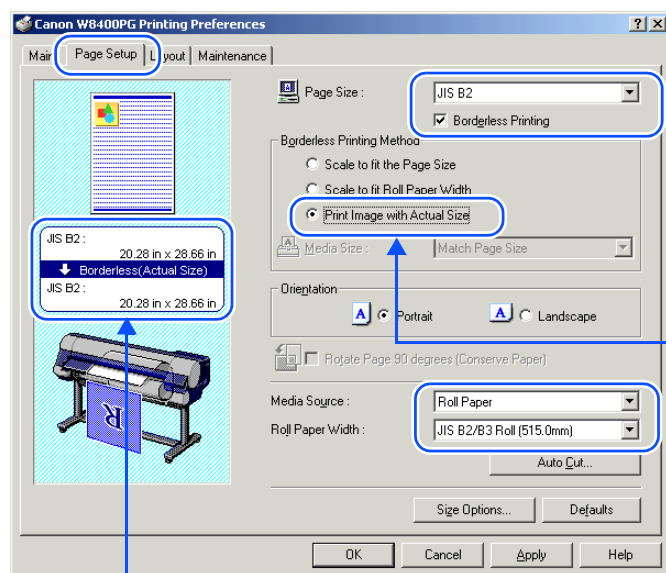
2 Select the **Open Preview when Print Job Starts** checkbox to check the print image in the preview screen before printing.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

4 Display the **Page Setup** sheet and do the settings for borderless printing.



- 1 Select the size of the original created in the software application using **Page Size**.
- 2 Select the **Borderless Printing** checkbox.
- 3 Select **Print Image with Actual Size** using **Borderless Printing Method**.
- 4 Check that the **Media Source** is the same size as the roll media, or that the document size is the same as the roll media width.

* The settings details will be supplied in the settings preview.

5 Check the content of the settings Preview, and then click the **OK** button.



Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ P.3-5)

6 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.

The print job starts.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

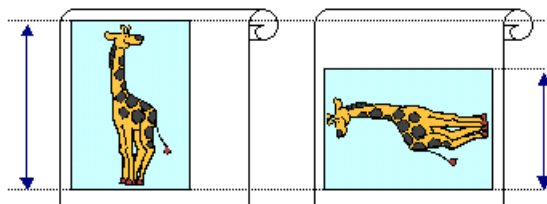
Contents

Index

Rotating the Page 90 Degrees for Printing (Conserve Paper)

If the page to be printed has been fits the roll media width, a page created vertically can be rotated 90 degrees and printed horizontally. By rotating the vertical page, paper can be conserved.

If this setting has been set in the printer driver, when the page is rotated, the page will be rotated and printed automatically if the roll media width is suitable. If the roll media width is not suitable, the page will not be rotated.



Important

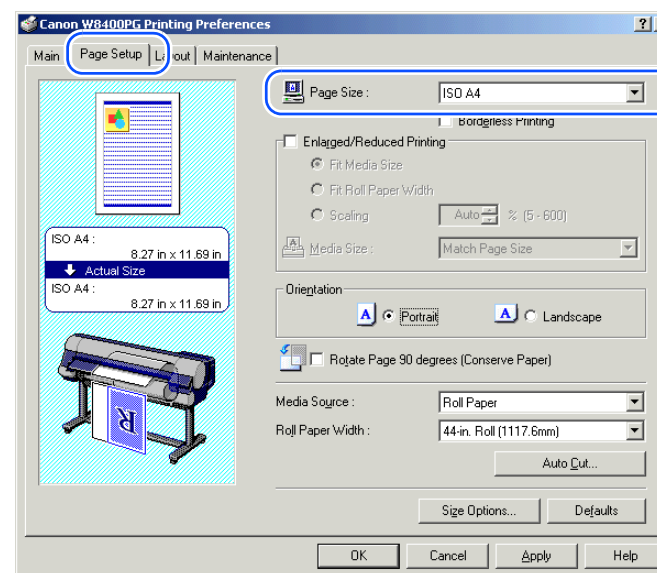
- Confirm that the **Roll Paper Width** setting is correct for the media loaded in the printer.
- If the selection for the **Media Source** is not **Roll Paper**, or if Borderless Printing is selected, this function cannot be used.

- 1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “**Printing**” in **Chapter 1 “Basic Use”**. (→ P.1-38)

- 2 Select the **Page Setup** sheet.
- 3 For **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** sheet select the size of the original created in the software application.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

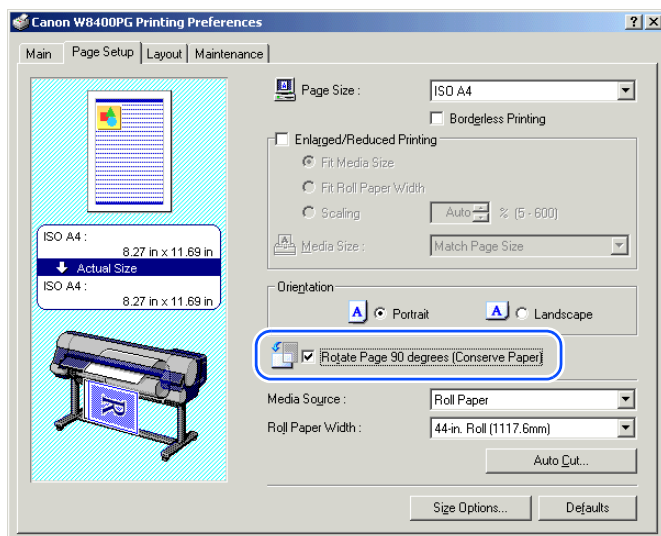
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

4 Select Rotate Page 90 Degrees.



5 Check the content of the settings Preview, and then click the OK button.



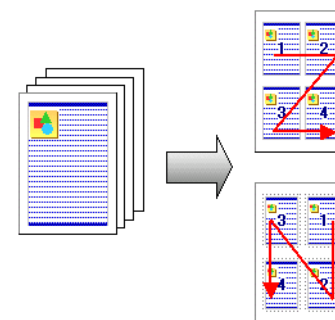
Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ [P.3-5](#))

6 Click the Print button in the Print dialog box. The print job starts.

Printing Several Pages on One Sheet (Page Layout)

You can reduce the size of the image and print 2 to 16 pages on one sheet. For example, if printing multiple-page documents two pages at a time, half the paper is sufficient. Further, advanced settings can also be made by entering the line boundaries and page distribution for the print sheets using the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box.



Important

- This function is not supported with Windows NT 4.0.

1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the Print dialog box of the application.

Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “[Printing](#)” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Use](#)”. (→ [P.1-38](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

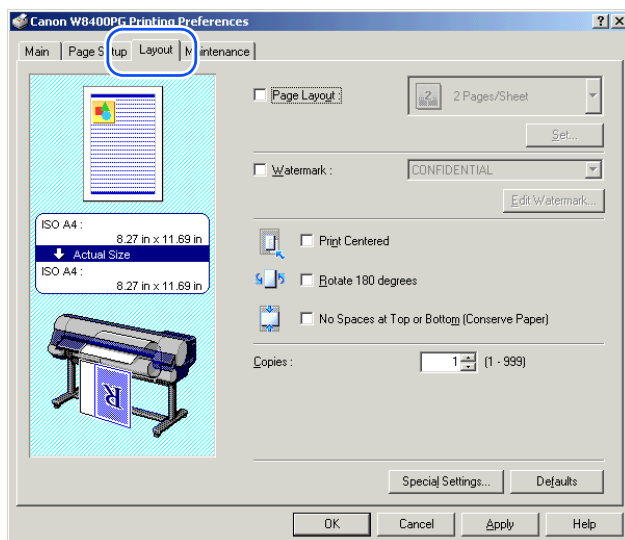
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

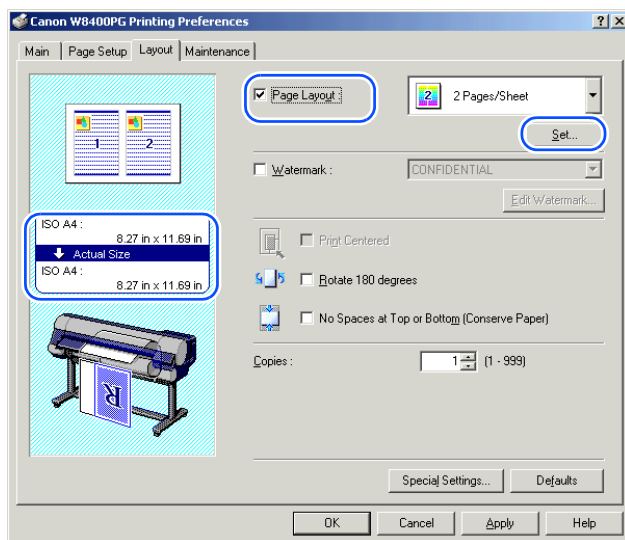
Contents

Index

2 Select the **Layout** sheet.

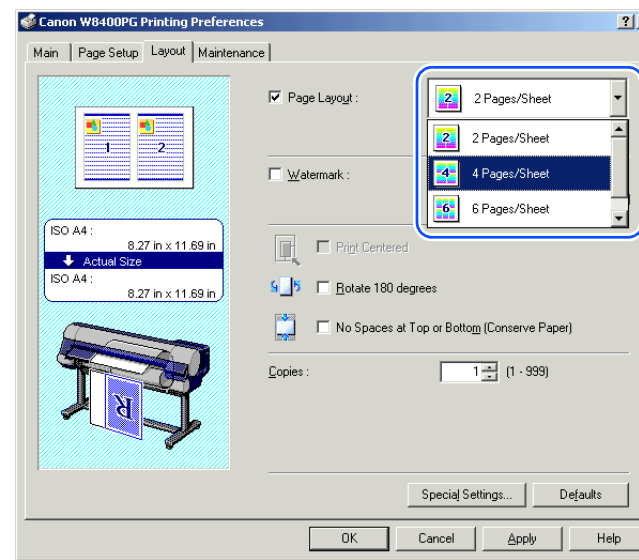


3 Select **Page Layout**.

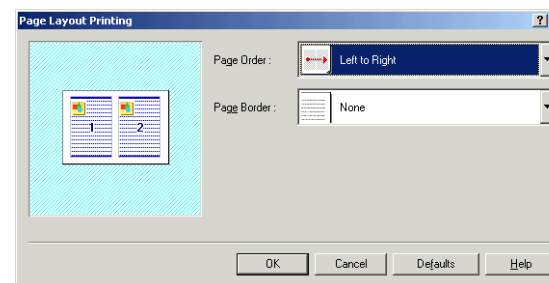


The Preview shows you want the printed page will look like with the number of pages selected for one sheet, then click the **Set...** button in the lower right corner of the **Page Layout** group.

4 From the **Page Layout** list, select the page layout that you want to print.



5 If you want to change the arrangement of the pages on the sheet or specify each page to print with a border line, click the **Set...** button to open the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

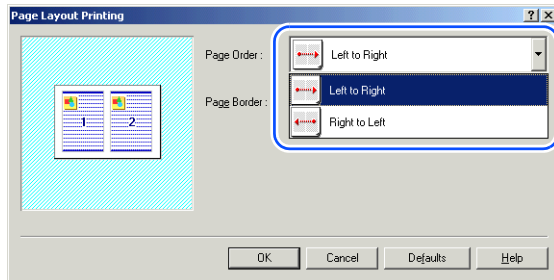
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

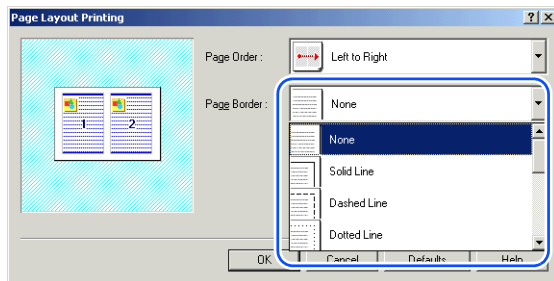
Contents

Index

- 6** To change the arrangement of the pages on the sheet, select the page order from the **Page Order** list.



- 7** If you want each page on the sheet to print with a border line, from the **Page Border** list click the type of border.



Note

- If you select a border line to print, the image is sized down by 5% to allow for the border line.
- As soon as you select a border line, you will see this reflected in the Preview.
- If you select **None** then the size of the page is not reduced.

- 8** Click the **OK** button to close the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box.

- 9** Check the content of the settings Preview, and then click the **OK** button.

Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ [P.3-5](#))

- 10** Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.
- The print job starts.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

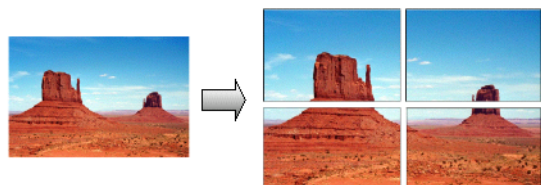
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

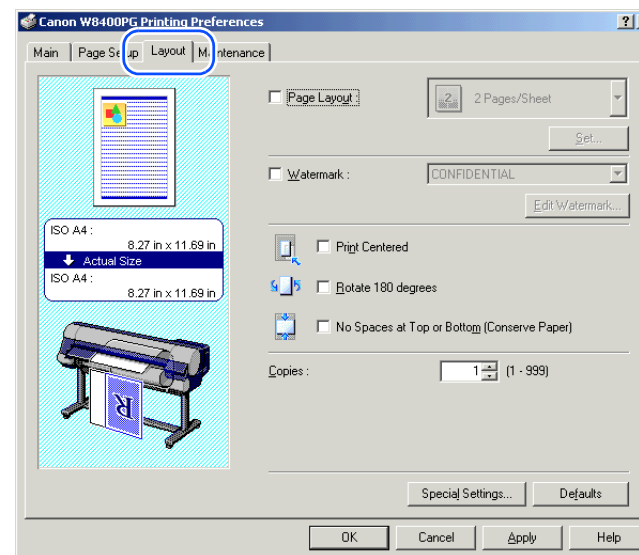
Index

Printing Posters (Page Layout)

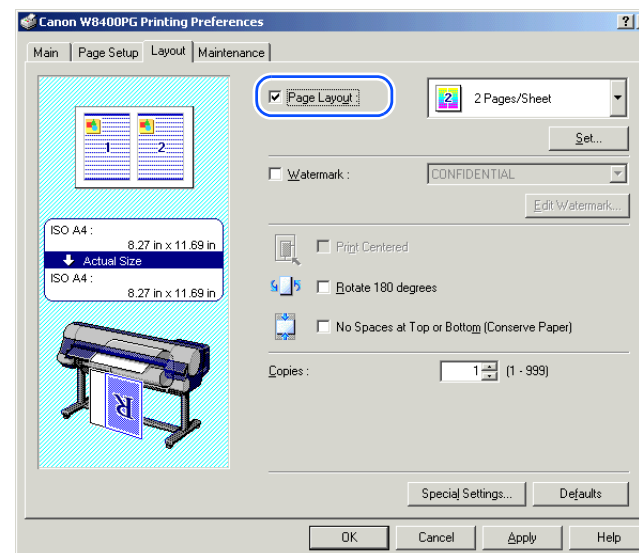
After the image is enlarged and divided into several sections, you can print the sections and paste them together to assemble one large poster.



2 Select the **Layout** sheet.



3 Select **Page Layout**.



Important

- This function is not supported with Windows NT 4.0.

1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “Printing” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Use”](#). (→ P.1-38)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

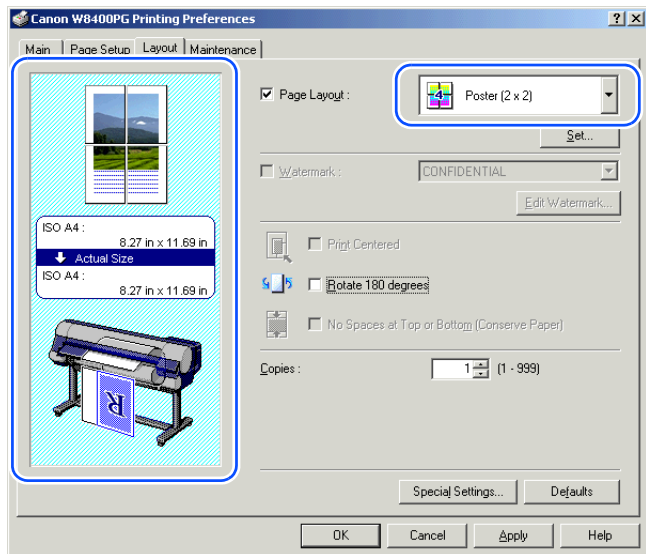
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

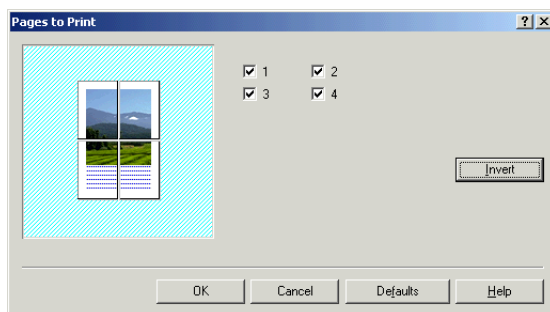
Index

4 Select **Poster (2x2)** from the **Page Layout** list.

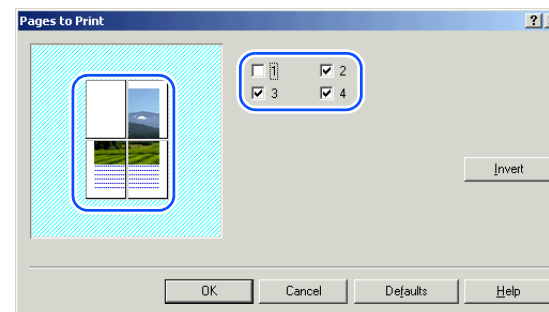
Confirm the appearance of the selected layout in the Preview.



5 If you do not want to print any panel (a section of the divided image), click the **Set...** button in the lower right corner of the **Page Layout** section to display the **Pages to Print** dialog box.



6 Click and select either the panel or the appropriate checkbox to deselect the panel for printing.



Note

- Press the **Invert** button to select and deselect the check mark. In the preview print image, an icon will be displayed for the pages selected to be printed, and for pages selected not to be printed, the area will be blank and no icon will be displayed.

7 Click the **OK** button to close the **Pages to Print** dialog box.

8 Check the content of the settings Preview, and then click the **OK** button.

Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ P.3-5)

9 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box. The print job starts.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Using Watermarks

Add a mark (Watermarks) to documents that are to be handled particularly for printing. A range of stamps (Confidential, copying prohibited, etc.) have been prepared as standard.



Important

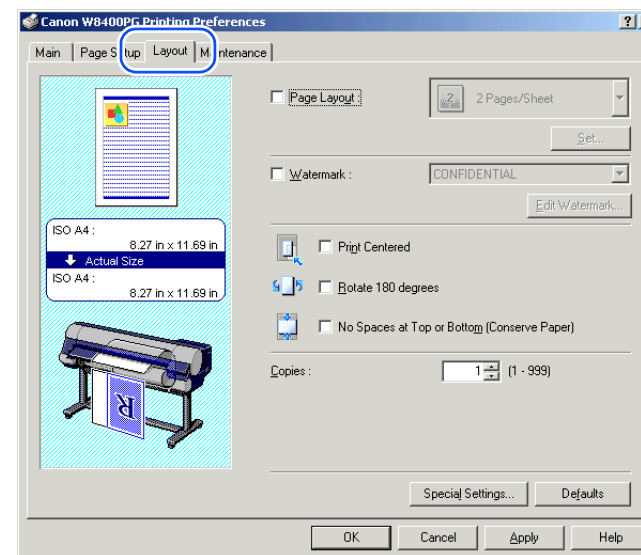
- This function is not supported with Windows NT 4.0.
- The **Watermark** function cannot be used if the print job is set up with a poster page layout.

1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

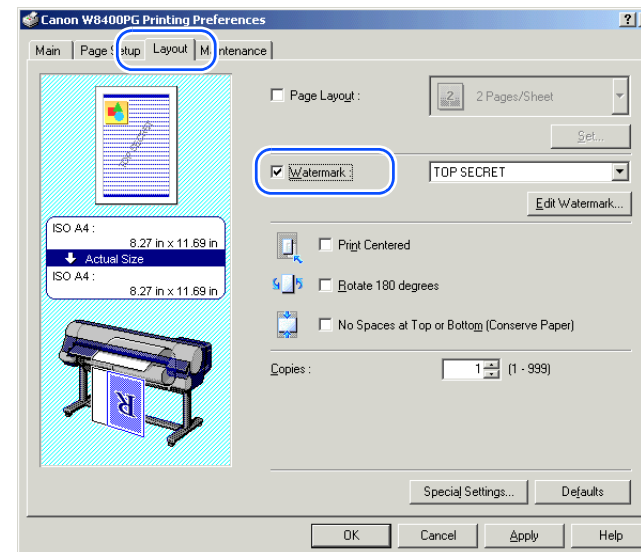
Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “[Printing](#)” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Use”](#). (→ P.1-38)

2 Select the **Layout** sheet.



3 Select **Watermark**.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

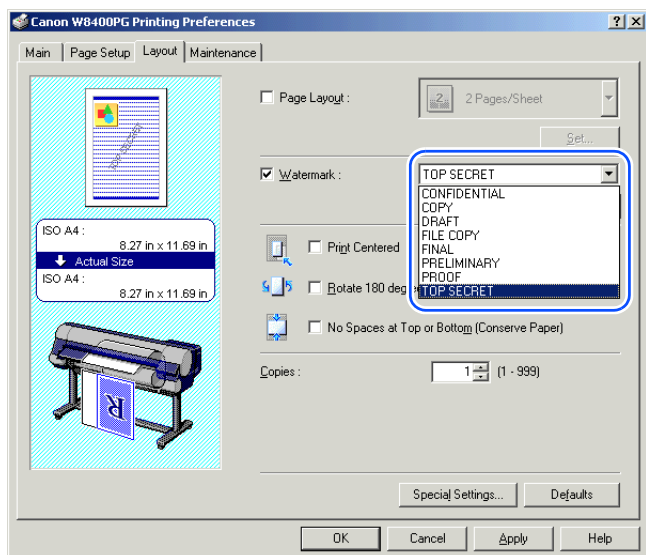
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 4** From the **Watermark** list, select the watermark that you want to print.

The watermark that you selected will appear in the Preview on the left.



- 5** Check the content of the settings Preview, and then click the **OK** button.



Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ [P.3-5](#))

- 6** Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.
The print job starts.



Note

- The following watermarks can be selected from the list.
“Confidential”, “Copy”, “Draft”, “In-House Only”, and “Copying prohibited”
- If the **Edit Watermark...** button is pressed, the **Edit Watermark** dialog box will be displayed. Use this dialog box to create, save, and edit unique stamps in addition to the stamps prepared by the printer driver. For details, refer to **Printing Watermarks** and then **Creating an Original Watermarks**, or to **Editing and Deleting an Original Watermark** in Help.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Vertical and Horizontal Banner Printing (Long Prints)

■ Matching the Width of the Roll

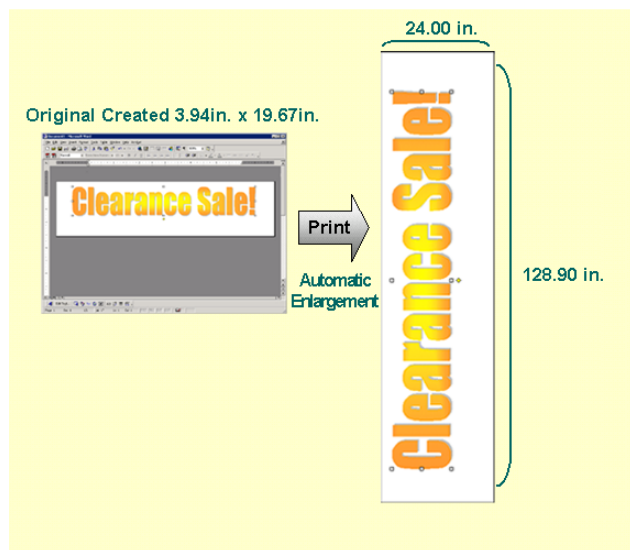
Once you become familiar with fitting images to the full width of the roll with your software application, it is very easy to print vertical and horizontal banners.

Here we will describe as an example how to take a 100 mm x 500 mm original and enlarge to fit a 24 inch roll (approximately 610 mm wide), and then print it as a banner (609.6 mm x 3,273.4 mm).



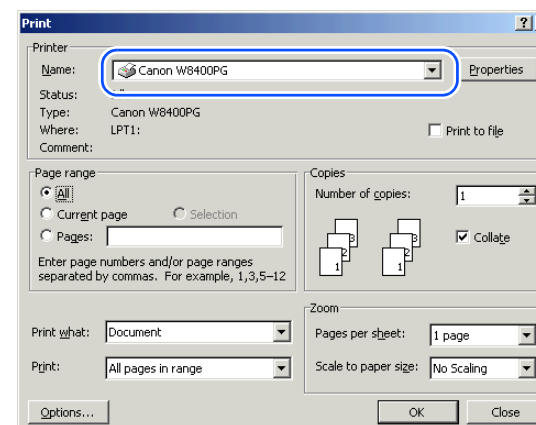
Note

- This printer can print a sheet up to 15, 250 mm (50 ft.) long.



- 1 Start the software application.
- 2 From the **File** menu select **Print...** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 3 Confirm that the printer name “Canon W8400PG” is displayed.

The sample of the **Print** dialog box below is from Microsoft Word.



Note

- If the above printer name is not displayed, select “Canon W8400PG” from the **Name** list.
- 4 Click the **Properties** button to open the printer driver dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

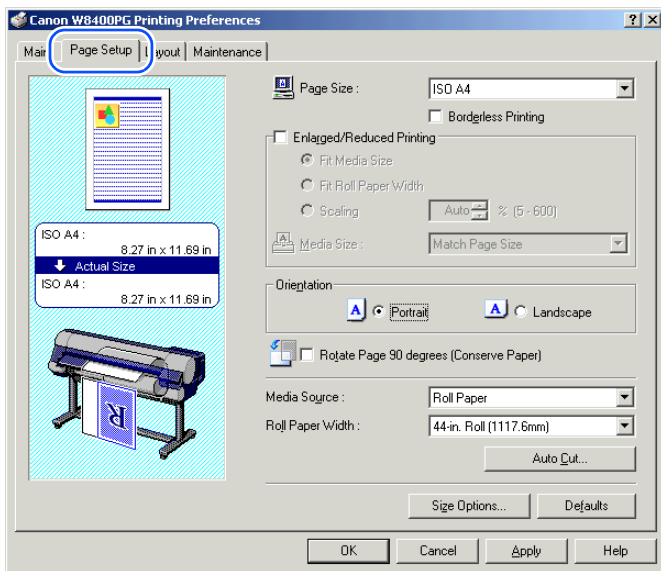
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

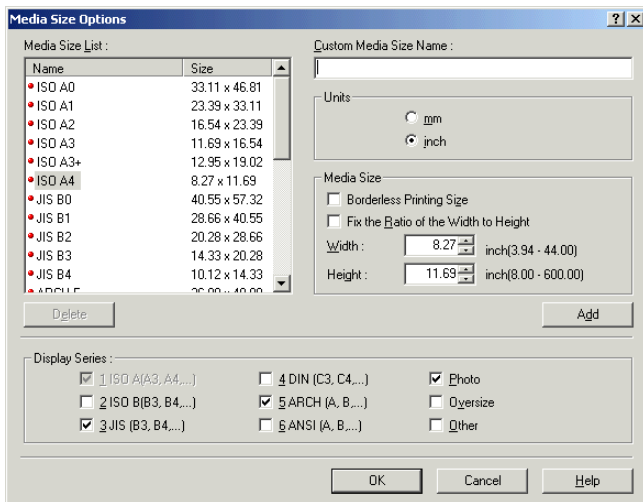
Contents

Index

5 Select the **Page Setup** sheet.



6 Click the **Size Options...** button to open the **Media Size Options** dialog box.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

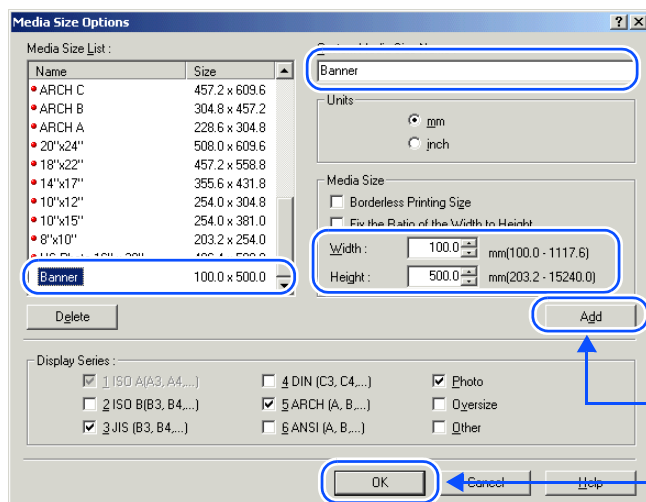
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

7 Define the size in the **Media Size Options** dialog box.



1 Displays any **Custom Media Size Name**.

2 Set the Width and Height in **Media Size**.

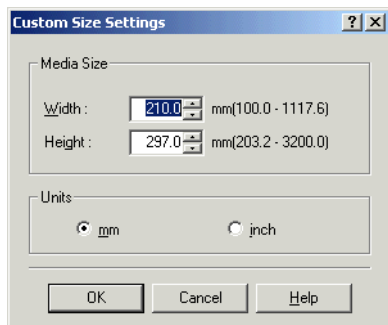
* Here, enter 100 mm in **Width**, and 500 mm in **Height**.

3 Finally, press the **Add** button.

4 Click the **OK** button to close the **Media Size Options** dialog box.

Note

- If the details have been saved using the **Media Size Options** dialog box, the custom media size name and media size will be added to the **Media Size List** display. For details of the **Media Size Options** dialog box, refer to "[About Size Options](#)". (→ P.3-53)
- The paper size settings can also be set using the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box, in addition to the method described above. The **Custom Size Settings** dialog box can be displayed by selecting custom size in the **Page Size** window in the **Page Setup** sheet.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- The custom size temporarily sets the user-defined paper size between the application software and the printer driver. Consequently, when the software application is closed, the media size set using the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box will be disabled. To save the media size setting, it is recommended to save the media size using the **Size Options...** dialog box.
- Depending on the application, the custom sizes may not be displayed. In this case, save the paper size using the **Size Options...** dialog box.

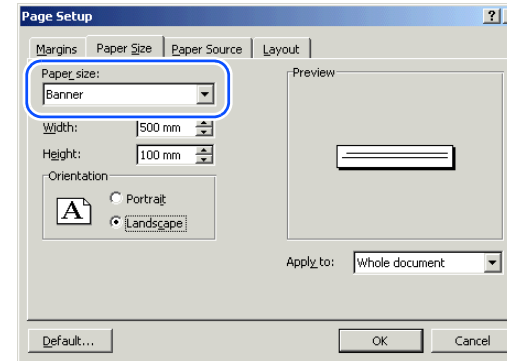
8 Click the **OK** button to close the printer driver dialog box.

9 Click the **Close** button to close the **Print** dialog box.

10 In the software application select **Page Setup...** from the **File** menu to open the **Page Setup...** dialog box.

<If you are using Microsoft Word...>

- Select the **Paper Size** sheet, then for the **Paper Size** select the size you defined and registered in the **Size Options...** dialog box.

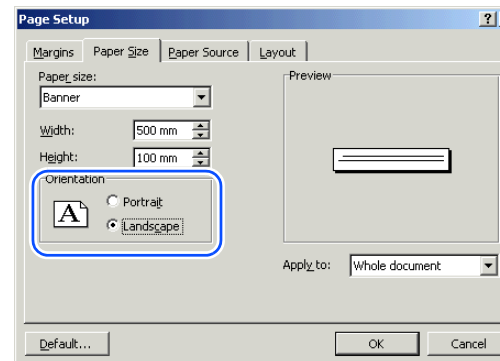


- Select **Landscape** for the **Orientation**, and then click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** dialog box.



Note

- This sets the **Orientation** to **Landscape** for the banner.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

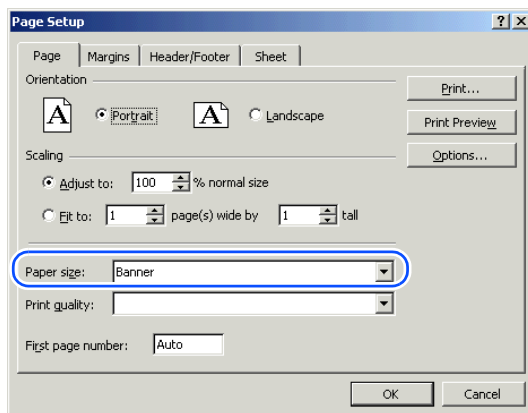
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

<If you are using Microsoft Excel...>

- a Display the **Page** sheet, then for the **Paper size** select the size you defined and registered in the **Size Options** dialog box.

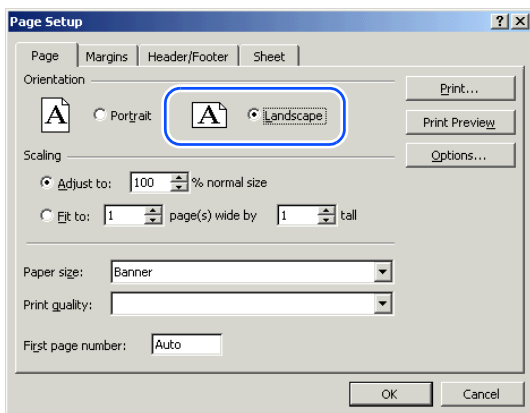


- b Select **Landscape** for the **Orientation**, and then click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** dialog box.



Note

- This sets the **Orientation** to **Landscape** for the banner.

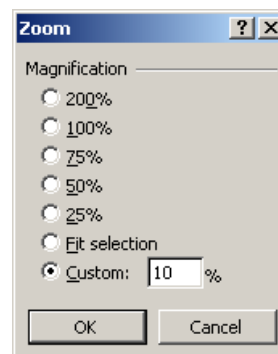


- c Click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** dialog box.



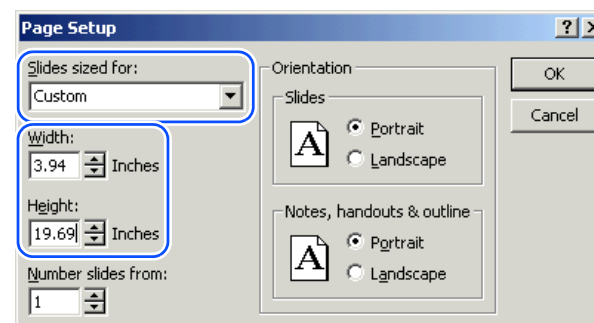
Note

- Click **Zoom...** on the **View** menu to adjust the display to the size you want.



<If you are using Microsoft PowerPoint...>

- a Select the **Custom** in **Slide sized for**, and then set the **Width** and **Height**. Here, enter 100 mm in **Width**, and 500 mm in **Height**.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

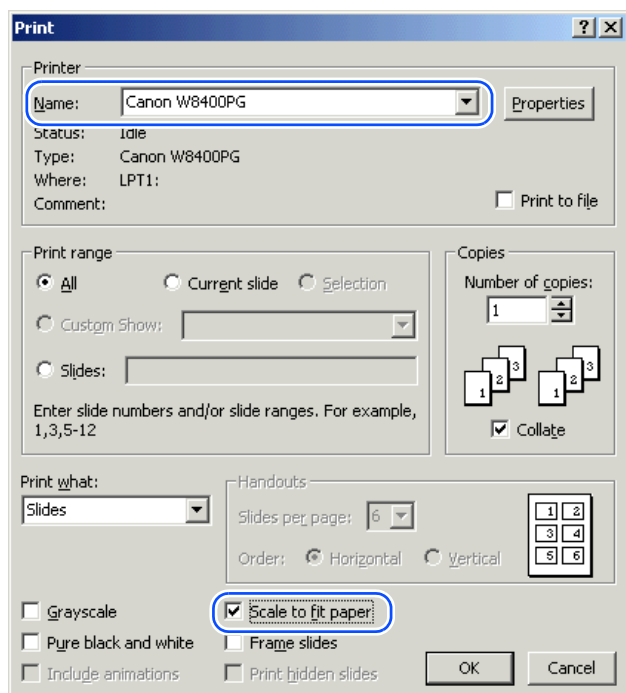
Contents

Index

- b Click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** dialog box.

 Note

- Also when printing the original from PowerPoint if you select **Scale to fit paper** in the **Print** dialog box the driver will size the page to fit the media loaded in the printer.

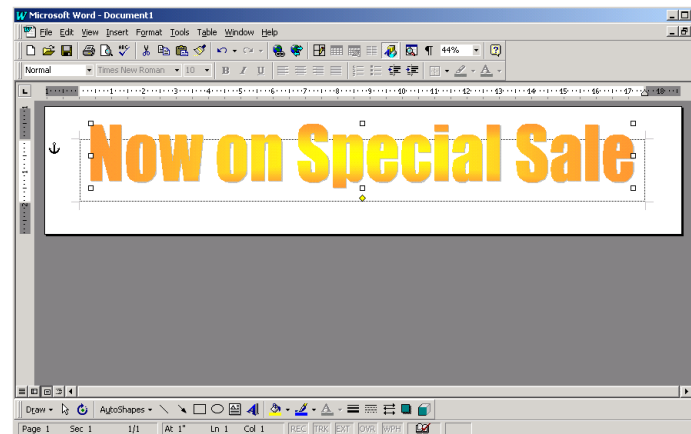


11

Create the original in the software application.

 Note

- The following document example uses Microsoft Word. On the Menu bar, select **Insert**, then **Picture**, and then **Word Art...**, and then select the desired style and enter the text.
- For more details about how to create the original, please refer to the operating instructions for each software application.



12

After the original is created, from the **File** menu select **Print...** to open the **Print** dialog box.

13

Click the **Properties** button to open the printer driver dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

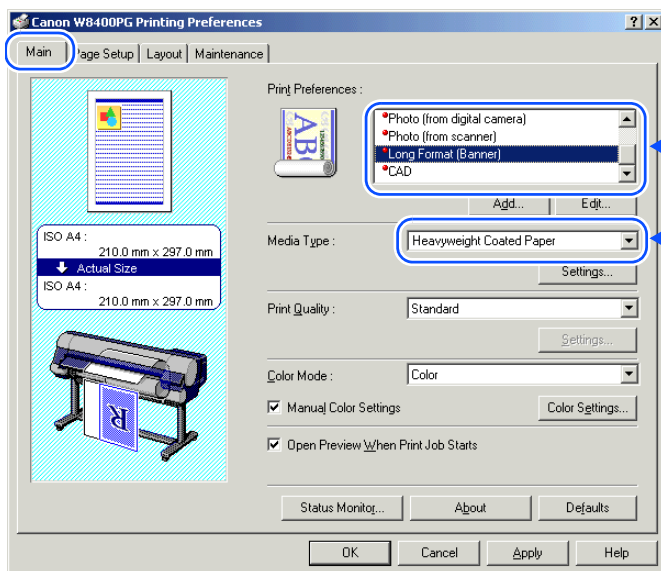
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

14

Select the **Main** sheet and do the settings for a long print.

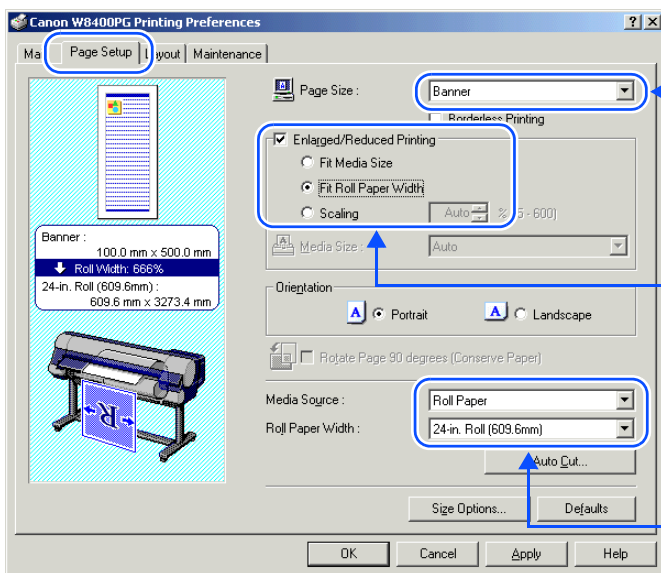


1 From the **Print Preferences** list, select **Long Format (Banner)**.

2 From the **Media Type** list, select the paper type.

15

Select the **Page Setup** sheet and do the settings for a long print.



1 From the **Page Size** list, select the name of the paper saved in the customized settings.

2 Select the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** checkbox, and then select **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

3 Select **Roll Paper** in **Media Source**, and select **24-in Roll (609.6mm)** in **Roll Paper Width**.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

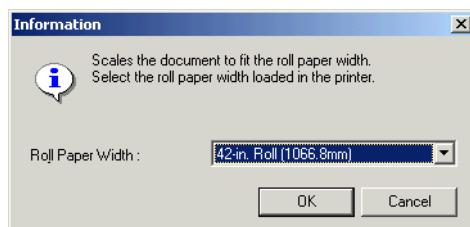
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** checkbox is not displayed, clear the **Borderless Printing** checkbox. The **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** checkbox will be displayed.
- If the **Fit Roll Paper Width** checkbox is selected in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**, the following dialog box will be displayed. Select the width of the roll media loaded to the printer, and then press the **OK** button.



16 Check the content of the settings preview, and then click the **OK** button.

 Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ [P.3-5](#))

17 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.

The print job starts.

 Note

- If printing cannot be performed correctly using any of the following OS: Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, Windows Me, or Windows 98, press the **Special Settings...** button in the **Layout** sheet. The **Special Settings** dialog box will be displayed. Click the **FineZoom Settings** list, and then select **Yes** to enable printing.
- If you cannot do the print job with Windows NT 4.0, you may be able to enable printing by selecting **Standard** or **Draft** under **Print Quality** on the **Main** sheet.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

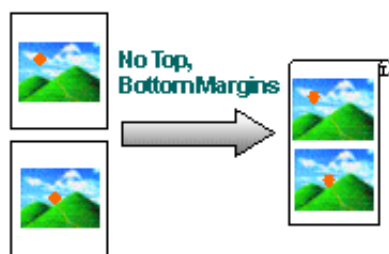
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

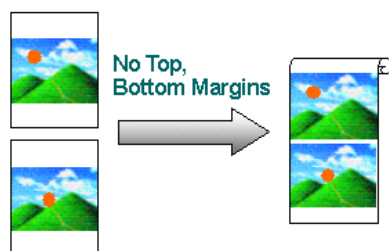
Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)

If there are blank areas at the top and bottom of the print data, delete the blank areas before printing. Paper will not feed for the blank areas, to conserve paper. This function can be used only if "Roll Media" is selected as the paper feed.



Note

- You use this method during borderless printing as shown in the illustration below.



Important

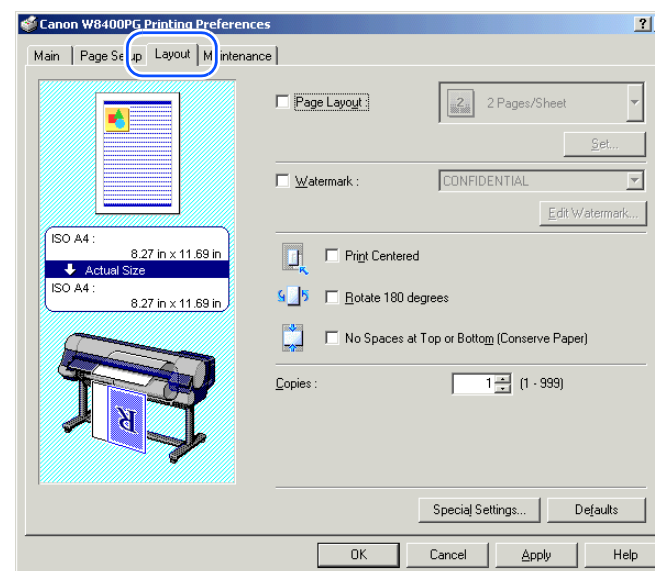
- This function cannot be used when Cut Sheet is selected as the Media Source.
- With this feature cannot be selected with **Poster (2 x 2)** set for the page layout.

- 1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to "Printing" in [Chapter 1 "Basic Use"](#). (→ P.1-38)

- 2 Select the **Layout** sheet.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

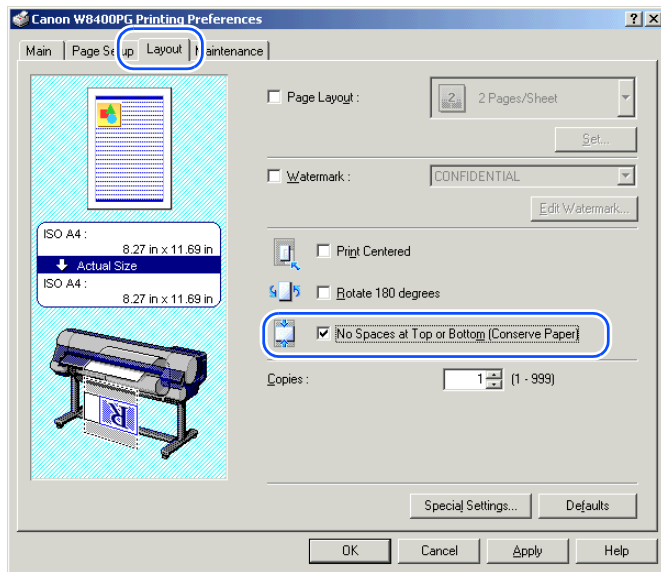
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

3 Select No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper).



4 Check the content of the settings preview, and then click the **OK** button.



Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ [P.3-5](#))

5 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box. The print job starts.

Custom Print Quality

■ Customizing Print Quality

To set the print quality and print size combinations, select **Custom Settings** in **Print Quality** to set the print quality and resolution according to the application, using the **Custom Settings** dialog box. For example, if printing mixed data such as text, photos, and graphics, etc., the character resolution can be raised, and the photo and graphics resolution can be lowered for printing.

1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.



Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “[Printing](#)” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Use”](#). (→ [P.1-38](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

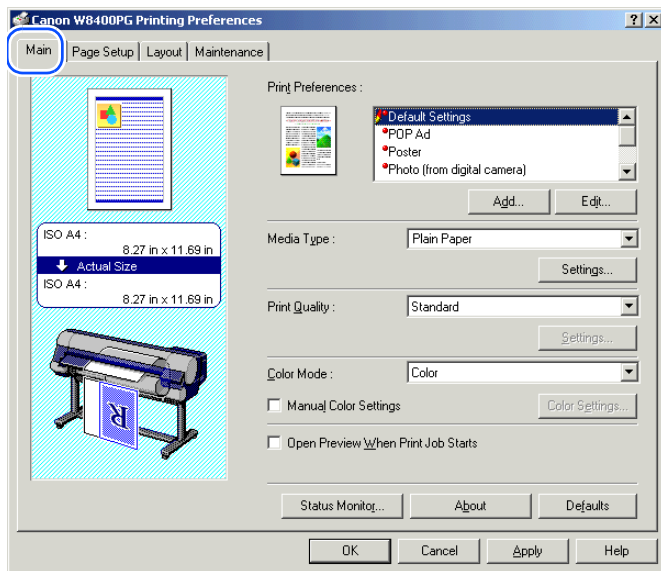
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

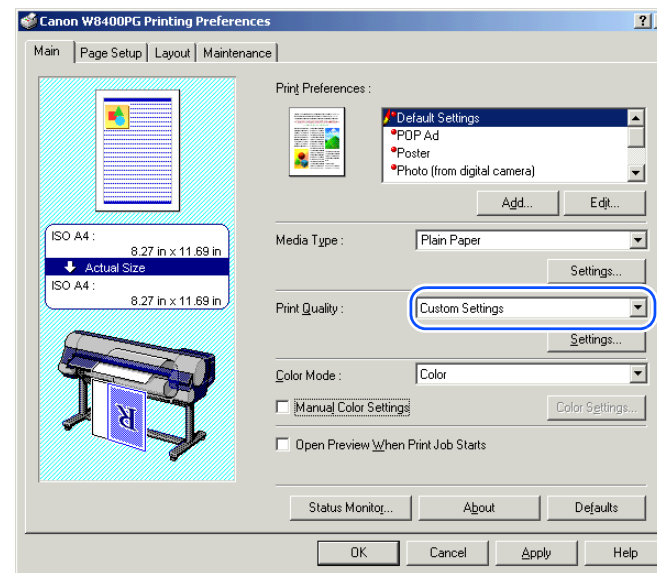
Contents

Index

2 Confirm that the **Main** sheet is displayed.

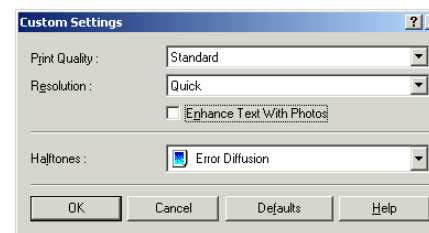


3 From the **Print Quality** list, select **Custom Settings**.



A **Settings...** button appears in the lower left corner of the **Print Quality** group.

4 Click the **Setting...** button in the **Print Quality** group to open the **Custom Settings** dialog box.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

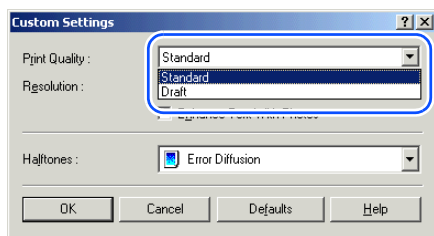
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

5 From the **Print Quality** list, select the quality settings.



Note

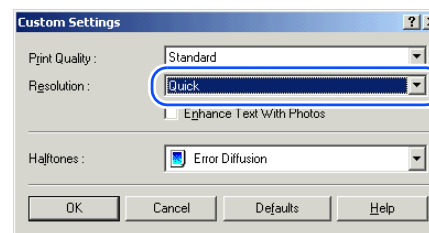
- The print quality settings that you can select for the custom settings are described below.

Print Quality	Content
Highest	Prioritizes attaining the highest image quality for printing.
High	Prioritizes attaining high image quality for printing.
Standard	Attains a stable image at an average printing speed.
Draft	Prioritizes high printing speed but you should check layout and other aspects of the image after printing.

- The print quality that can be selected depends on the type of paper set. The **Highest** of **Print Quality** can be selected only if the paper types described below have been set. Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper, Fabric Banner, Japanese Paper Washi, CAD Translucent Matte Film, CAD Clear Film

- If one of the types of media below is selected, Draft cannot be selected under Print Quality. Premium Matte Paper, Glossy Photo Paper, Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper, Synthetic Paper, Adhesive Synthetic Paper, Matte Film, Backlit Film, Flame Resistant Cloth, Japanese Paper Washi, CAD Translucent Matte Film

6 Confirm the resolution.



Important

- As described below, the resolution will be set automatically according to the printer quality selected. To change the resolution, change the print quality settings.

Print Quality	Resolution	Content
Highest, High, Standard	Fine (600 dpi)	The higher the resolution, the slower the print speed. Optimum print results can be obtained, but the print time will be considerable, and large memory space is required.
Standard, Draft	Quick (300 dpi)	The lower the resolution, the faster the print speed. The print time will be reduced, and the memory required will be small.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- If the **Print Quality** is set to **Standard**, selecting the following paper using **Media Type** will set the **Resolution** to “Fine (600 dpi)”. In any other paper is selected, the **Resolution** will be set to “Quick (300 dpi)”.
Premium Matte Paper, Backlit Film, Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas Matte, Canvas Semi-Glossy, CAD Plain Paper, CAD Tracing Paper, CAD Translucent Matte Film, CAD Clear Film

7 Click the **OK** button to close the **Custom Settings** dialog box.



Note

- If you select **Enhance Text with Photos** in the **Custom Settings** dialog box then when you have text mixed with photos or graphic data, the resolution of the text will be raised and the resolution of the photos or graphics will be lowered.
- **Error Diffusion** only can be set in **Halftones** user settings. The margin of error scatter distributes pixels randomly and is expressed in halftones. This is ideal for printing photos and graphics for which detailed gradation is required.

Fine Adjusting Color for Printing

■ Adjusting Color

Basically the color settings of the software application have priority, but if the results of a print job are not what you want you can also adjust color in the printer driver. You can also take color photos captured with a scanner or a digital camera, or any other color image, and print them in monochrome.

Now will we describe the color adjustments.

1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.



Note

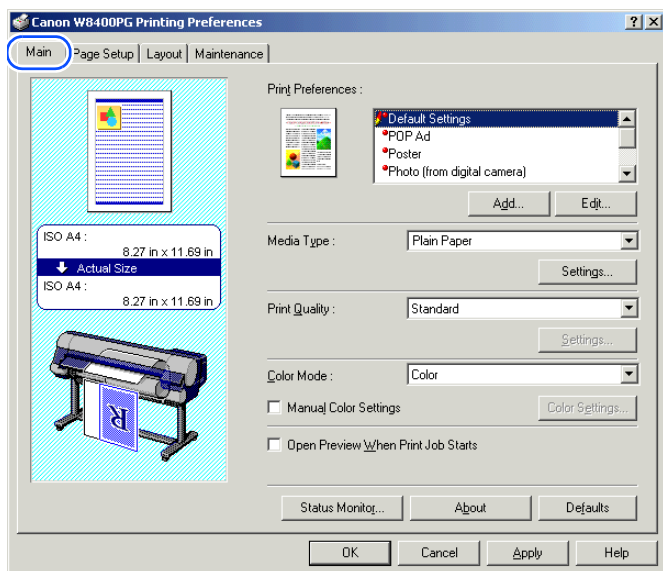
- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “[Printing](#)” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Use”](#). (→ P.1-38)

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

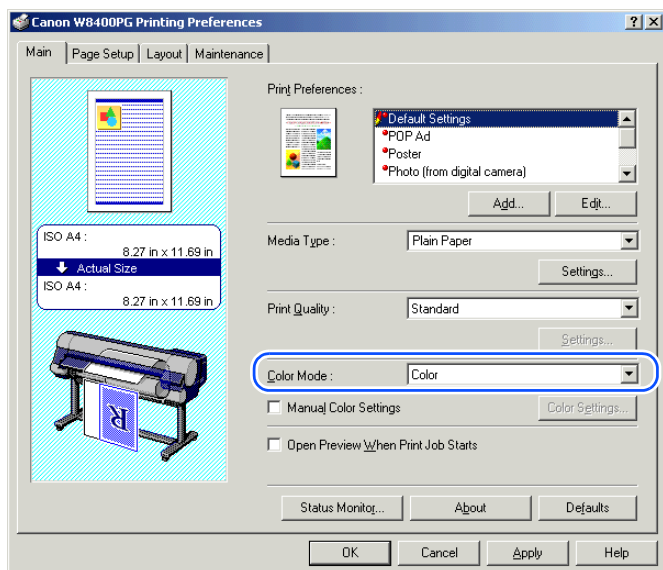
Contents

Index

2 Confirm that the **Main** sheet is displayed.



3 On the **Main** sheet select **Color Mode** then **Color**.



Note

- **Color Mode** presents these following items for selection.

Color Mode	Content
Color	Prints in color.
Monochrome (Photo):	Provides stable monochrome photo printing with minimal tone change and enables detailed adjustment of gray scale gradations and color tones.
Monochrome	Prints in monochrome.
Solid Color	Printing is limited to colors only. Use to print sharply thin-colored fine lines.
Black Only	All colors other than white are printed black.

Important

- Monochrome (Photo) can be selected for Color Mode only if one of the following types of paper is selected: Glossy Photo Paper/Semi-Glossy Photo Paper/ Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper/Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper/Fine Art Photo/Fine Art Heavyweight Photo/Fine Art Textured/Japanese Paper Washi

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

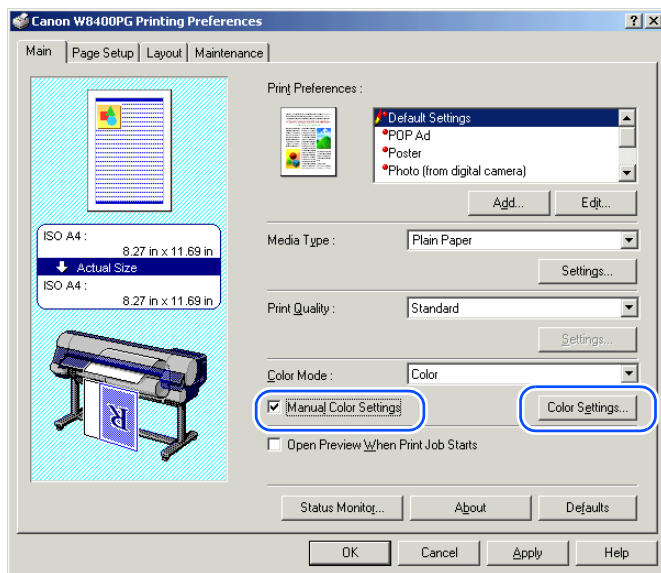
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

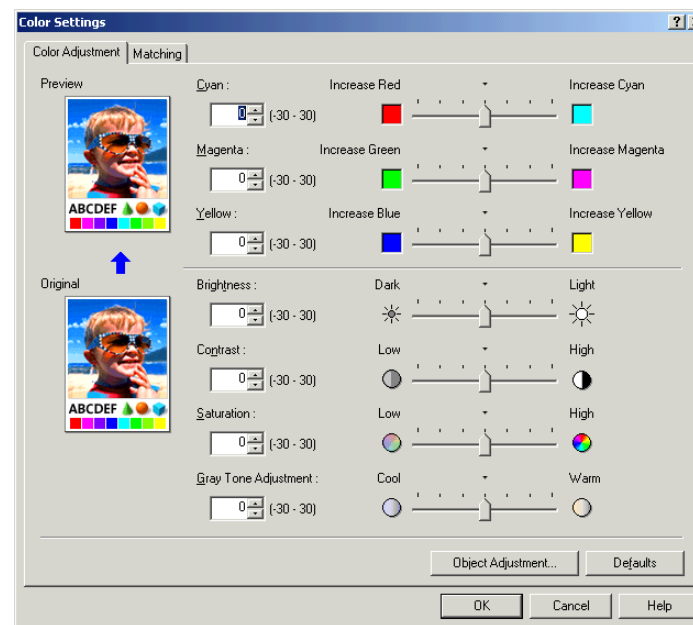
Contents

Index

4 Select **Manual Color Settings** then click the **Color Settings** button.

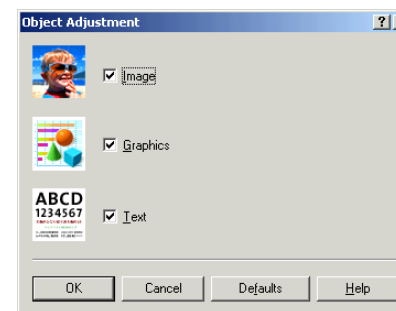


The **Color Settings** dialog box opens.



5 Confirm that the **Color Adjustment** sheet is displayed, then click the **Object Adjustmen...** button.

The **Object Adjustment** dialog box opens.



Note

- **Manual Color Settings** are enabled when **Color**, **Monochrome (Photo)**, or **Monochrome** is selected for **Color Mode**.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

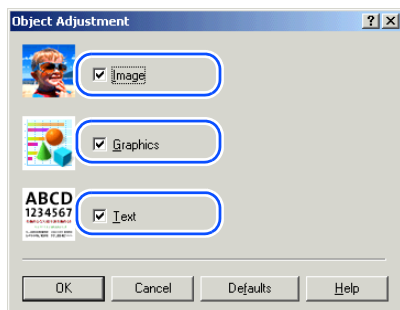
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

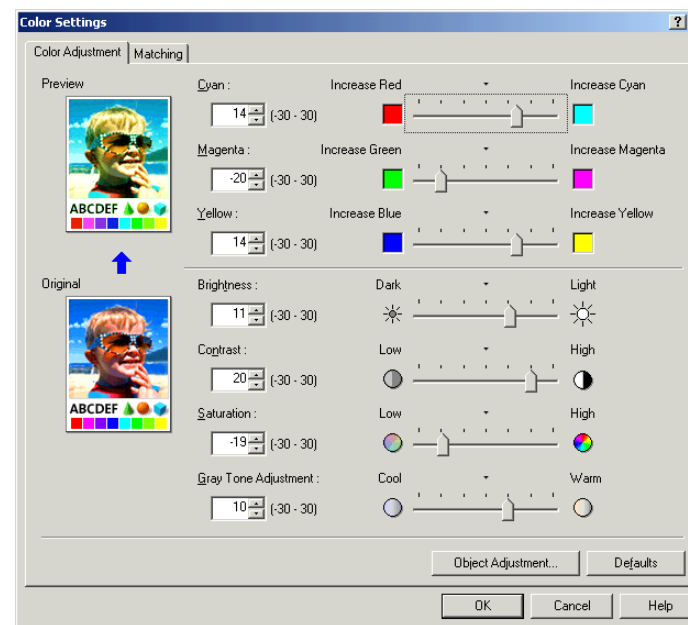
Contents

Index

6 Select the item that you want to adjust:
Image, Graphics, or Text.



8 Drag the slide bar for the custom settings to the left or right to perform adjustment. Alternatively, click the arrow buttons in the field for entering values, or enter the value directly, to perform adjustments.



Note

- Note that for this printer driver all the items (**Image, Graphics, Text**) are selected as the default settings.

7 Click the **OK** button to close the **Object Adjustment** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index



Note

- **Color Adjustment** presents the following items for selection.

Color Adjustment	Content
Cyan	You can calibrate the hues for Cyan, Magenta, Yellow.
Magenta	
Yellow	
Brightness	Adjusts brightness from the darkest to brightest colors so none are lost in the brightness of the printed image.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative contrast from brightest to darkest colors.
Saturation	Adjusts the vividness of colors from dull to extremely vivid.
Gray Tone Adjustment	Adjusts grayscale from cool colors (blue tones) to warm colors (red tones).

■ Color Matching

When you print an image captured with a scanner or a digital camera, sometimes the appearance of the printout does not match what you see on the screen.

This is because the colors displayed on-screen and the printed colors are different. Using the **Matching** sheet in the **Color Settings** dialog box, set the ICC (International Color Consortium) or ICM (Image Color Management) color profile to matching mode, enter profile, or printer profile to more closely match the colors displayed on-screen to the printer colors.

- 1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.



Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “Printing” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Use”](#). (→P.1-38)



Important

- As you change each item, the image of the **Preview** on the left changes to reflect the adjustment. The **Original** shows the appearance of the initial settings, and the **Preview** reflects the current settings.
- Even after the settings have been changed using the **Color Adjustment** sheet, if the **Manual Color Settings** checkbox is not selected, the **Color Adjustment** sheet settings will be disabled. If you do not want to adjust the colors, uncheck the checkbox.

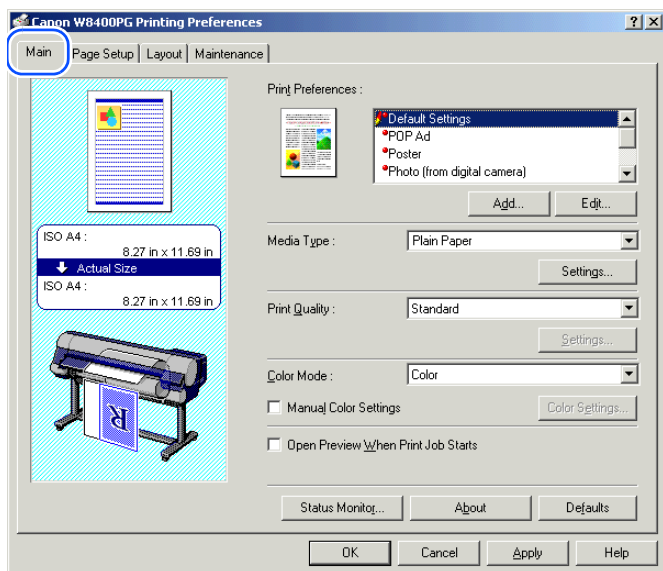
- 9 Click the **OK** button to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

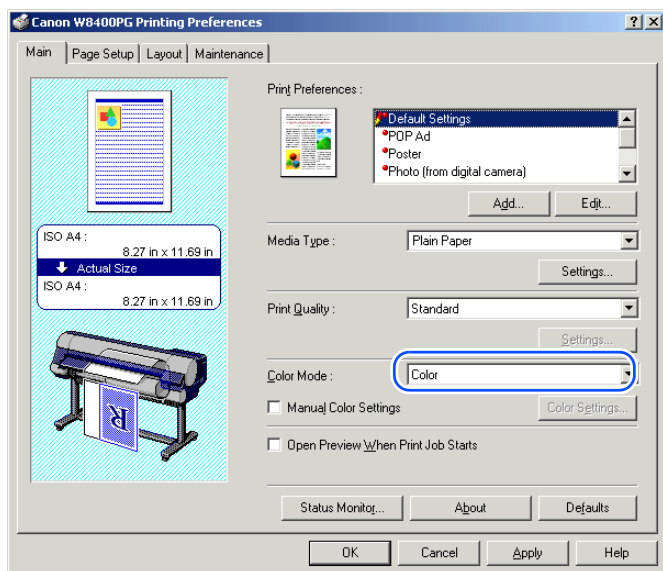
Contents

Index

2 Confirm that the **Main** sheet is displayed.



3 On the **Main** sheet select **Color Mode** then **Color**.



Note

- **Color Mode** presents these following items for selection.

Color Mode	Content
Color	Prints in color.
Monochrome (Photo):	Provides stable monochrome photo printing with minimal tone change and enables detailed adjustment of gray scale gradations and color tones.
Monochrome	Prints in monochrome.
Solid Color	Printing is limited to colors only. Use to print sharply thinly-colored fine lines.
Black Only	All colors other than white are printed black.

Important

- Monochrome (Photo) can be selected for Color Mode only if one of the following types of paper is selected: Glossy Photo Paper/Semi-Glossy Photo Paper/ Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper/Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper/Fine Art Photo/Fine Art Heavyweight Photo/Fine Art Textured/Japanese Paper Washi

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

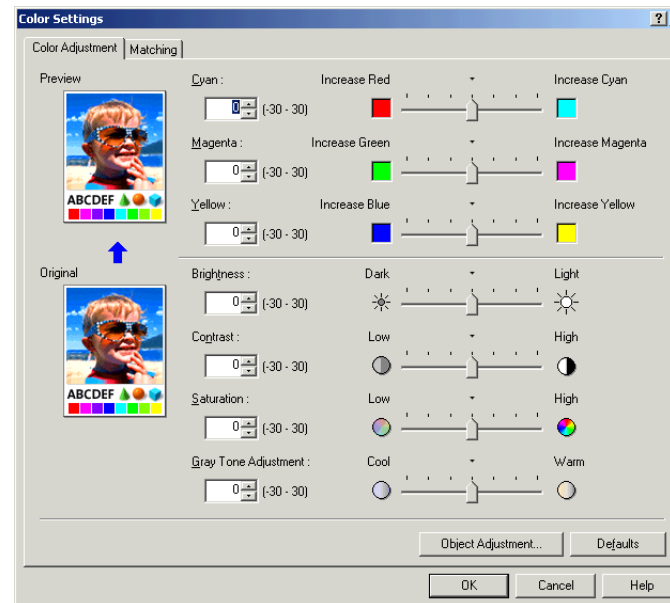
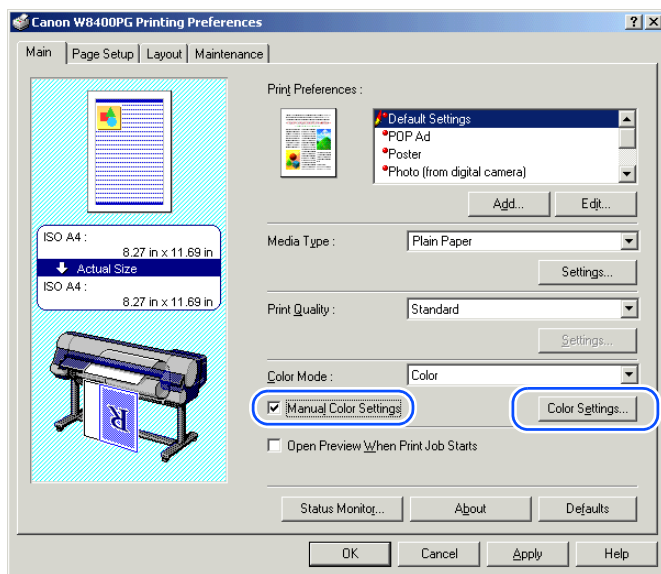
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

4 Select Manual Color Settings then click the Color Settings... button.



Note

- **Manual Color Settings** are enabled when **Color**, **Monochrome (Photo)**, or **Monochrome** is selected for **Color Mode**.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

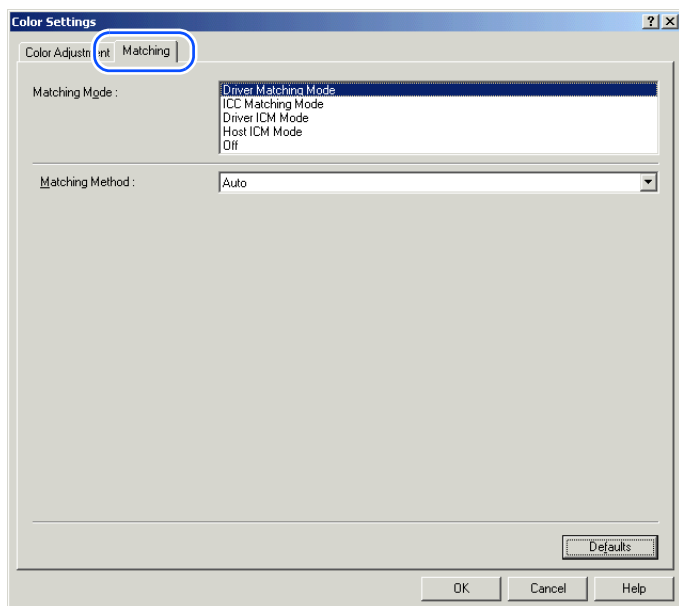
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

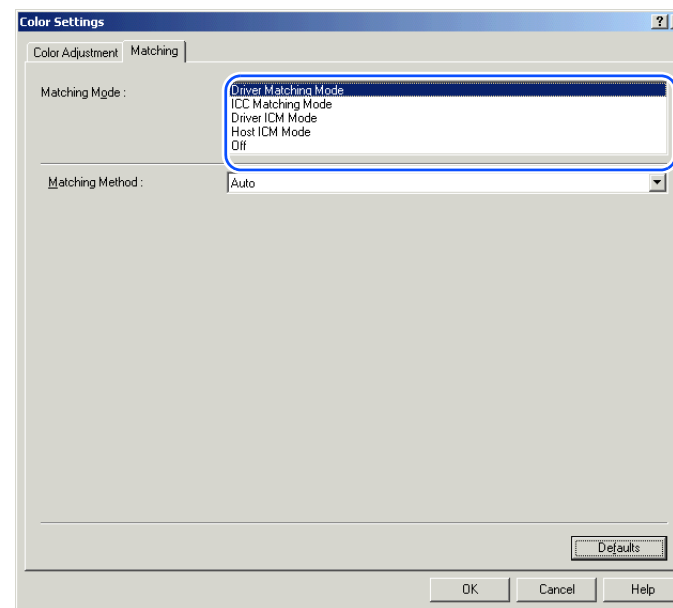
Contents

Index

5 In the **Color Settings** dialog box, select the **Matching** sheet.



6 From the **Matching Mode** list, select the matching mode.



Note

- Here is a list of the available matching modes.

Matching Mode	Content
Driver Matching Mode	Calibrates color using the original color profile of the printer driver.
ICC Matching Mode	Calibrates the color in the printer driver using the standards of ICC color profiles.
Driver ICM Mode	Calibrates color in the printer driver using the Windows ICM function for color calibration. *This mode is displayed only for Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, and Windows 2000.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

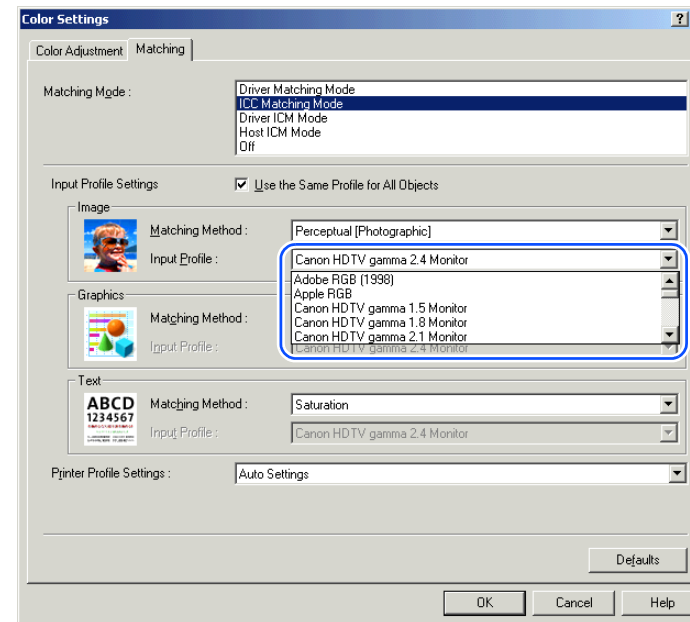
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Matching Mode	Content
Host ICM Mode	Calibrates color in the printer driver using the Windows ICM function for color calibration at the host computer. Note: This mode is displayed only for Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, and Windows 2000.
Off	Color matching not performed. The color matching is done in the software application or performed by and independent color profile; select when you want the color matching of the printer driver is ignored.

7 When **ICC Matching Mode** is selected for the **Matching Mode**, at **Image** under **Input Profile Settings** select a profile from the **Input Profile** list.

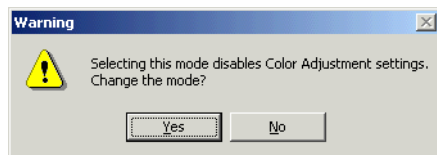


Note

- If you want to do different settings for **Graphics** and **Text**, then you must cancel the selection of **Use the Same Profile for All Objects**.

Important

- The mode you select for the **Matching Mode** affects what items are available for selection.
- If **Driver ICM Mode** and **Host ICM Mode** are selected, the following error message will be displayed. To disable color adjustment settings, click the **No** button. If the **No** button is clicked, **Driver ICM Mode** and **Host ICM Mode** cannot be selected.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

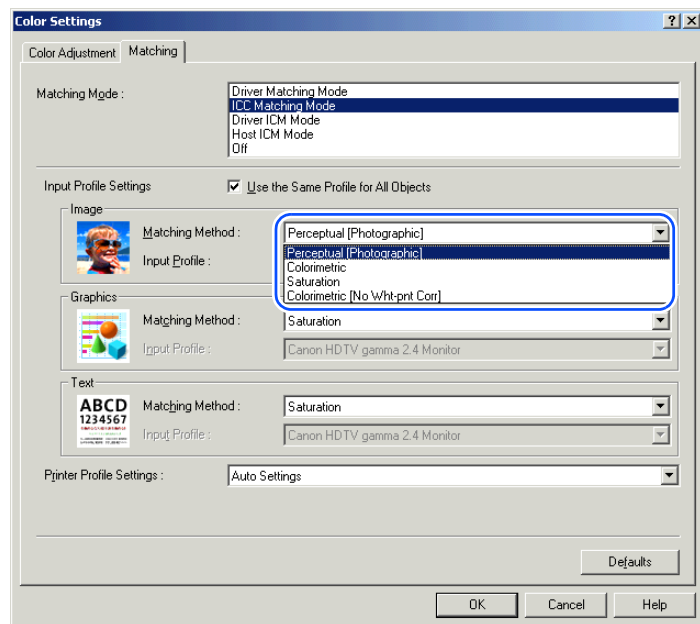
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

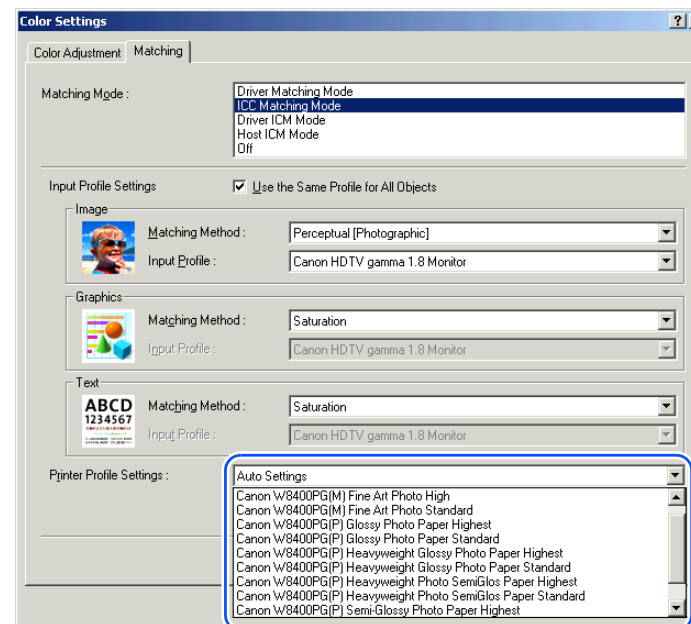
Index

8 Click **Matching Method** in the input profiles, and select a matching method.



Matching Method	Content
Colorimetric (No Wht-Pnt Corr)	The entered data is reproduced faithfully. White compensation is not performed.
Saturation	This mode is ideal for graphics. Achieves the best results with priority on color saturation.

9 From the **Printer Profile Settings** list, select a printer profile.



Note

- **Matching Method** presents the following items for selection.

Matching Method	Content
Auto	Makes the best selections for the Image , Graphics , and Text items. *This item is available only when Driver Matching Mode is selected.
Perceptual (Photographic)	This mode is ideal for photos. Results close to the colors displayed on the monitor, and smooth gradations, can be obtained.
Colorimetric	The entered data is reproduced faithfully. To compensate for white, if white data is output, no color is added.

Note

- A print profile can be selected only when **ICC Matching Mode** is selected under the **Matching Mode**.

10 Click the **OK** button to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

About Size Options

■ Creating Custom Sizes

Click the **Size Options...** in the **Page Setup** sheet on the printer driver. The **Media Size Options** dialog box will be displayed. Use this dialog box to create and save unique customized paper. The customized paper sizes can be selected from the same list as standard paper sizes.

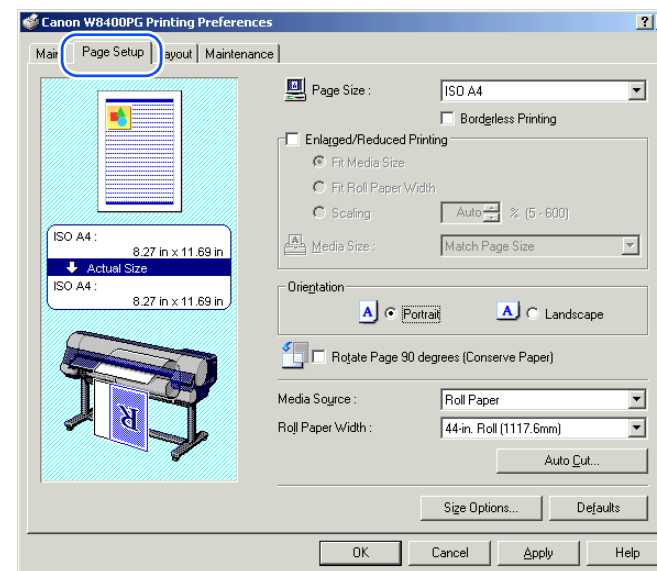
- 1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.



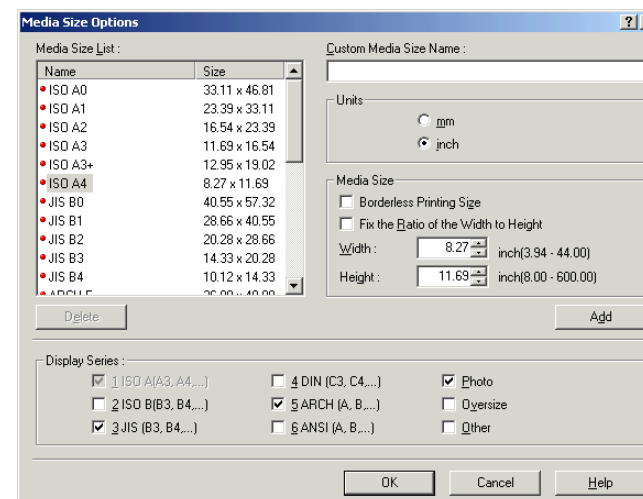
Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “Printing” in **Chapter 1 “Basic Use”**. (→ P.1-38)

- 2 Select the **Page Setup** sheet.



- 3 Click the **Size Options...** button to open the **Media Size Options** dialog box.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

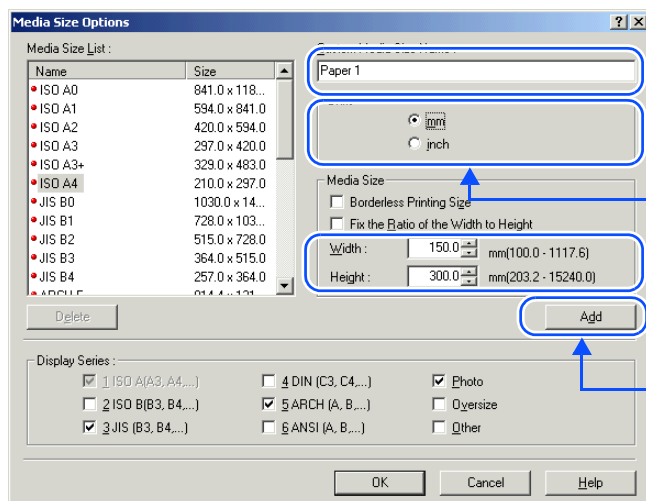
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

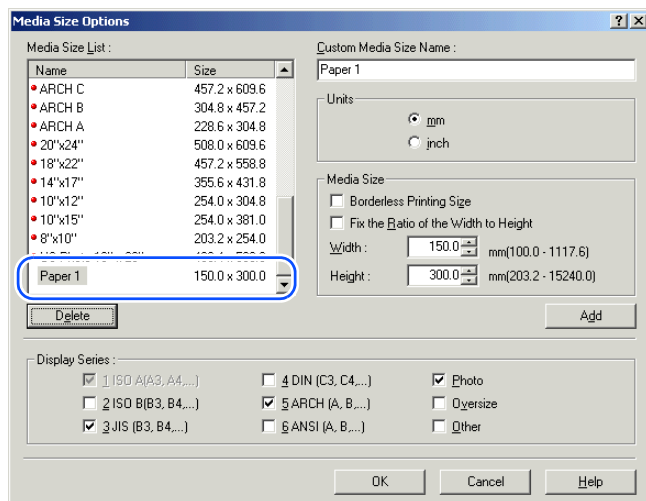
Index

4 Define the size in the Media Size Options dialog box.



- 1 Enter a name for the paper size created in the **Custom Media Size Name** field.
- 2 Selects size unit.
- 3 Enter the values to be defined in **Width** and **Height** in **Media Size**.
- 4 Click the **Add** button.

After you click the **Add** button, the user-defined media name registered in the **Media Size List** of the **Media Size Options** dialog box and the media size are displayed.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

5 Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box.

Note

- As soon as you select the name of a media size from the **Media Size List**, the **Width** and **Height** settings of the selected size are automatically entered.
- Select the **Borderless Printing Size** checkbox to change the **width** display to the list of roll media lists compatible with borderless printing. Select the customized roll width using **Width**, and enter the customized **Height** value.
- To fix the height/width ratio, select the **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** checkbox. If the **Height** is changed, the **Width** will change automatically according to the previous height/width ratio. Similarly, if the **Width** is changed, the **Height** will change automatically.

Important

- The **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** is not available when **Borderless Printing Size** is selected.

Note

- You can define up to 50 custom sizes for media.
- The settings in the **Media Size Options** dialog box remain in effect even after the software application is closed.
- To delete a registered custom size, from the **Media Size List** select the name of the custom size to delete, then click the **Delete** button.
- To edit a registered custom size, from the **Media Size List**, select the name of the custom size, then change the **Width** and **Height** settings, then click the **Add** button.
- The standard sizes (marked with a red dot “●” on the left), or sizes that you defined with another printer driver (marked with a white dot “○” on the left), can be neither edited nor deleted.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

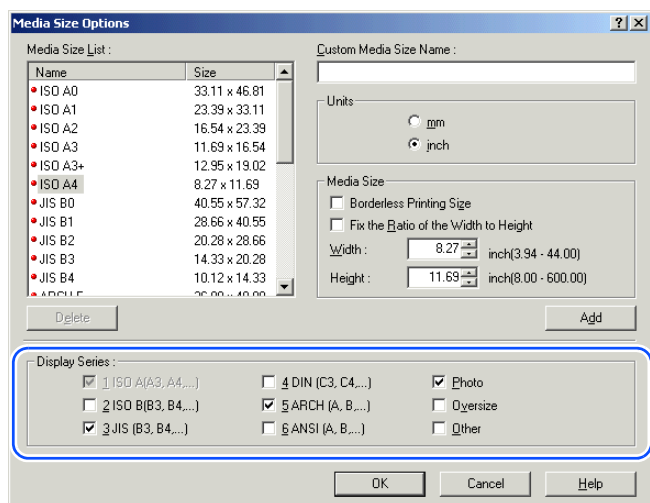
Contents

Index

■ Selecting a Media Display Series

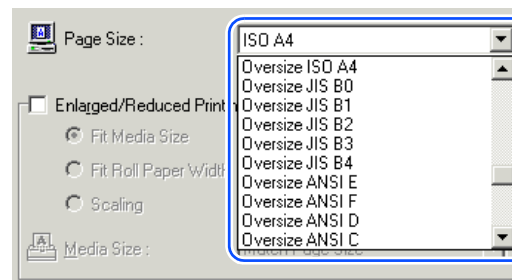
You can select a size series for **Display Series** that will display for the **Page Size** and **Media Size** on the **Page Setup** sheet in the **Media Size Options** dialog box.

To select the size series displayed in the **Page Size** or **Media Size** fields in the **Page Setup** sheet, select the **Display Series** checkbox displayed in **Media Size Options**. Further, to stop displaying the size system selected, deselect the **Display Series** checkboxes.

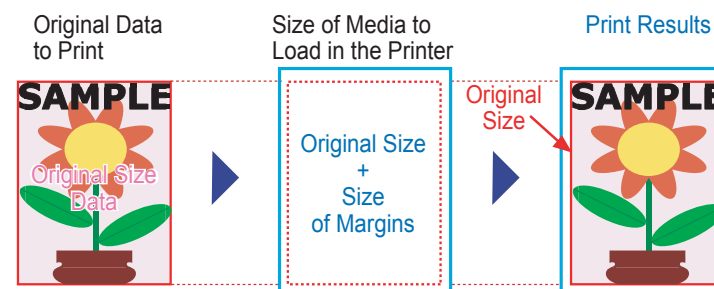


Note

- If **oversize** is selected in **Display Series**, **Oversize** will be displayed in front of the paper name, as described below. For example, for **ISO A4 Paper Size**, **Oversize ISO A4** will be displayed.



- If a paper size to which **Oversize** has been added to the paper name is selected, full-size documents and images can be printed, as described below. If printing using this function, however, load larger paper than paper size + margin to the printer. Oversize printing cannot be performed using larger paper than can be fed into the printer, paper sizes for borderless printing, or custom-sized paper.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

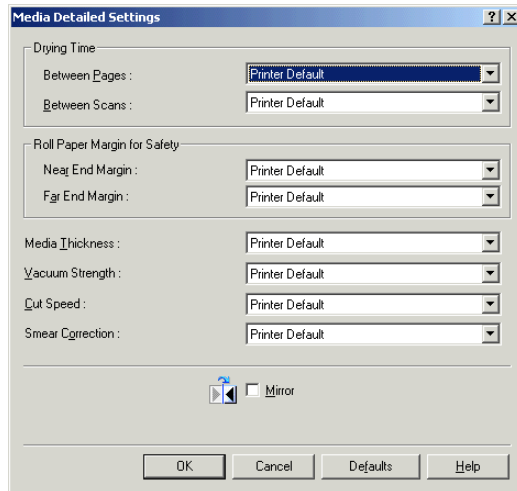
When the Printout Quality Is Not Clean

■ How to Set the Media Type

Paper settings such as ink drying time, etc., can be made using the panel on the printer. Some of these settings can be changed using the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box in the printer driver. If clean printing cannot be performed, make printing adjustment using this dialog box.

To open the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, in the printer driver open the **Main** sheet and then in the lower right corner of the **Media Type** group box click the **Settings...** button.

For more details about the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, please refer to the online Help.



Software Provided for Windows

The following software applications are provided for use with Windows.

The function of each software application is described below.

■ Basic Software for Printing

Canon imagePROGRAF Printer Driver 2005

This software is required to print using this printer. Make sure it is installed on the PC to be used with the printer. Many functions can be used in addition to the basic print operations, such as enlargement and reduction, borderless printing, color adjustment, and multiple page printing, etc. Can be used with Windows Server 2003/Windows XP/Windows 2000/Windows NT 4.0/Windows Me/Windows 98.

The printer driver is on the enclosed W8400 User Software CD-ROM. (→ Quick Start Guide)

■ Displaying the Printer Status

GARO Status Monitor

This is a utility software for Windows that can display details of printer errors on the computer screen. Can be used with Windows Server 2003/Windows XP/Windows 2000/Windows NT 4.0/Windows Me/Windows 98.

The software is on the enclosed W8400 User Software CD-ROM. Installation is recommended. (→ Quick Start Guide)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Using the Printer on a Network

LPR Port

If printing using a TCP/IP network from a Windows Me or Windows 98 PC, make sure this software is installed.

The software is installed if dynamic installation in the Setup Menu on the enclosed User Software CD-ROM is used for the printer on the network.

GARO Device Setup Utility

This Windows software is used to set the printer network information from the computer.

(→ [Chapter 5 “Using the Printer in a Network Environment”](#))

Remote UI

This function displays the printer status using a web browser on a PC on the network, and can set printers and delete jobs. It is built into the printer network interface.

(→ [Chapter 5 “Using the Printer in a Network Environment”](#))

NetSpot Console

This is server software for Windows Server 2003/Windows XP/Windows 2000/Windows NT 4.0/Windows Me/Windows 98 that displays the printer status using a web browser on a PC on the network, and can set printers and networks. The NetSpot Console can be downloaded free of charge from the Canon homepage (<http://canon.jp/>). Install on the server computer as required.

Device Status Extension

If sharing the printer using Windows XP or Windows 2000 on which IIS has been installed, shared printer information and print job control can be displayed using a web browser. By installing Device Status Extension on Windows Server 2003/Windows XP/Windows 2000, you can switch from the window displaying the information for the printer corresponding to the Device Status Extension to the window supplied by Canon. Further, if using NetSpot Console, the printer settings can be made by starting NetSpot Console from the Device Status Extension window. This software is on the enclosed W8400 User Software CD-ROM. For the installation method, refer to the Readme file in the **DSE** folder.

■ Creating Posters Easily

PosterArtist

This software can be used to create and print posters easily merely by using the wizard. Posters can be created easily without effort, using printer driver settings and creating draft posters using this application. Further, borderless and long-size posters can also be created using simple operations. Posters created using PosterArtist can be printed using this printer only.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Printing Photos Cleanly

Digital Photo Print Pro

This software can perform large-size borderless printing of images taken using a digital camera easily. Images can also be edited easily if the object photographed is dark due to backlight, or red eye and moire occur, and the color brightness and contrast can be adjusted. Further, original calendars, image tables, and other character strings can also be printed easily using the pre-prepared templates. This software is compatible with Windows XP and Windows 2000.

■ Printing Beautiful Digital Camera Images (for the Professional)

Canon imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop (hereinafter Print Plug-In) is software that enables printing that recreates Adobe RGB color scale with clear expression, using Photoshop. This software is recommended for professional users and high-end amateurs who seek good-quality color finish.

If Print Plug-In is installed, colors can be adjusted while checking the preview, which faithfully recreates Photoshop print results. RGB 16-bit data in Photoshop can be processed as is, so high-gradation original images can be printed without picture degradation. Settings information that has been used in the past can be saved, so if printing using the same settings, work can be performed effectively just by reading the information.

(→ [Print Plug-In for PhotoShop Guide](#))

■ Printing Images Created with CAD Systems

Canon imagePROGRAF HDI Driver

The Canon imagePROGRAF HDI driver is a dedicated driver for clearly and accurately printing diagrams created using AutoCAD, which is CAD software. In normal printing, picture accuracy may be lost if printing using a Windows printer driver, but if using the Canon imagePROGRAF HDI driver, commands are processed directly and internally between computer and driver, so excellent print results that assure image quality can be obtained.

(→ [HDI Driver Guide](#))

■ Select the Media Type

Canon imagePROGRAF Media Configuration Tool

Media Configuration Tool is software to save media information if media supported by the printer (i.e., paper type) has been added. Supplies functions for users who are familiar with media and printing.

Media information such as paper name, paper thickness, head height, absorption fan strength, default margin, etc., can be downloaded to the printer, and uploaded from the printer. Also supplies functions that can update the latest media information easily.

(→ [Media Configuration Tool Guide](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Printing from a Macintosh

The printer driver includes various printer functions to enable printing suited to the application. These functions are described here.





Before You Begin

This section describes functions for which advanced knowledge is useful if using this printer driver. Make sure to read this section before performing printing by objective.

■ Basic Settings to Meet Your Needs (Print Type)

To perform optimal printing, it is necessary to set the color adjustment corresponding to the intended text in advance. The printer driver includes optimal settings for frequently-used documents such as posters, POP, digital cameras, or CAD, etc. Simply select the type of print job by objective from the list to perform optimal printing.

The following applications are provided for the types of printing described below.

Print Types		Content	Set Values			
			Paper Type	Print Quality	Matching Method	Color Adjustment
	Standard	Best for printing normal documents, with text, images, graphics, etc. mixed together.	Plain Paper	Standard	Colorimetric (OS X) Auto (OS 8/9)	Default
	POP Ad	Best for printing store posters with bright and forceful eye-catching mixed text and illustrations.	Heavyweight Coated Paper	Standard	Saturation	Contrast: +5
	Poster	Best for printing posters with centered photographs.	Proofing paper ^{*1} Heavyweight Coated Paper ^{*2}	Standard	Auto	Contrast: +10 Brightness: +5
	Photo (from digital camera)	Best for printing photos captured with a digital camera.	Glossy Photo Paper ^{*1} Heavyweight Coated Paper ^{*2}	Standard	Colorimetric	Contrast: +10 Brightness: +5

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance





Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Print Types		Content	Set Values			
			Paper Type	Print Quality	Matching Method	Color Adjustment
	Photo (from scanner)	Best for reproduction of scanned photographs with color faithful to the quality of the original.	Glossy Photo Paper* ¹ Heavyweight Coated Paper* ²	Standard	Colorimetric	Default
	Long format (Banner)	Best for long banner formats (vertical and horizontal) with mixed illustrations and text.	Heavyweight Coated Paper	Standard	Saturation	Contrast: +10 Saturation: +5
	CAD	Best for plans and design drawings with fine lines.	CAD Plain Paper	Standard	Saturation	Default
	No color correction	Prints giving priority to and using the software application setting for color matching	Plain Paper	Standard	Matching Mode No Correction	Default

*1. The black ink loaded on the printer is photo black ink (BK).

*2. The black ink loaded on the printer is matte black ink (MBK).

 Note

- For more details about print quality, please refer to “[Customizing Print Quality](#)” in “[Custom Print Quality](#)”. (→ P.3-104)
- For more details about color mode matching and color adjustments, please refer to “[Color Matching](#)” (→ P.3-114) or “[Adjusting Color](#)” in “[Fine Adjusting Color for Printing](#)”. (→P.3-108)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

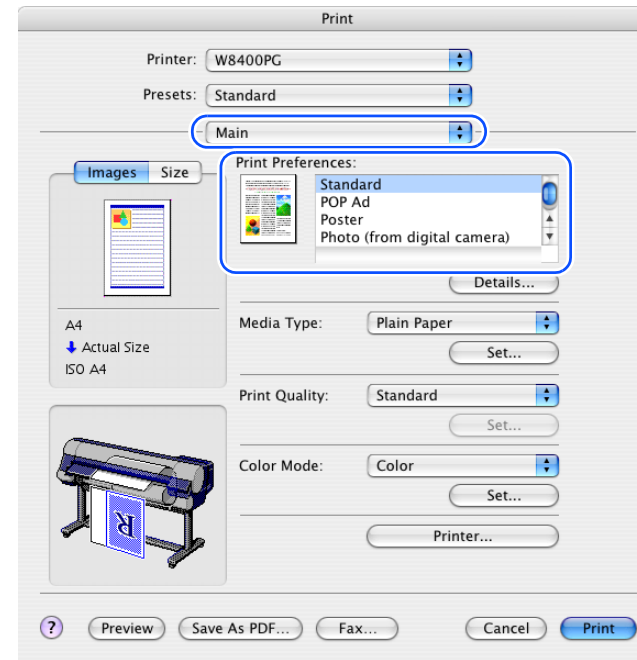
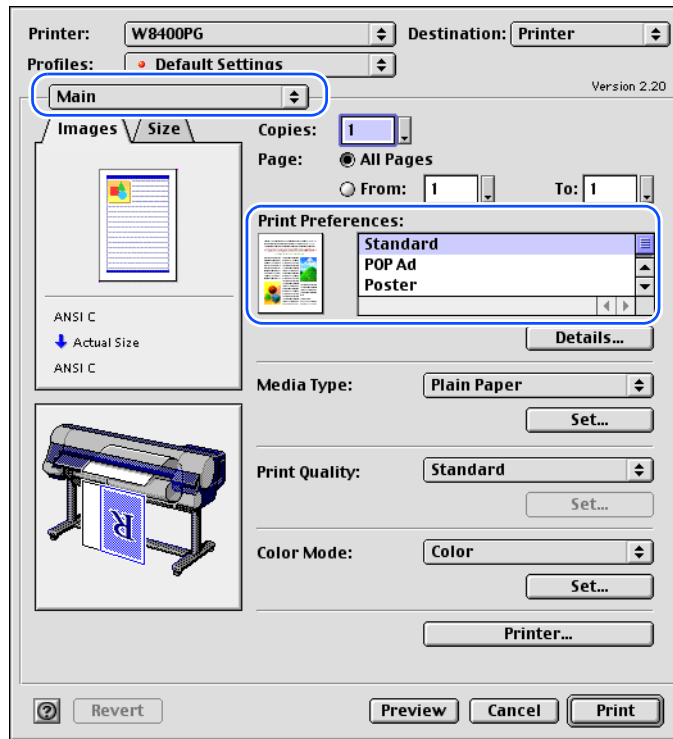
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

To make the print settings, first open the **Main** panel of the printer driver, and then in **Print Preferences**, select the type of printing that you want to perform.



Note

- OS 8/9 includes a function called **Profiles** for adding print types. Print settings can be made easily using **Add Profile...** and **Edit Profile...**

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

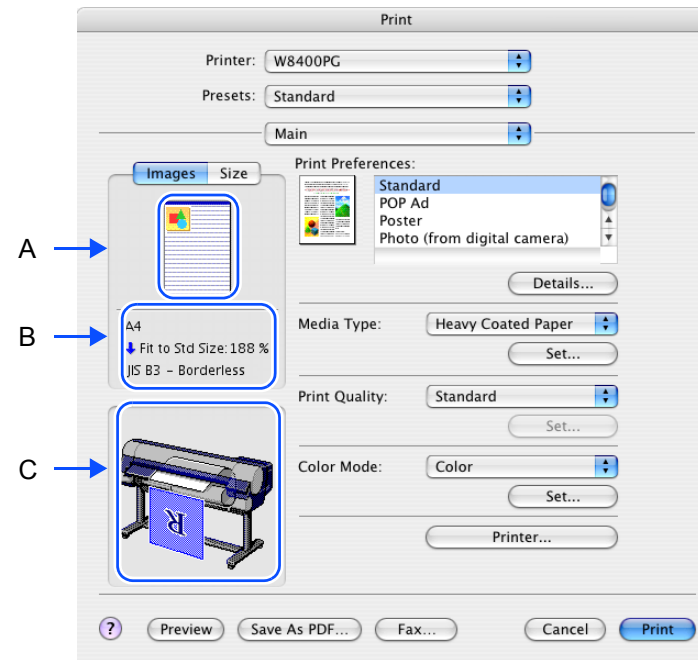
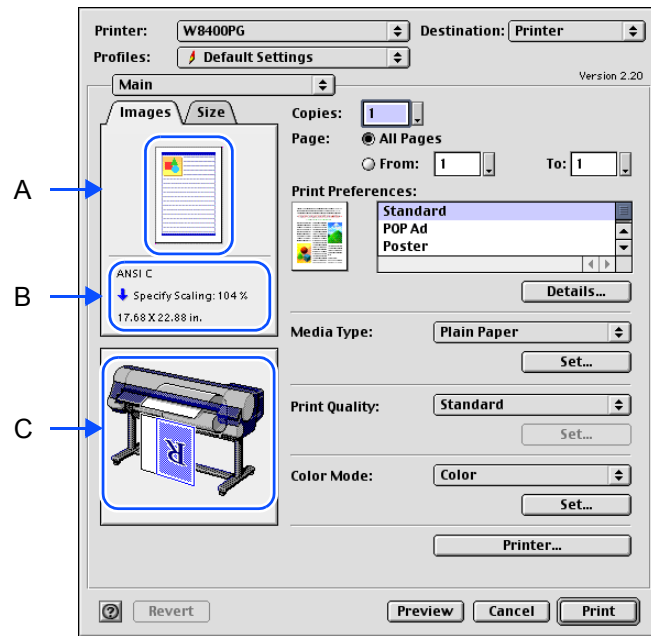
Index

■ Printer Driver Settings at a Glance (Media Preview)

The current printer driver settings details are displayed in preview. To change the manuscript size, print orientation or paper feed method, the settings details are displayed in preview, so the details can be checked easily.

You can confirm the following items in the Preview.

When you select the **Images** tab, the contents of the Media Size and Layout are displayed.



Setting Preview Description

Setting Preview Description	
A	The following settings are shown in the Preview image. (OS X) : Page Size, Orientation, Scaling (Paper), Page Layout Printing, Color Mode, Borderless Printing (OS 8/9): Page Size, Media Size, Orientation, Scaling (Paper), Page Layout Printing, Poster Printing, Color Mode, Mirror, Rotate 180 degrees, Borderless Printing
B	The Page Size and Media size are displayed as numbers. Further, if Enlarged / Reduced Printing , or Borderless Printing , has been set, the mode and print ratio will be displayed.
C	The following settings are shown in the Preview image. : Media Source, Automatic Cutting, Print Centered, Banner Printing, Fit Roll Paper Width (Fit Roll Width Size in OS 8/9), No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper), Rotate Paper 90 Degrees (Conserve Paper), Orientation, Borderless Printing, Rotate 180 Degrees, Mirror.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

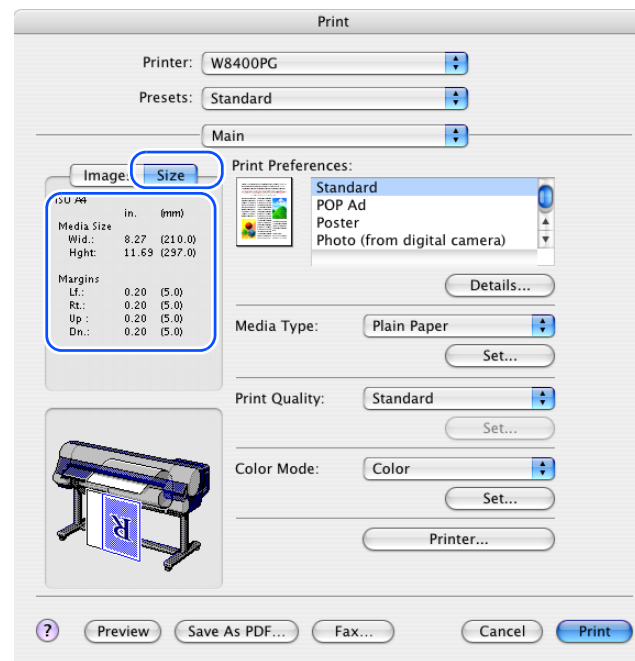
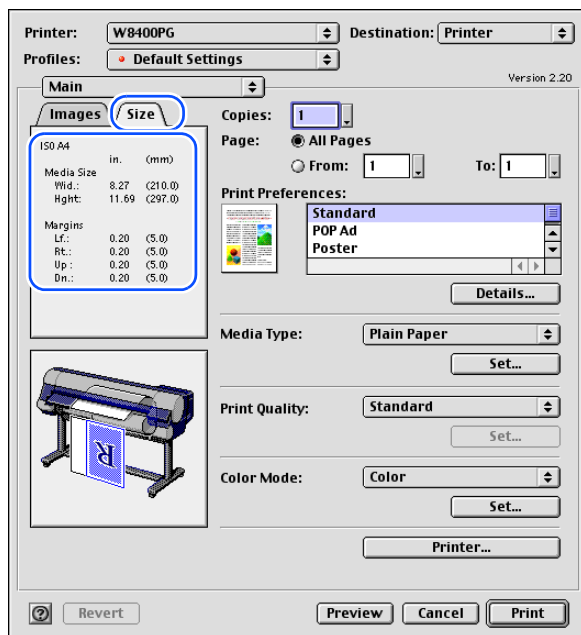
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

When you select the **Size** tab, the details about the Media Size are displayed.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

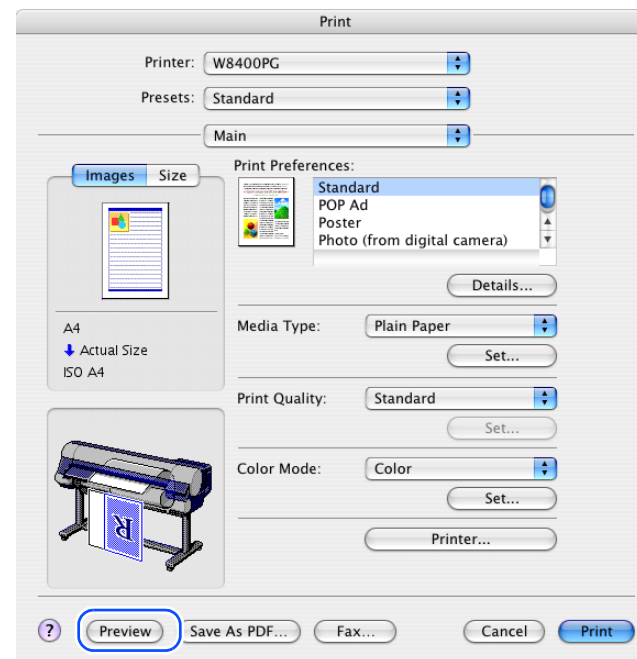
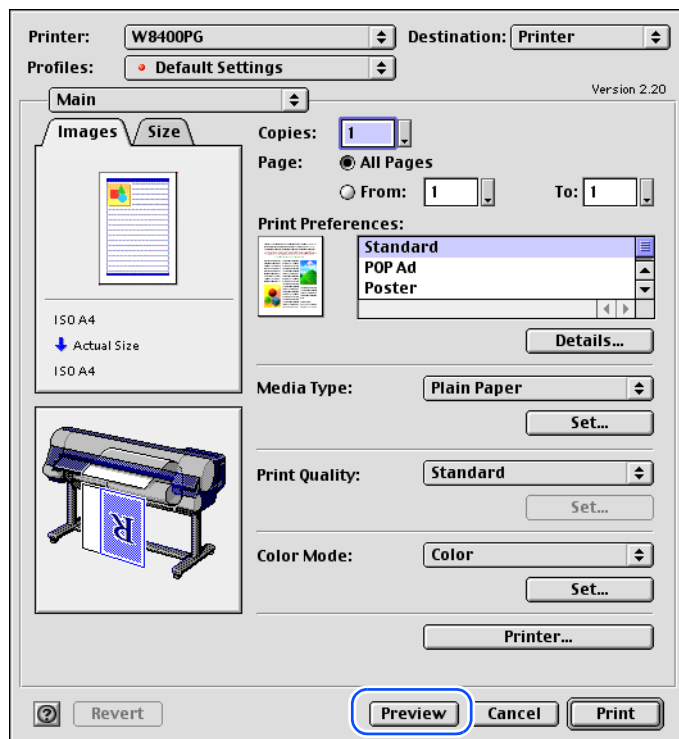
Contents

Index

■ Confirming the Print Image (Print Preview)

Preview also includes a function to display the manuscript print image without modification. This is called “Print preview”. Previewing before printing can be used to prevent printing errors.

To display the Print Preview, click the **Preview** button in the printer driver.



When the Viewer starts you can visually check the preview display.

Once you have confirmed that the image layout on the media is correct, you can print from the preview screen.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Enlarging and Reducing the Original

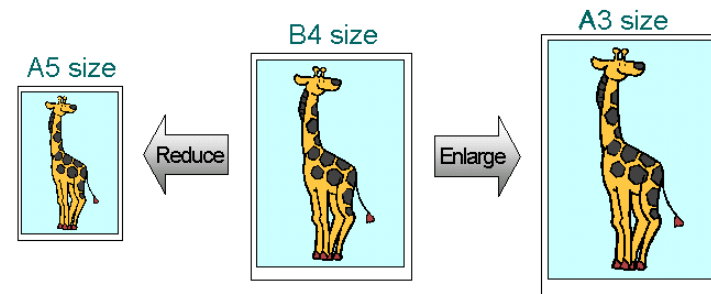
The original can be printed at a larger or smaller size.

There are three methods for enlargement and reduction.

- Enlarging or Reducing Printing to Fit the Size of the Media (→ [P.3-66](#))
- Enlarge/Reduce to Fit Roll Paper Width (→ [P.3-70](#))
- Selecting the Magnification Rate for Printing (→ [P.3-74](#))

■ Enlarging or Reducing Printing to Fit the Size of the Media

By setting the size of the media actually loaded for printing, you can automatically enlarge or reduce the print automatically to match the size of the loaded media.



- 1** In the software application select **Page Setup** or **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to open the **Page Setup** dialog box.
- 2** For **Paper Size** (**Page Setup** in OS 8/9), select the size of the media.
- 3** Click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** (**Page Setup** in OS 8/9) dialog box.
- 4** From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

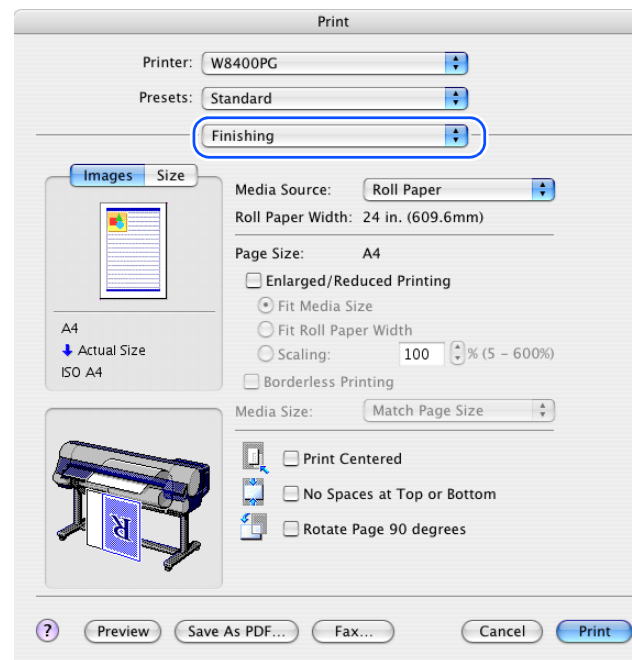
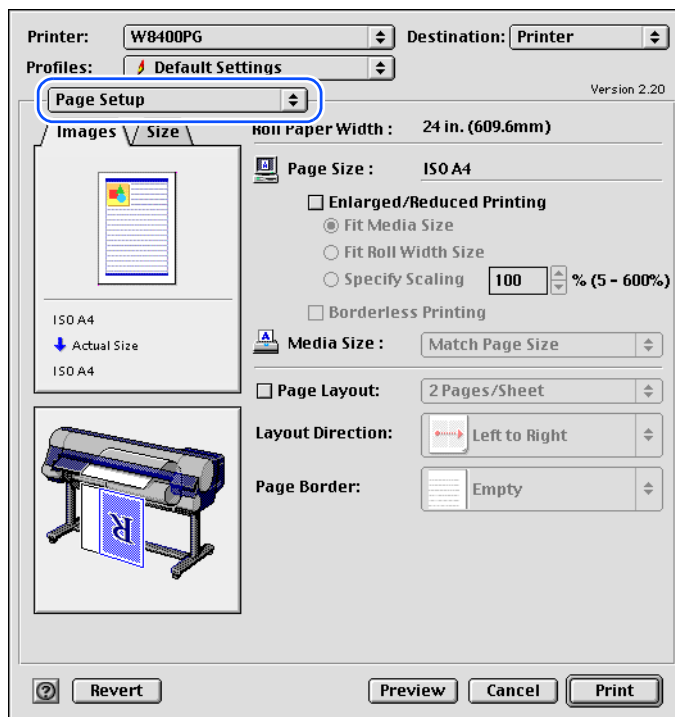
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

5 Select the **Finishing** panel (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9).



6 For **Page Size** on the **Finishing** (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9) sheet select the size of the original created in the software application.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

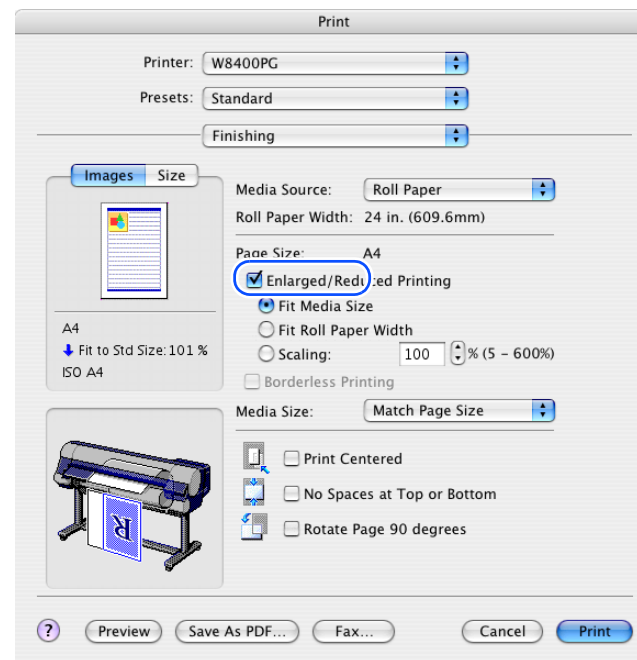
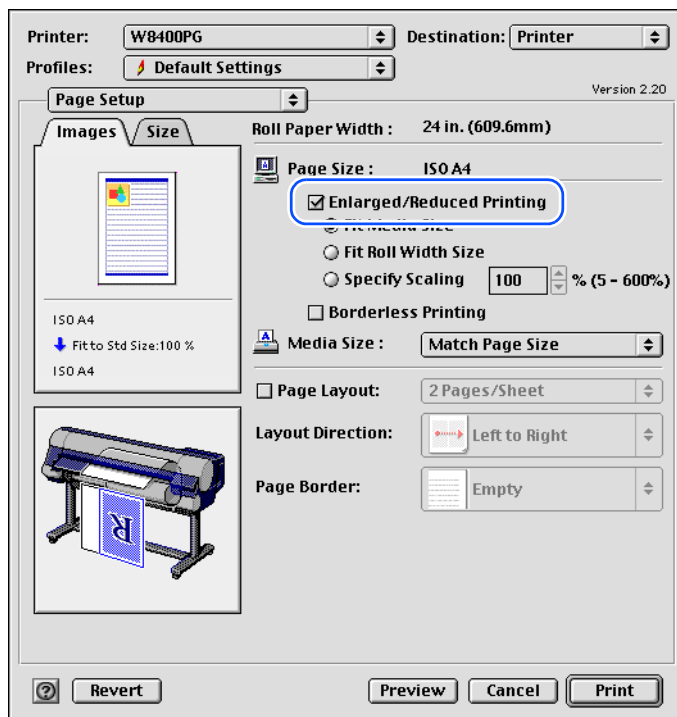
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

7 Select Enlarged/Reduced Printing.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

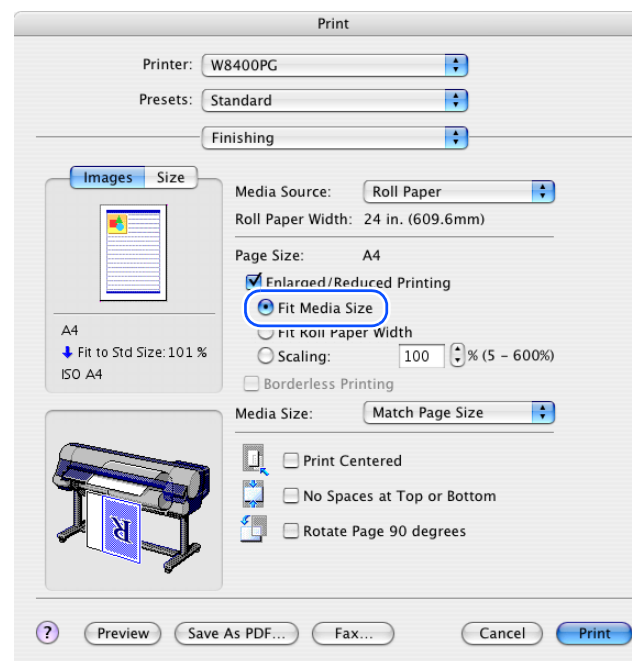
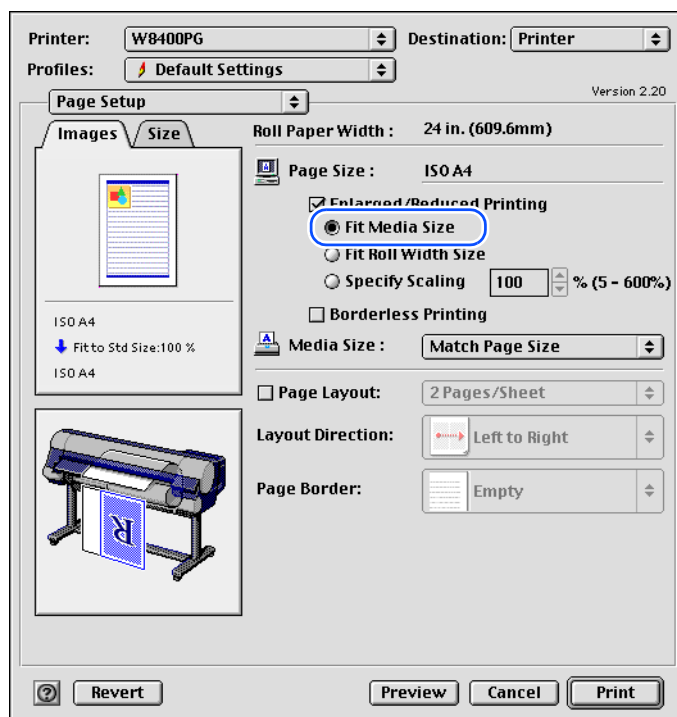
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

8 Confirm that **Fit Media Size** is selected under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.



9 For **Media Size** select the size of the media that will be used for printing.



Note

- **Match Page Size** is selected as the default.



Important

- If the landscape or portrait orientation of the original page size and the print media are different, part of the image may not print on the media.

10 Check the settings using the paper preview, and then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.

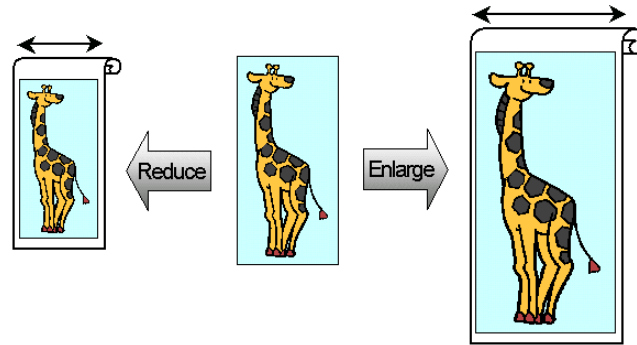
Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Enlarge/Reduce to Fit Roll Paper Width

You can enlarge or reduce the entire size of the original so it fits the width of the roll.



- 1** In the software application select **Page Setup** or **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to open the **Page Setup** dialog box.
- 2** For **Paper Size** (**Page Size** in OS 8/9), select the size of the media.
- 3** Click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** (**Page Setup** in OS 8/9) dialog box.
- 4** From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

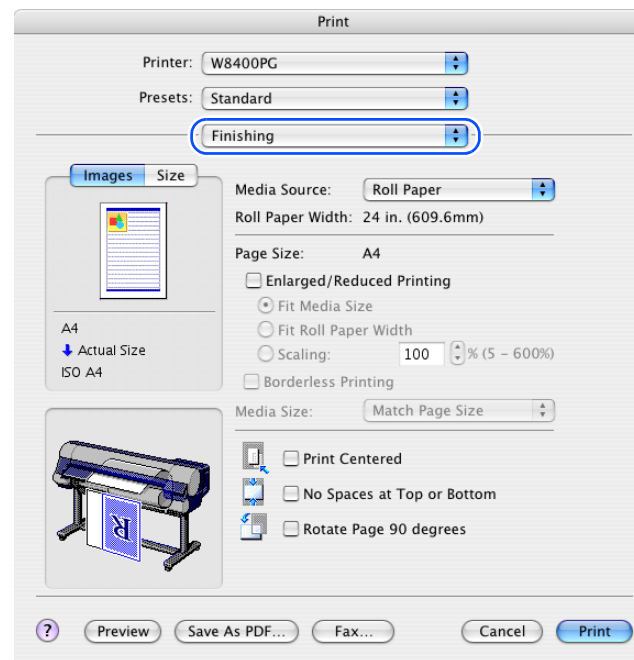
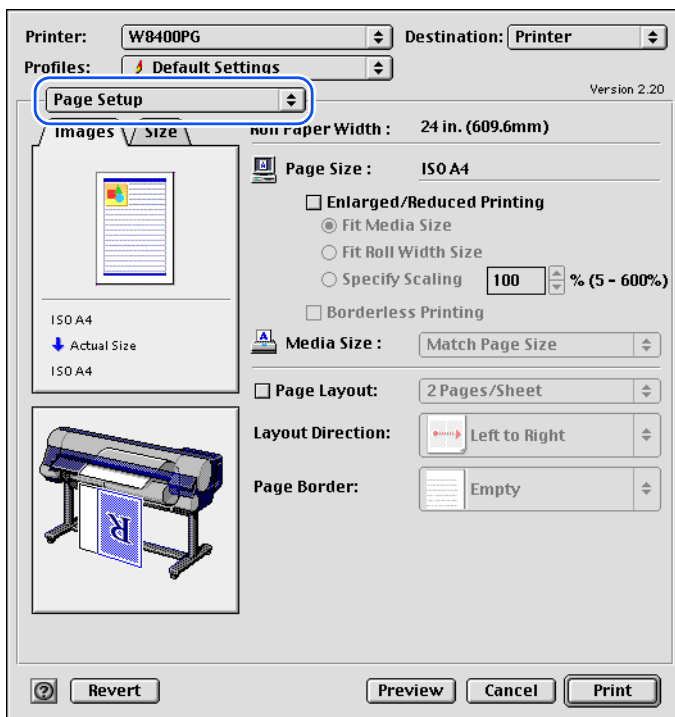
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

5 Select the **Finishing** panel (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9).



6 For **Page Size** on the **Finishing** (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9) sheet select the size of the original created in the software application.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

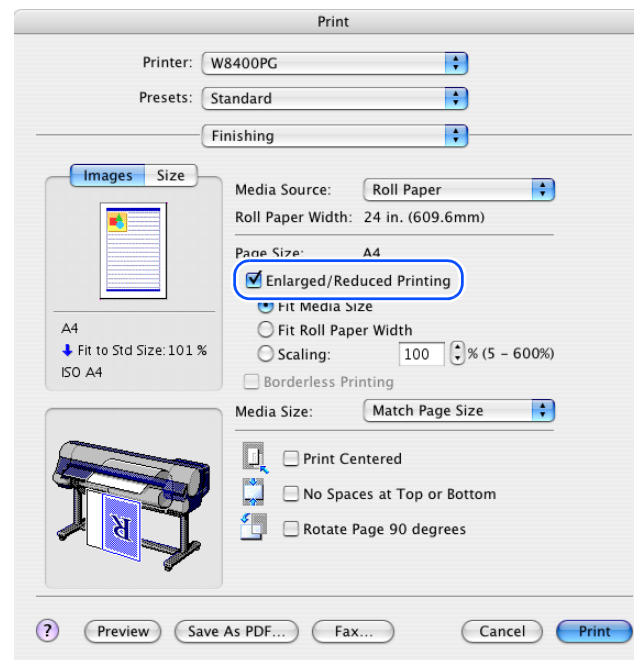
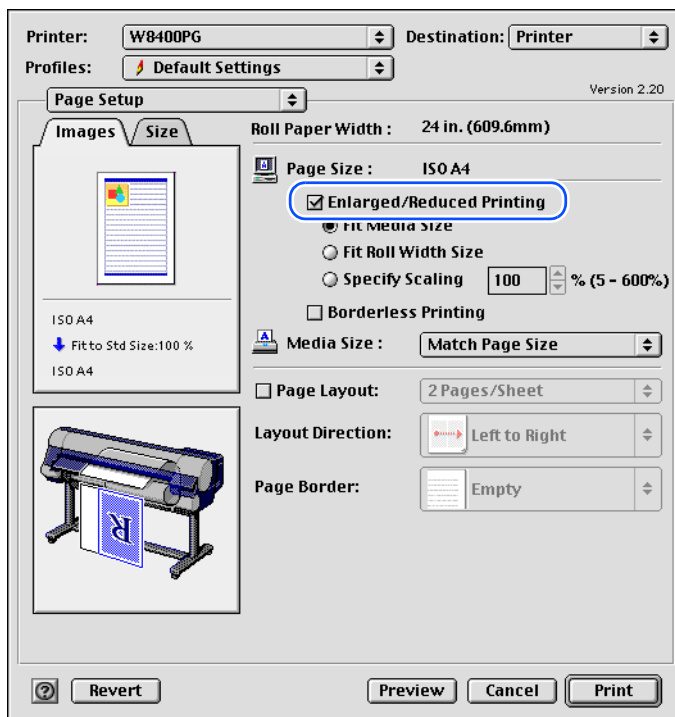
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

7 Select Enlarged/Reduced Printing.



8 Under Enlarged/Reduced Printing select Fit Roll Paper Width (Fit Roll Width Size for OS 8/9).

Important

- If **Rotate Page 90 degrees** is selected on the **Finishing** panel, this function cannot be used.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

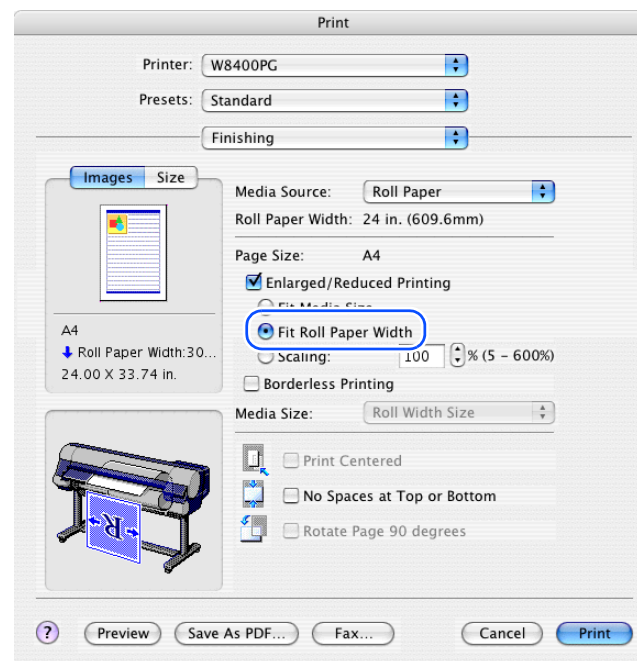
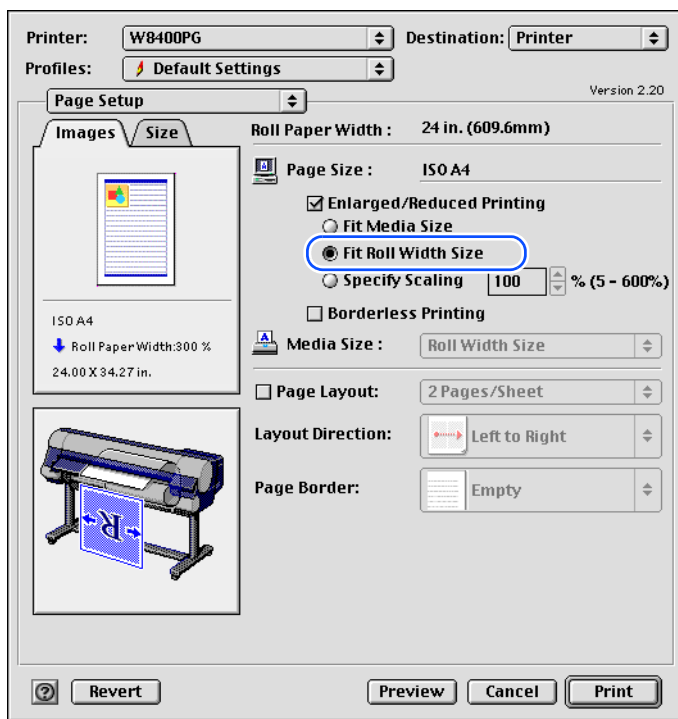
Contents

Index



Note

- If **Fit Roll Paper Width (Fit Roll Width Size for OS 8/9)** is selected in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**, the **Media Size** setting will be changed to the **Roll Width Size**. Check the value displayed in **Roll Paper Width**.



- 9 Check the content of the settings preview, and then click the **Print** button.
The print job starts.

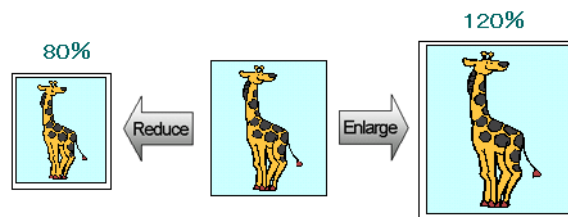
Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Selecting the Magnification Rate for Printing

You can enter the rate of magnification directly if you need to scale the enlargement or reduction for a desired effect.



- 1** In the software application select **Page Setup** or **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to open the **Page Setup** dialog box.
- 2** For **Paper Size** (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9), select the size of the media.
- 3** Click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9) dialog box.
- 4** From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

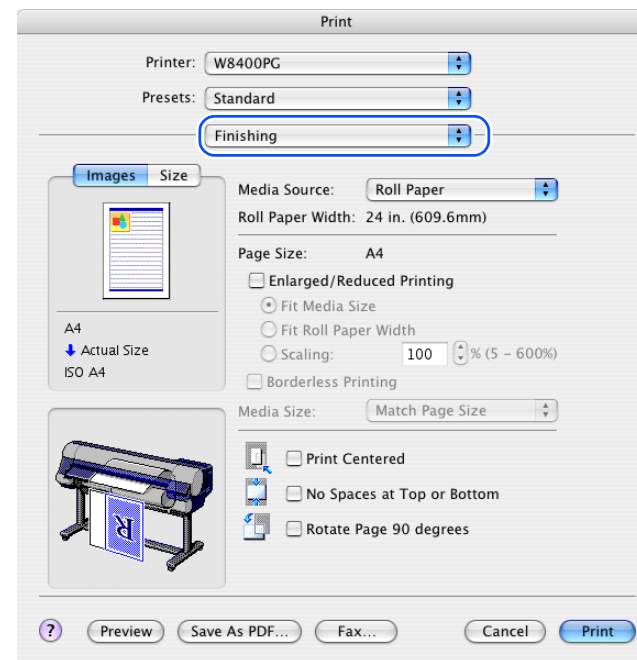
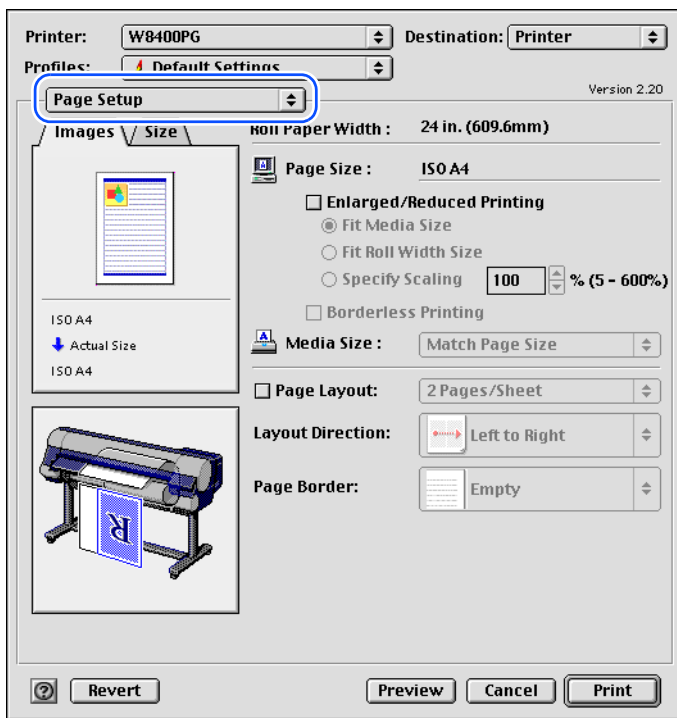
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

5 Select the **Finishing** panel (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9).



6 For **Page Size** on the **Finishing** (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9) sheet select the size of the original created in the software application.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

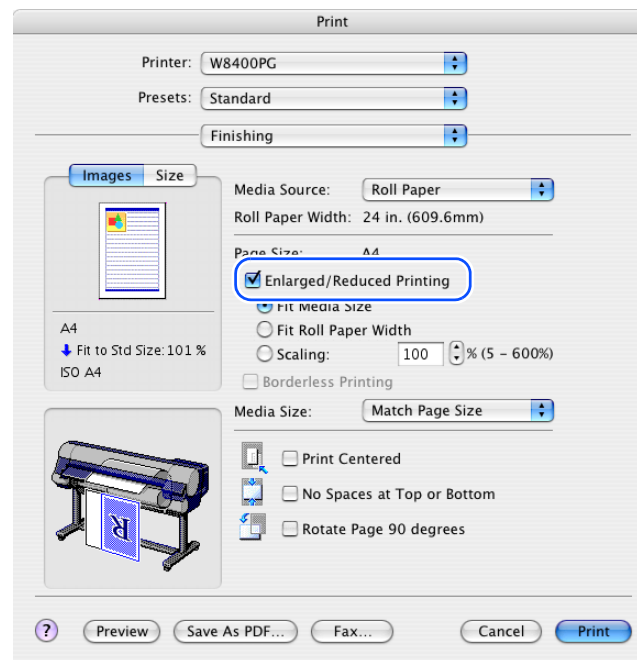
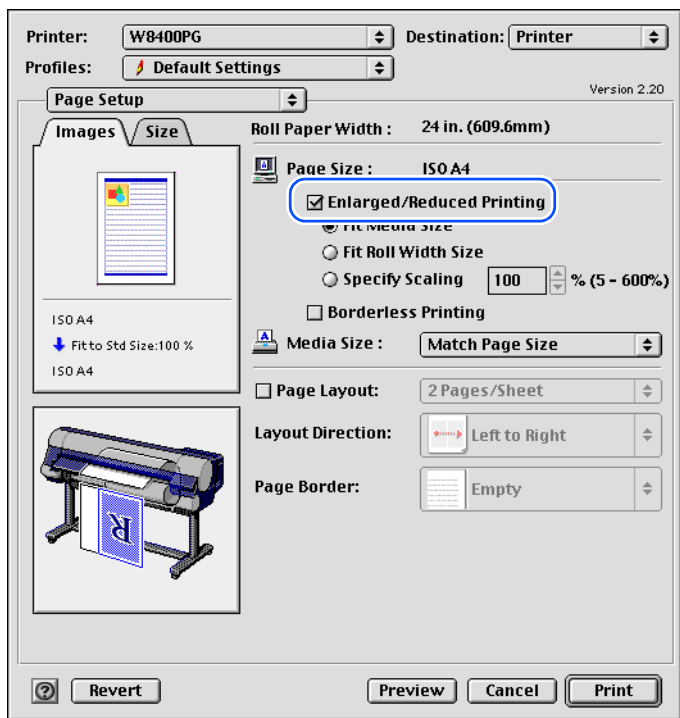
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

7 Select Enlarged/Reduced Printing.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

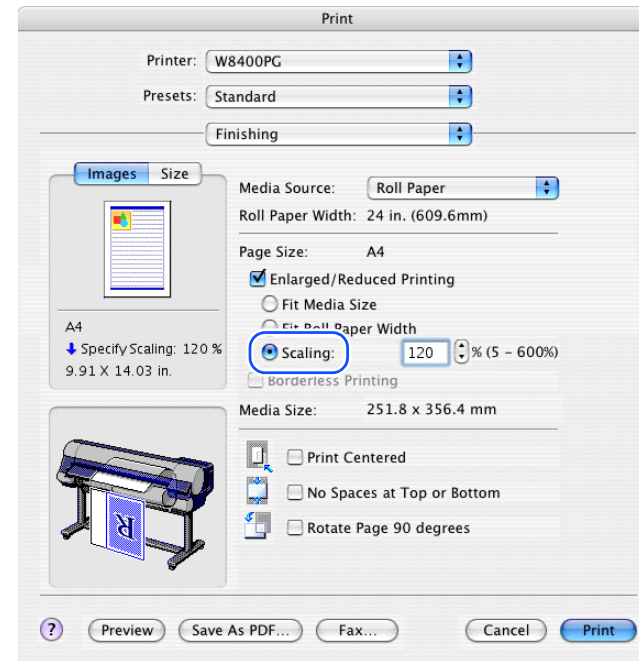
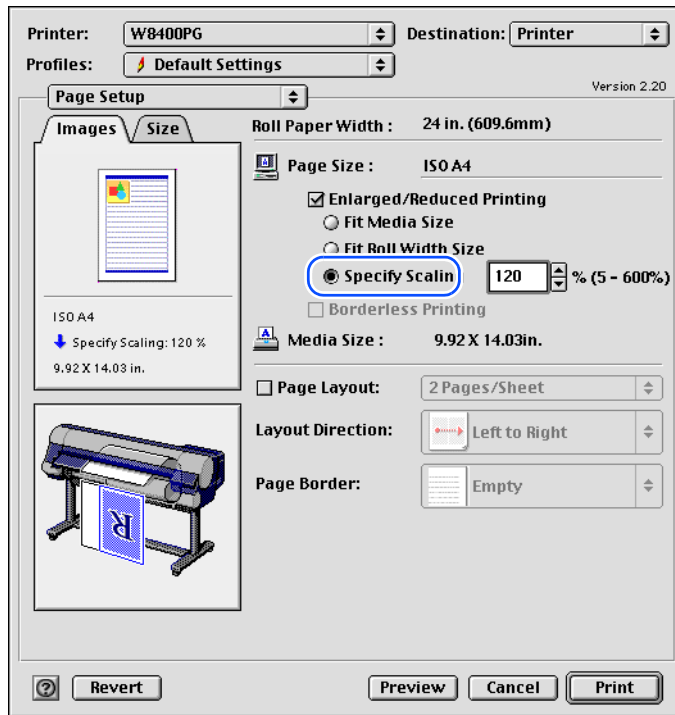
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

8 Under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** select **Scaling (Specify Scaling for OS 8/9)** then specify the desired setting.



Important

- This function cannot be used when **Borderless Printing** is selected.
- For the print ratio, press the direction arrow buttons to the right of the entry column, or enter the value directly. Print ratios can be specified in units of 1%. The range of possible ratio settings is displayed to the right of the ratio entry field.
- You can do a setting that is larger than the size of the media loaded in the printer, but some portions of the will be cut off and not printed.
- To center an image in the upper left for printing, on the **Finishing** panel select **Print Centered**.

9 Check the value displayed for **Media Size**.

10 Check the content of the settings preview, and then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders (Borderless Printing)

Normally a printed document has white space around its edges (margins), but a borderless print for a photograph or created image has no white space at its borders; its entire surface is covered by printing.

■ Settings Required for Borderless Printing

Before printing, check that the paper corresponding to borderless printing has been loaded to the printer.

Borderless printing is possible with this printer only if roll media is used in the paper feed.

Here is a list of the types of roll media and their widths that can be used for borderless printing.

Paper Type	Corresponding Roll Width
Glossy Photo Paper, Semi Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight Semi-Glos Photo Paper, Heavyweight Coated Paper, Premium Matte Paper, Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper, Special 1~5, Flame Resistant-Cloth, Fabric Banner, Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas Matte, Canvas Semi-Glossy	10-in. Roll (254.0mm)
	14-in. Roll (355.6mm)
	16-in. Roll (406.4mm)
	24-in. Roll (609.6mm)
	36-in. Roll (914.4mm)
	42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)
	JIS B2 / B3 Roll (515.0mm)
	JIS B0 / B1 Roll (1030.0mm)
	ISO A1 / A2 Roll (594.0mm)
	ISO A0 / A1 Roll (841.0mm)
	ARCH E Roll (914.4mm)

Important

- Paper of types and roll widths other than those listed above cannot be used for borderless printing.
- If a flat cutter has been loaded to the printer in use, the following types of paper cannot be cut, so borderless printing will be performed at the left and right edges only. Premium Matte Paper, Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas Matte
- Manually remove paper from the ejection guide and output stacker after cutting such media as trimmed paper and pre-cut paper.

When you do borderless printing, be sure to select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** on the **Finishing** panel (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9). This allows **Borderless printing** to be performed.

Important

- Borderless printing cannot be performed under the following conditions.

When Cut Sheet is selected under Media Source on the Finishing panel
If Roll Paper (Banner) (Roll Media (Banner Printing)) for OS 8/9 has been selected under Media Source in the Finishing panel
When Scaling is selected for Enlarged/Reduced Printing
When Rotate Page 90 degrees is selected on the Finishing panel
When several pages are selected for Pages per Sheet (Page Layout) for OS 8/9 on the Layout panel (Page Setup for OS 8/9)
When Print Centered is selected on the Finishing panel
When the setting selected for Roll Paper Width does not support borderless printing

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Borderless Printing

This section describes the borderless printing procedure.

<To do borderless printing on media the same size as the original>

1 Create the original in the software application so it matches the size of the media used for printing.

Important

- The following page sizes can be set for borderless printing. When creating a document, refer to the following table and create a document with a size for which borderless printing can be performed.
- If the media size was pre-selected in the software application, the selected size must support "Borderless Printing".

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Borderless printing on media the same size as the original document 	ISO A0, ISO A1, ISO A2, JIS B0, JIS B1, JIS B2, JIS B3, ANSI Legal, ARCH E1, ARCH E, ARCH D, ARCH C, 20"x24", 14"x17", 10"x12", 10"x15", 8"x10", US Photo (16"x20"), Banner (42"x60")
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Borderless printing with enlargement and reduction 	All page sizes

Note

- Make sure the image created for borderless printing covers the entire original page.

2 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

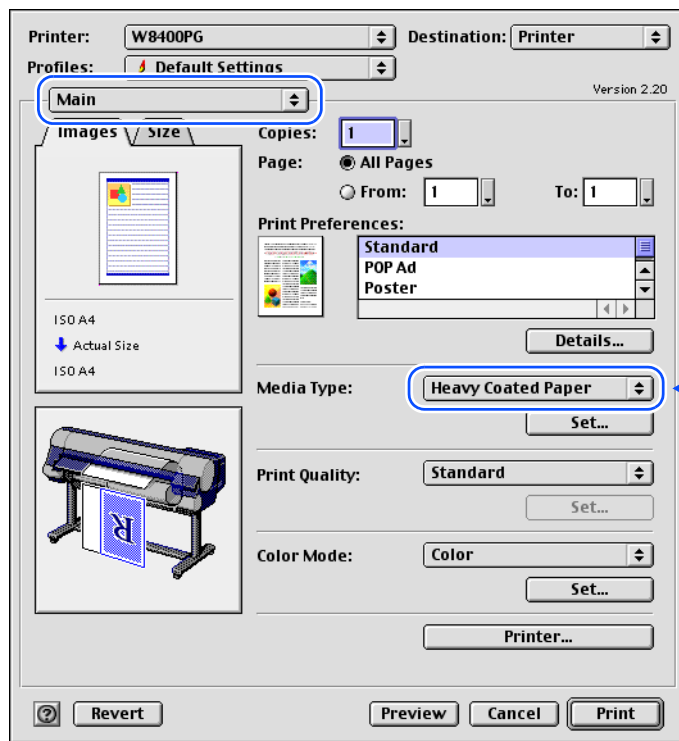
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

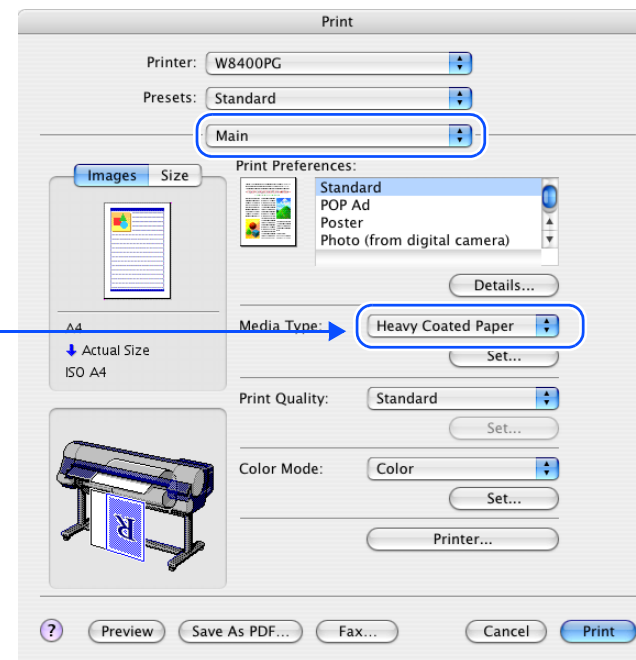
Contents

Index

3 Open the **Main** panel and do the settings for borderless printing.



Select a paper type compatible with borderless printing.



4 Open the **Finishing (Page Setup for OS 8/9)** and then select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** and **Borderless Printing**.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

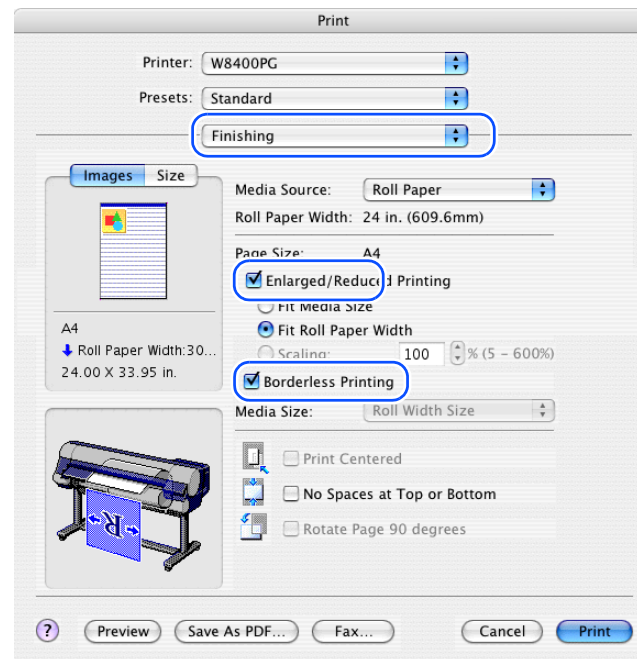
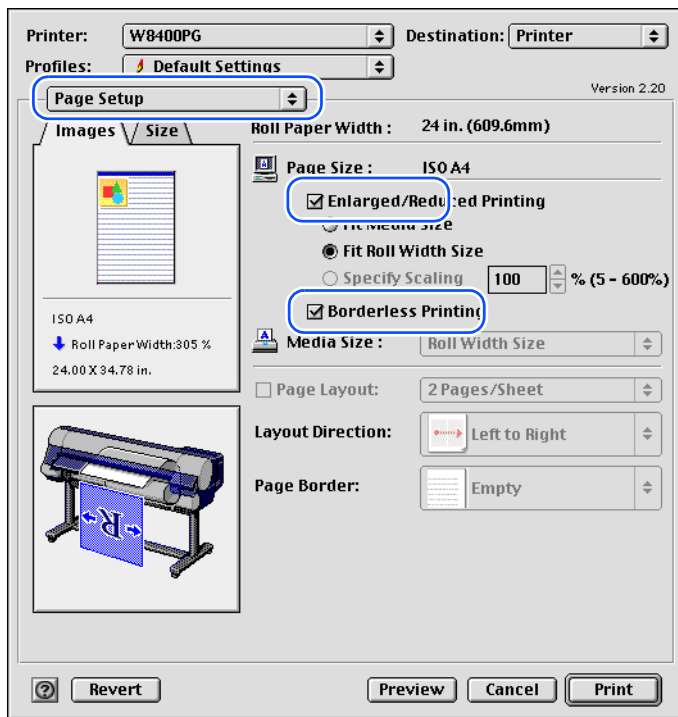
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Note

- When **Borderless Printing** is selected under the **Page Size** in the software application, **Step 4 to 6** are not required.
- When you do this procedure, set the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** method as needed for **Fit Roll Paper Width**.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

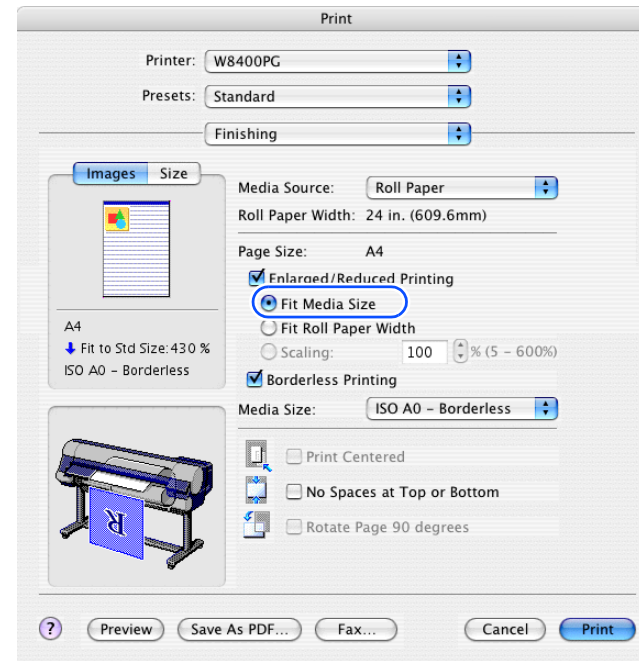
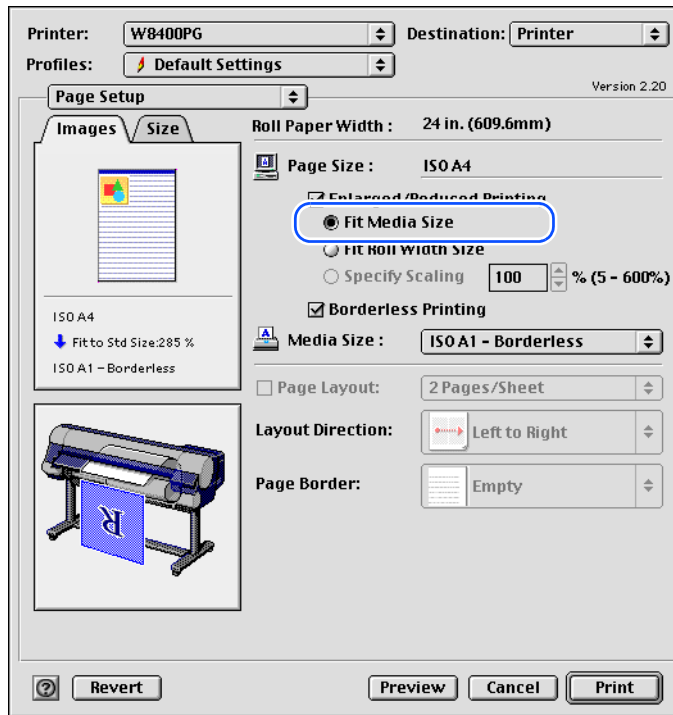
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

5 Confirm that **Fit Media Size** is selected under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.



6 Select the **Media Size** setting that you want.

7 Check the content of the settings preview, and then click the **Print** button. The print job starts.

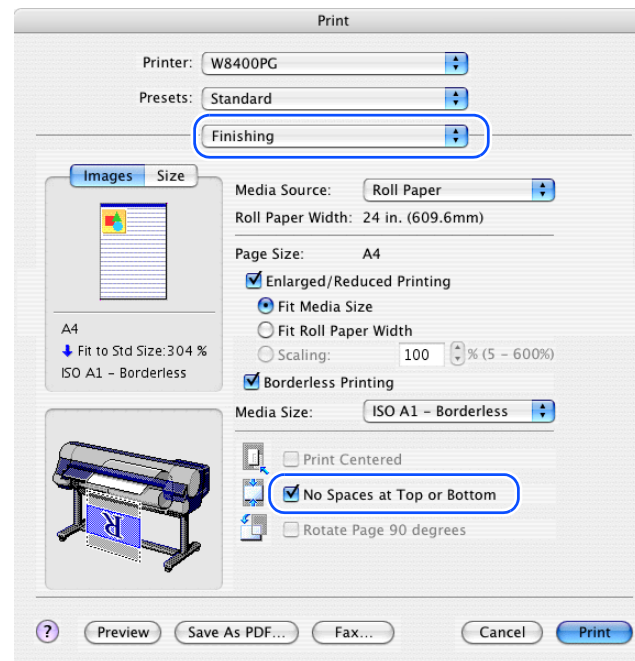
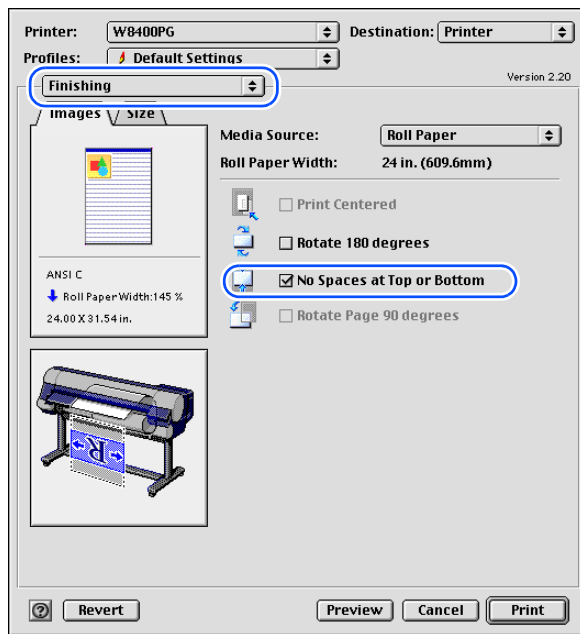
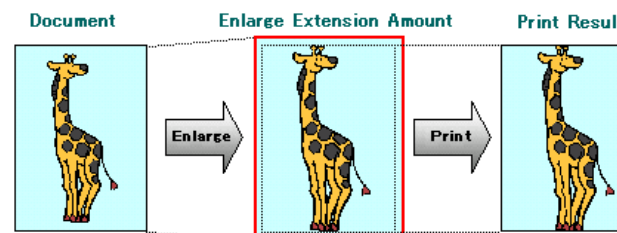
Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Note

- To perform borderless printing with the manuscript enlarged or reduced, refer to “Enlarge/Reduce to Fit Roll Paper Width” in “<To do borderless document printing with a size not allowed for borderless printing>” (→ P.3-84).
- If **Borderless Printing** mode is set to **Scale to fit the Page Size**, the edges of the document will be enlarged automatically at the top, bottom, left, and right by 3 mm by the printer driver. Consequently, the margin created by the printer configuration will be covered, and borderless printing will be performed. Parts that protrude beyond the 3-mm area at the edges will not be printed.
- If performing borderless printing to images for which there are blanks at the top and bottom of the print data, combine printing with the **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** function in the **Finishing** panel sheet for simpler borderless printing than borderless printing with no margins at top, bottom, left, or right. For details, refer to “Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)”. (→ P.3-101)



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

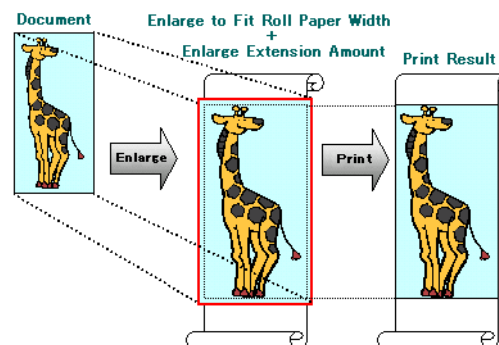
Contents

Index

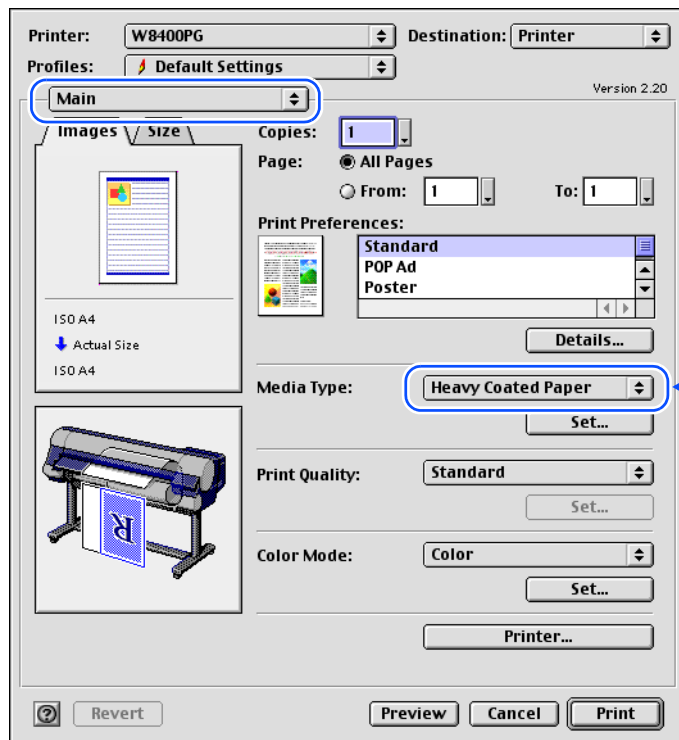
<To do borderless document printing with a size not allowed for borderless printing>

● Enlarge/Reduce to Fit Roll Paper Width

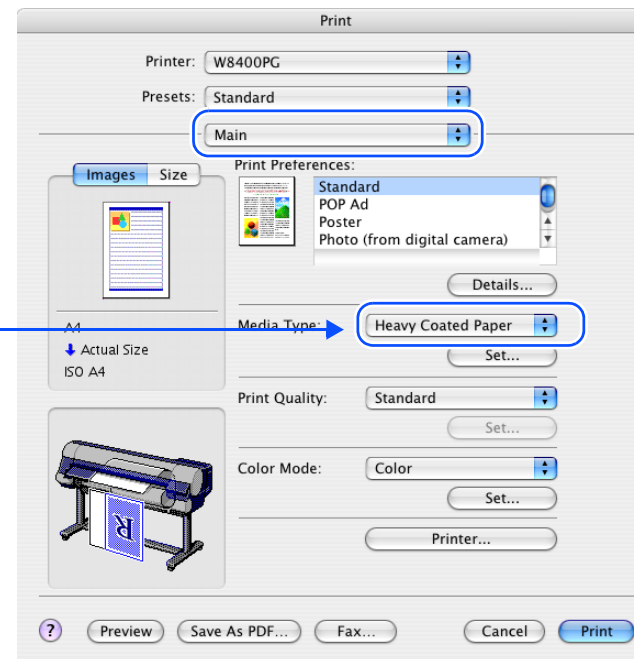
You can enlarge or reduce the size of the original so it fits the width of the roll. The roll media width can be enlarged or reduced for borderless printing of document sizes that are not compatible with borderless printing (A4, A3, irregular sizes, etc).



- 1 Create the original in the software application so it matches the size of the media used for printing.
- 2 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 3 Open the **Main** panel and do the settings for borderless printing.



Select a paper type compatible with borderless printing.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

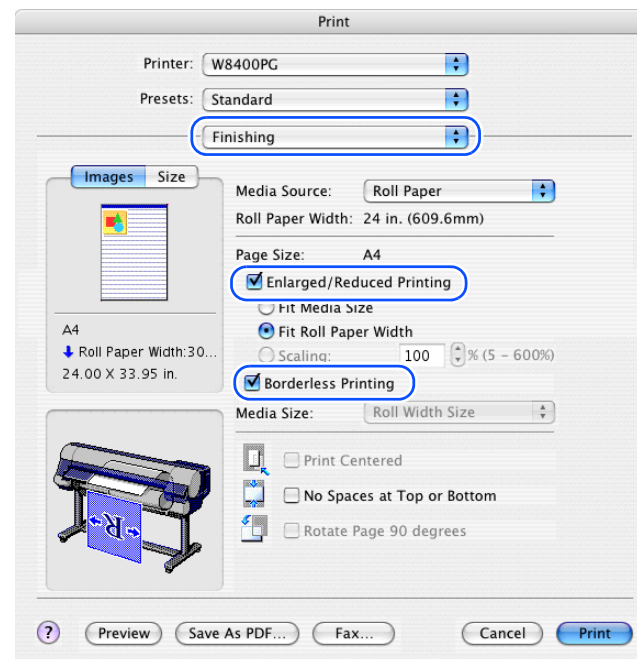
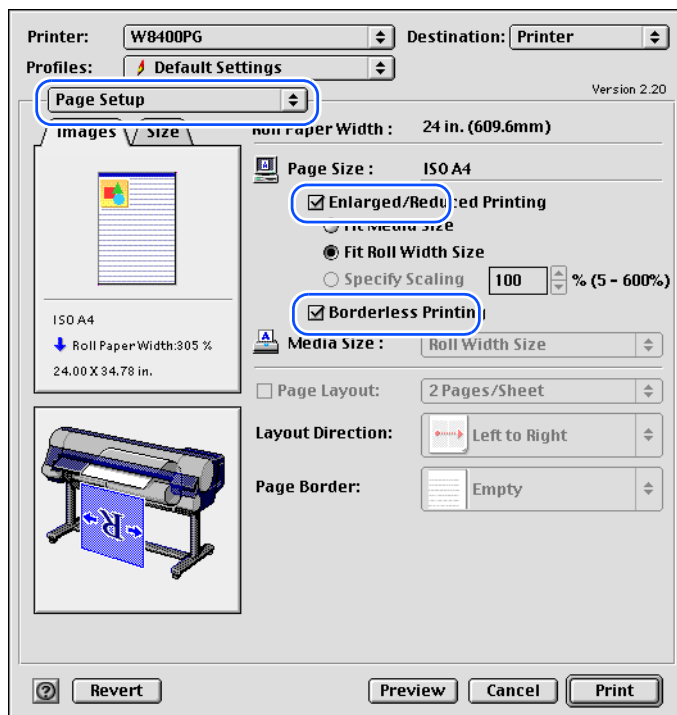
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

4 Open the **Finishing (Page Setup for OS 8/9)** and then select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** and **Borderless Printing**.



Note

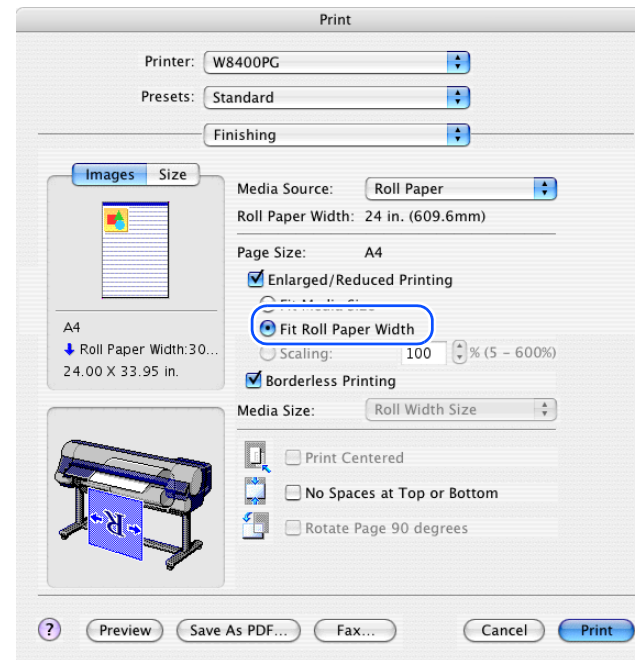
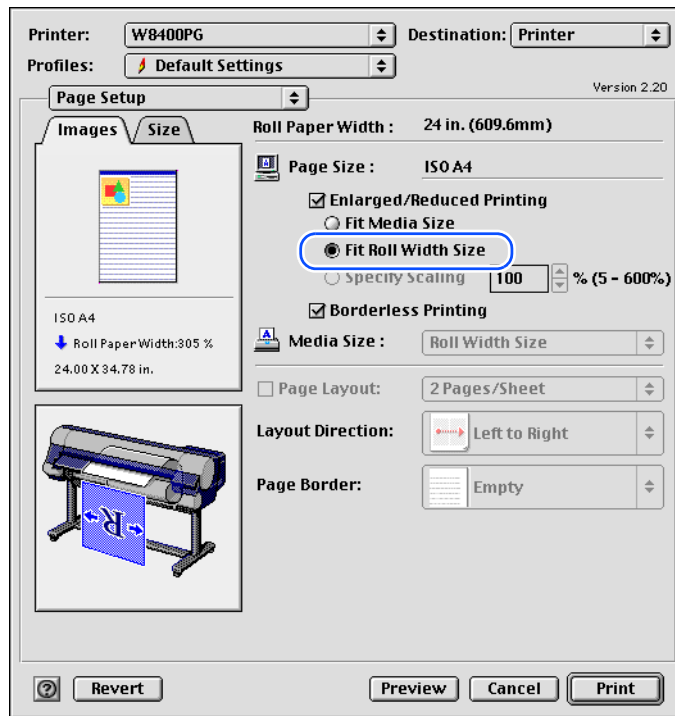
- If **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** and **Borderless Printing** have been selected, select **Fit Roll Paper Width** in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

5 Under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** select **Fit Roll Paper Width** (**Fit Roll Width Size** for OS8/9).



6 **Roll Width Size** will be displayed in **Media Size**, so check the value displayed in the **Roll Paper Width**.

7 Check the content of the settings preview, and then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.

Note

- After the print data has been enlarged automatically to fit the roll media width, **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** printer driver will enlarge automatically by 3 mm the top, bottom, right, and left edges of the document. Consequently, the margin created by the printer configuration will be covered, and borderless printing will be performed. Parts that protrude beyond the 3-mm area at the edges will not be printed.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

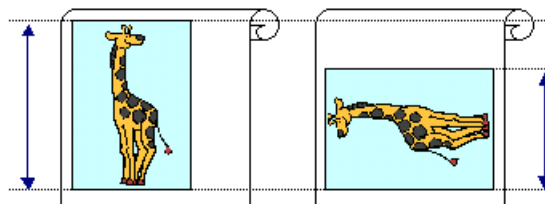
Contents

Index

Rotating the Page 90 Degrees for Printing (Conserve Paper)

If the document to be output vertically on the roll media is vertical, or if the vertical size fits the roll media length, the image can be rotated 90 degrees and printed horizontally. By rotating the vertical page, paper can be conserved.

If this setting has been set in the printer driver, when the page is rotated, the page will be rotated and printed automatically if the roll media width is suitable. If the roll media width is not suitable, the page will not be rotated.

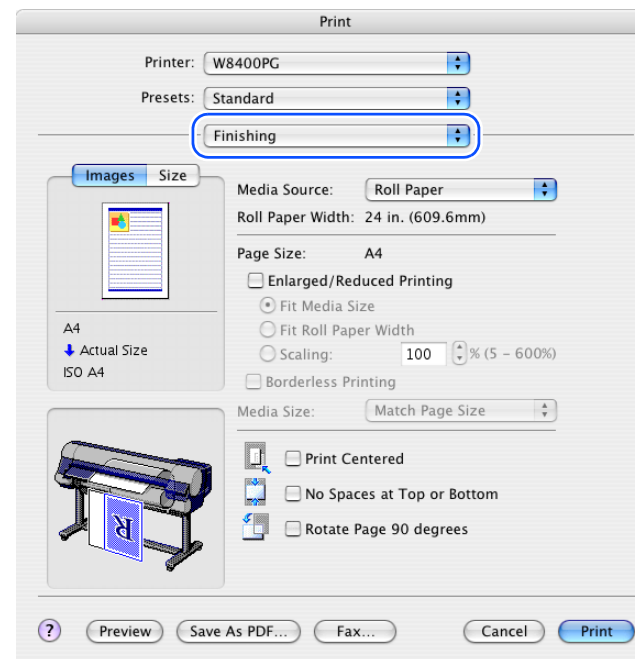
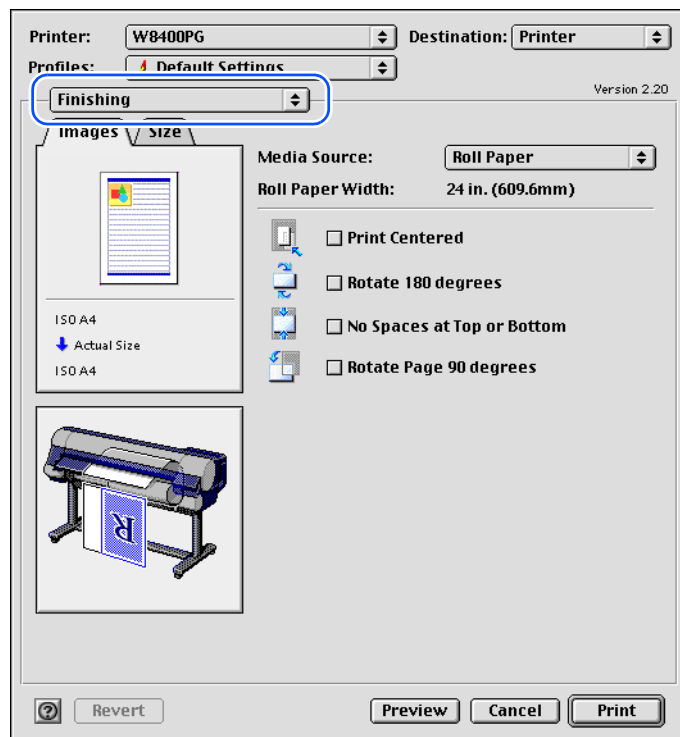


Important

- Confirm that the **Roll Paper Width** setting is correct for the media loaded in the printer.
- If the selection for the **Media Source** is not **Roll Paper**, or if **Borderless Printing** is selected, this function cannot be used.

[Chapter 1
Basic Use](#)[Chapter 2
Using Various Media](#)[Chapter 3
Printing by Objective](#)[Chapter 4
Maintenance](#)[Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment](#)[Chapter 6
Troubleshooting](#)[Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu](#)[Contents](#)[Index](#)

- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Select the **Finishing** panel.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

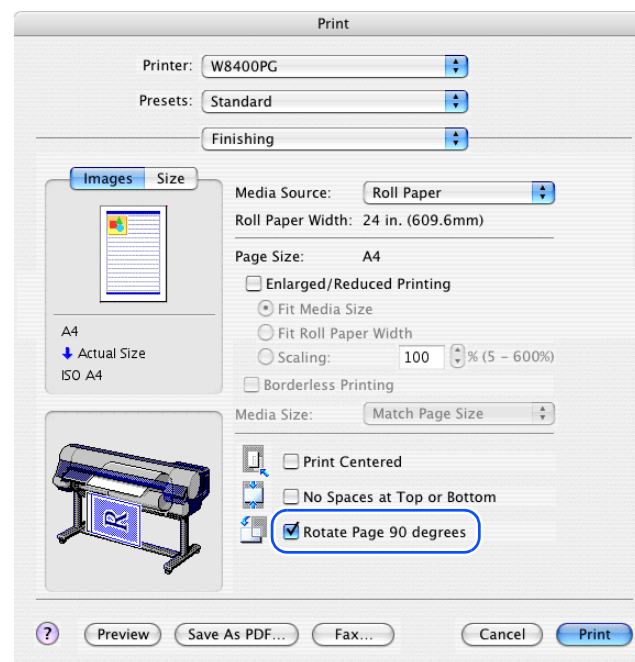
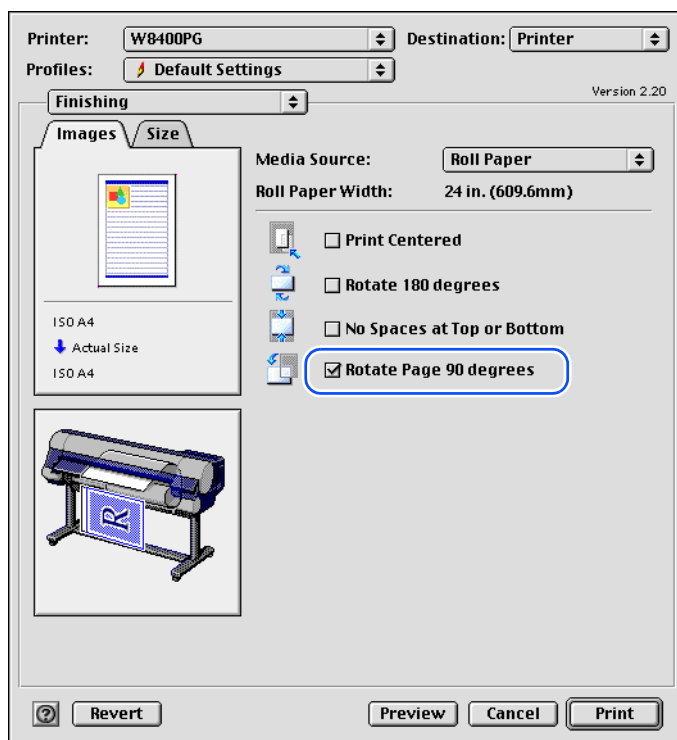
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

3 Select Rotate Page 90 degrees.



4 Check the content of the settings preview, and then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.



Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to [“Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)”](#) in [“Before You Begin”](#). (→ P.3-65)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

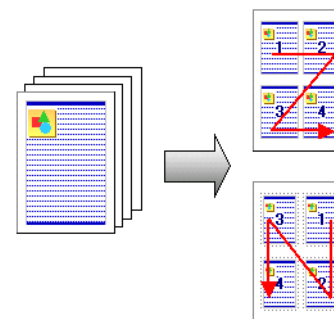
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

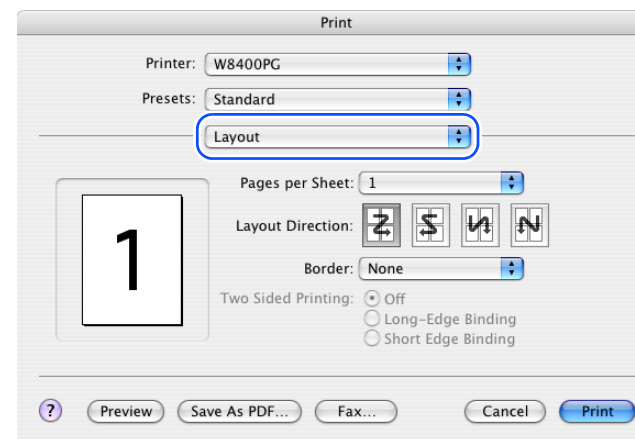
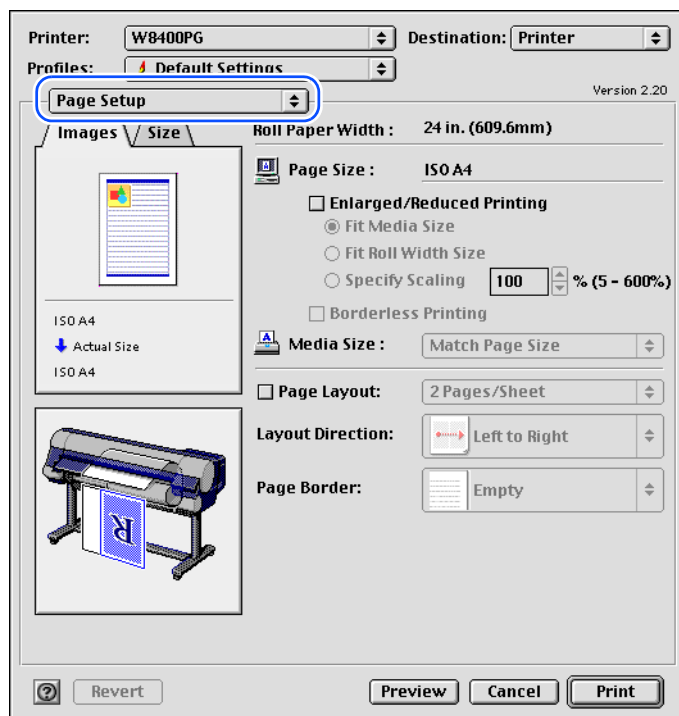
Index

Printing Several Pages on One Sheet (Page Layout)

You can reduce the size of the image and print 2 to 16 pages on one sheet. For example, if printing multiple-page documents two pages at a time, half the paper is sufficient. Further, advanced settings can also be made by entering the line boundaries and page distribution for the print sheets.



- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Select the **Layout** panel (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9).



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

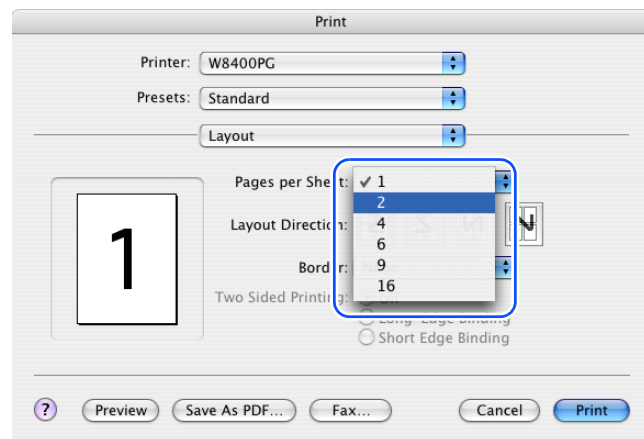
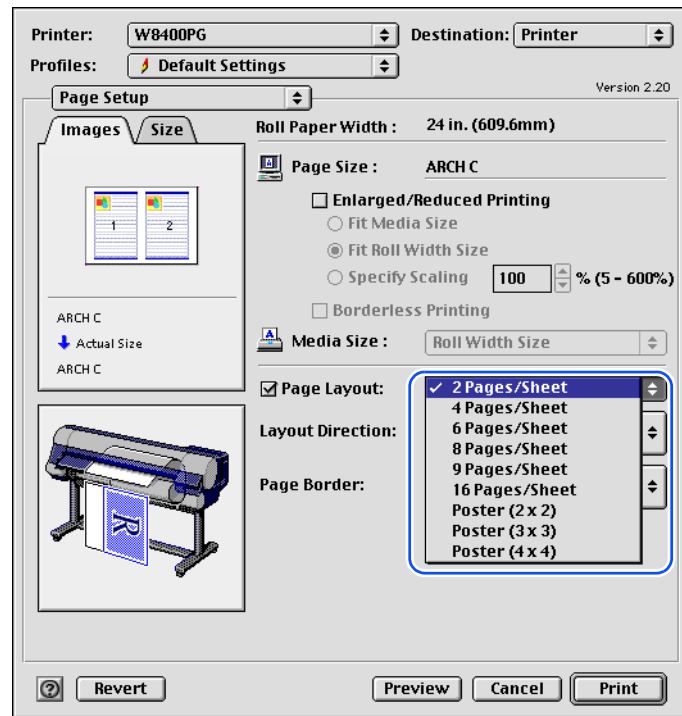
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

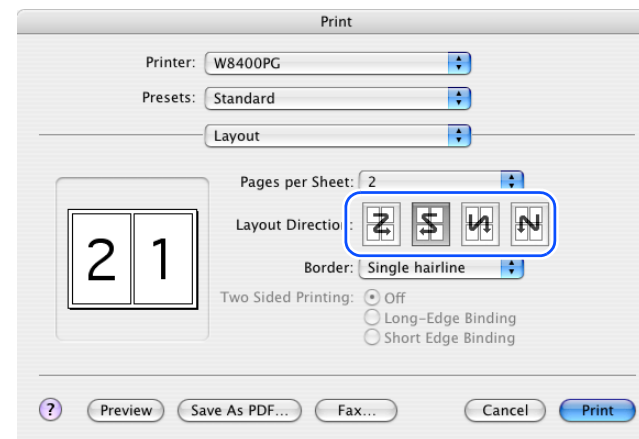
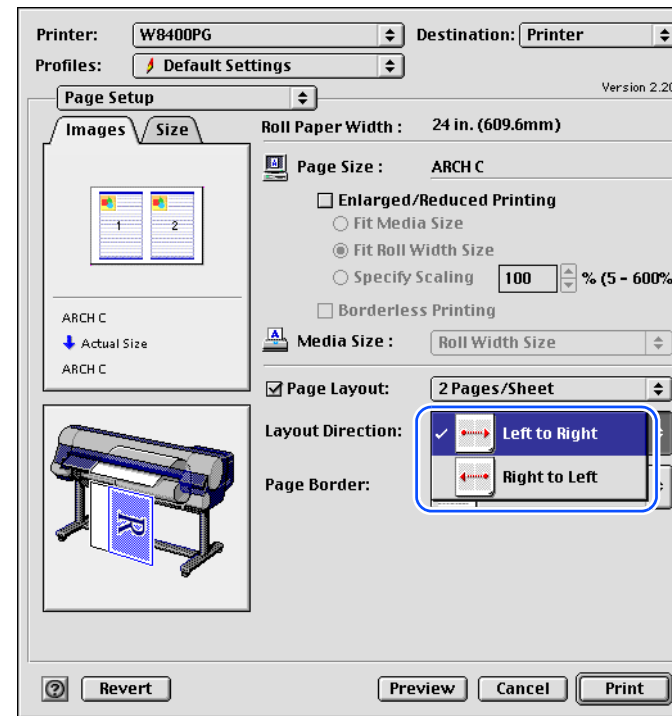
Contents

Index

3 From the **Pages per Sheet (Page Layout for OS 8/9)** list, select the page layout that you want to use for printing.



4 Set the **Layout Direction (Layout Direction for OS 8/9)** to arrange the pages on the media.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

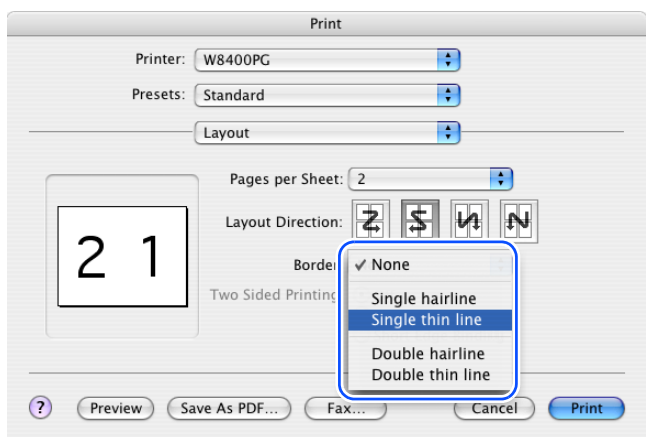
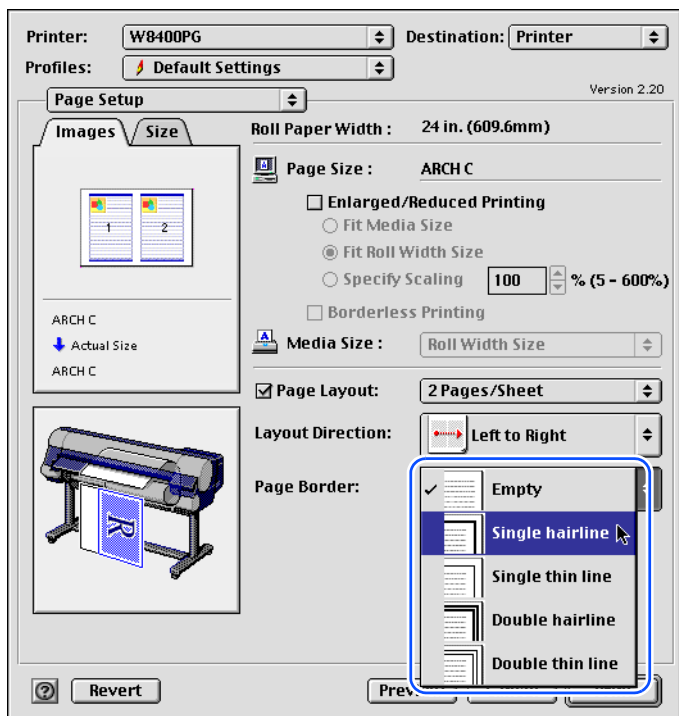
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

5 Select a borderline from the **Border (Page Border for OS 8/9) list**.



6 Check the content of the settings preview, and then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.

Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ P.3-65)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

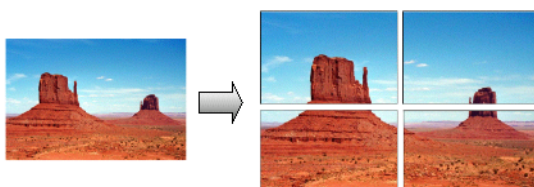
Printing Posters (Page Layout)

After the image is enlarged and divided into several sections, you can print the print the sections and paste them together to assemble one large poster.

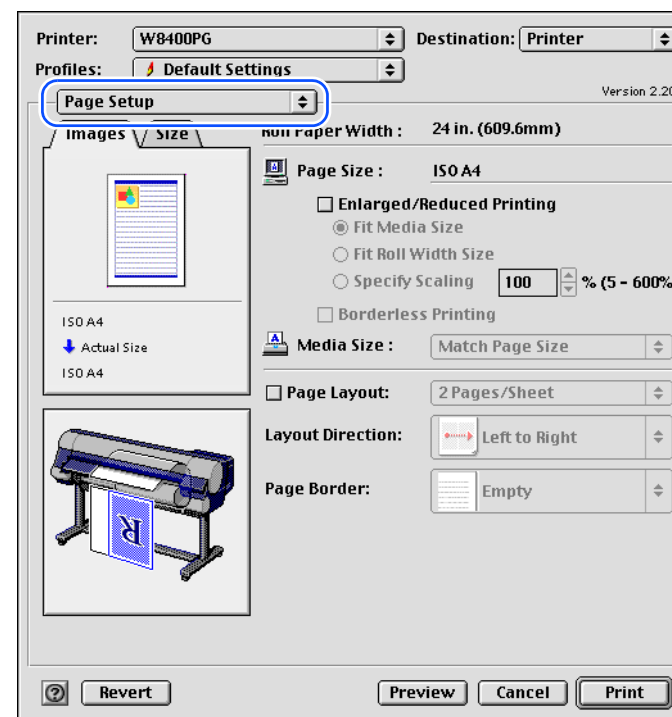


Note

- This function is not provided in OS X.



- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Select the **Page Setup** panel.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

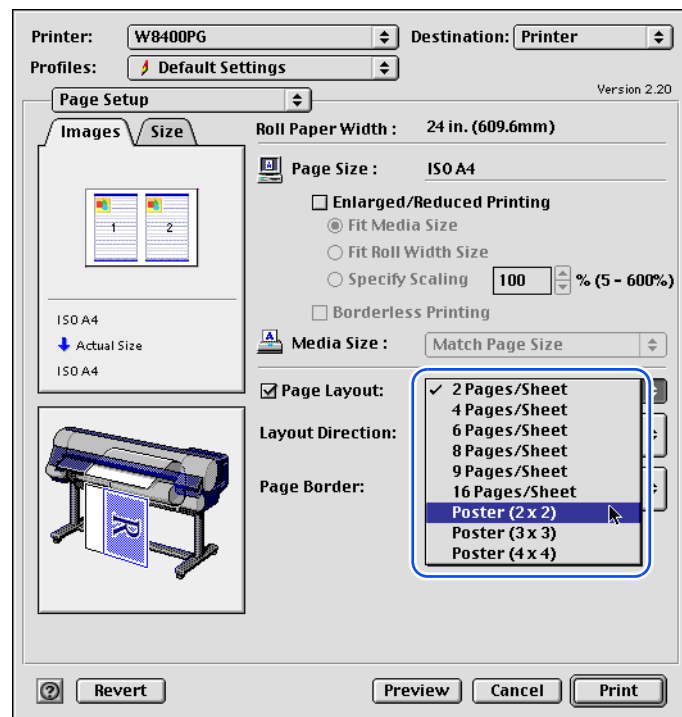
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

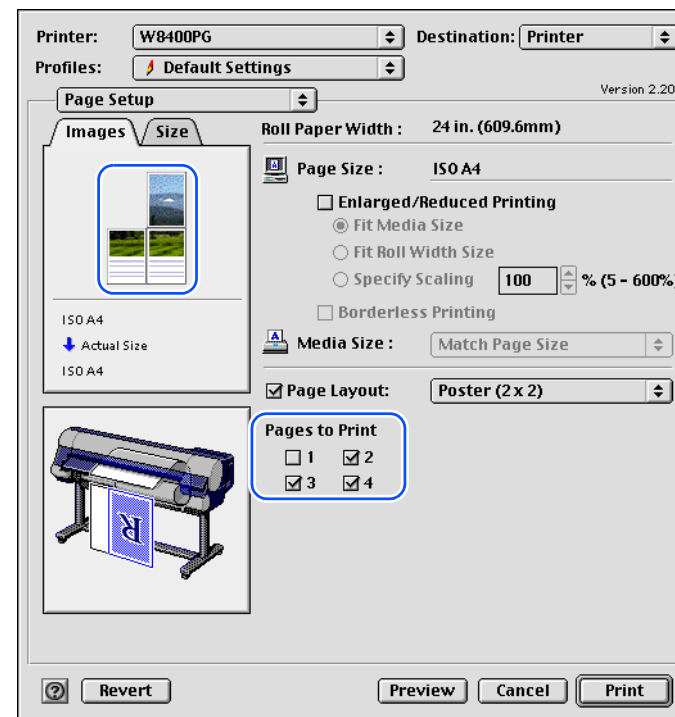
Index

3 Select **Poster (2x2)** from the **Page Layout** list.

In the Preview confirm the appearance of the image of the selected page layout.



4 If you do not need to print one of the panels of the divided image, click the **Pages to Print** checkbox to remove the checkmark for the panel that you do not want to print.



Note

- The pages selected for printing are displayed in the print image Preview and the pages that have not selected for printing are not displayed.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 5** Check the content of the settings preview, and then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.

Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ [P.3-65](#))

Vertical and Horizontal Banner Printing (Long Prints)

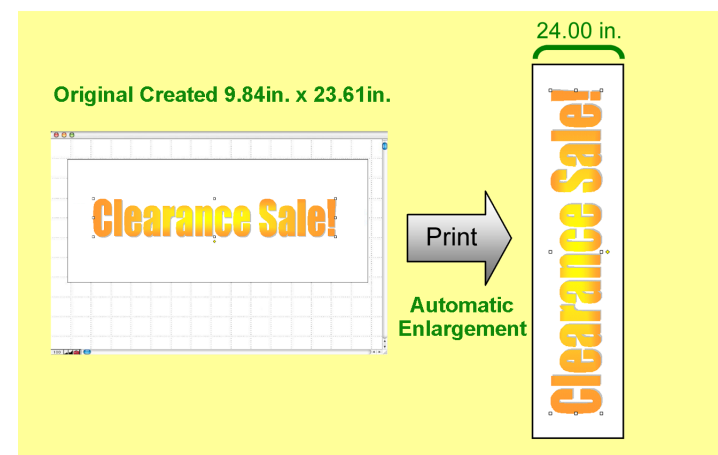
■ Matching the Width of the Roll

Once you become familiar with fitting images to the full width of the roll with your software application, it is very easy to print vertical and horizontal banners.

Here we will describe as an example how to take a 250 mm x 600 mm original and enlarge to fit a 24” roll (approximately 610 mm wide), and then print it as a banner (600 mm x 1,440 mm).

Note

- With this printer you can print a banner up to 18,000 mm maximum length (2,774 mm with OS 8/9).



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

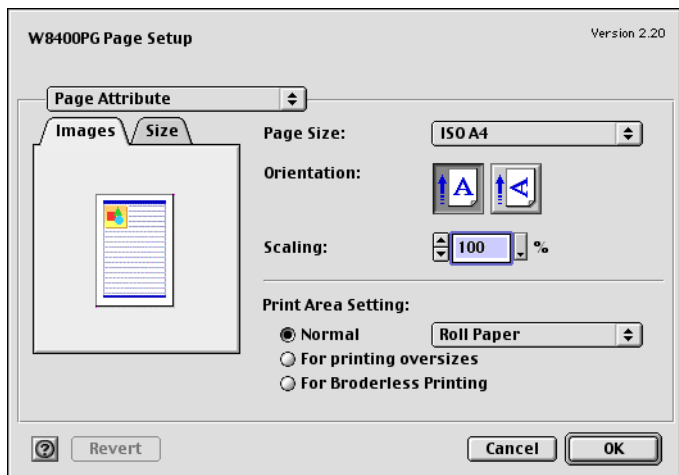
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

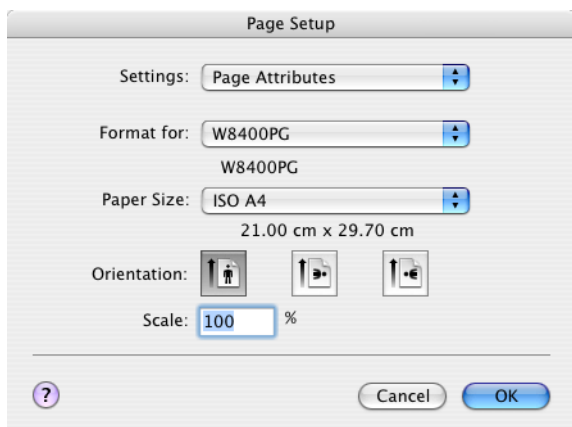
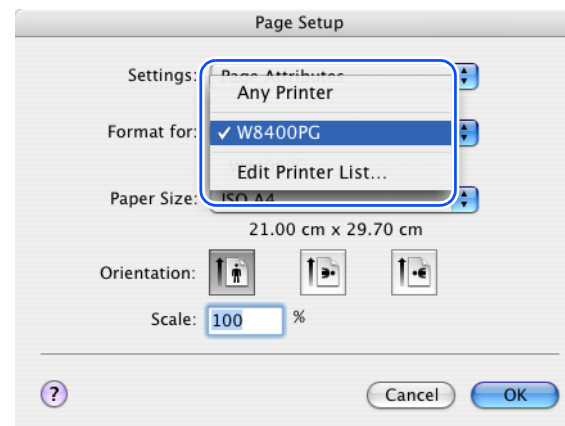
Contents

Index

- 1 Start the software application.
- 2 From the **File** menu select **Page Setup** to open the **Page Setup** dialog box.



- 3 Set the **Format for** (OS 8/9 does not have this setting).



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

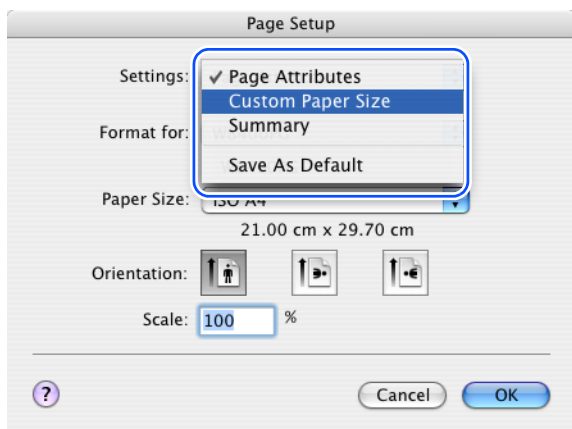
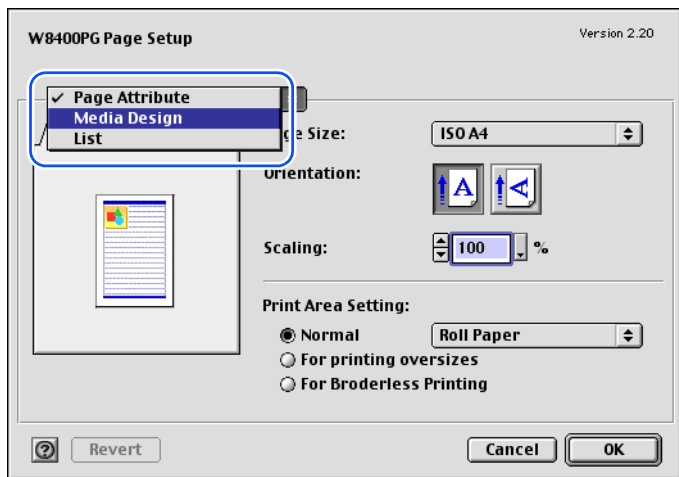
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

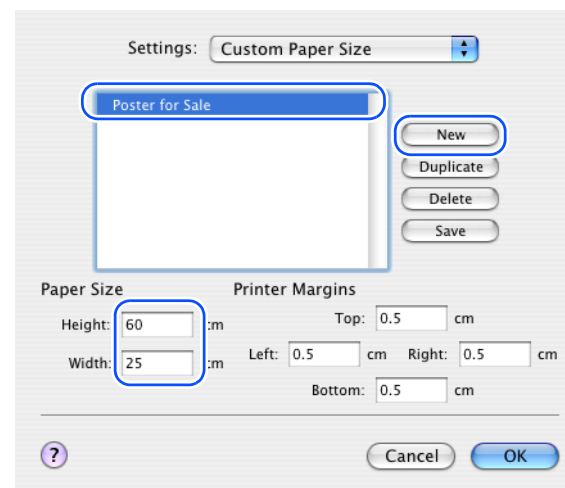
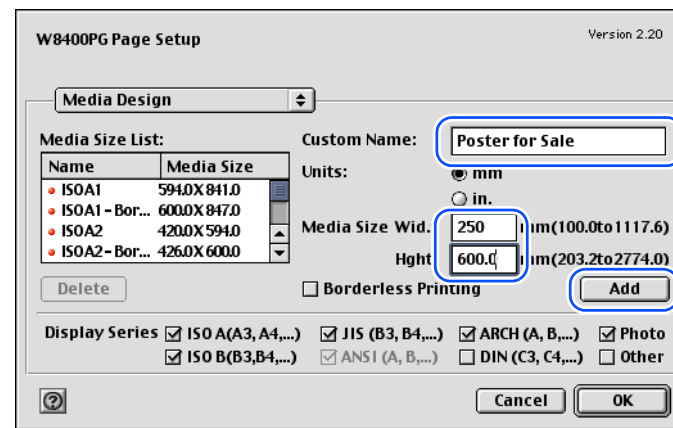
4 Select **Custom Paper Size (Media Design for OS 8/9)**.



5 Click the **New** button (**Add** for OS 8/9) then define the media name and size.



● Here, set the media name to **Poster for Sale**.



6 Click the **Save** button (this step is not required with OS 8/9).

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

7 Select the **Page Attributes** panel.

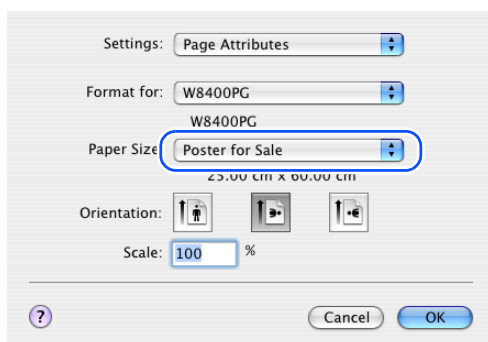
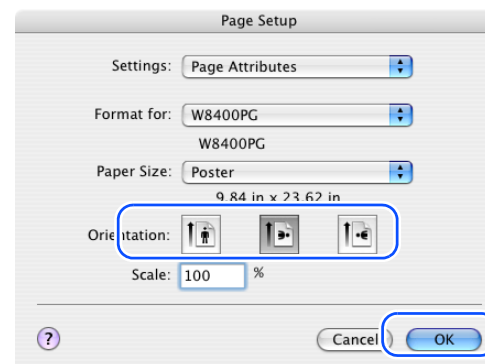
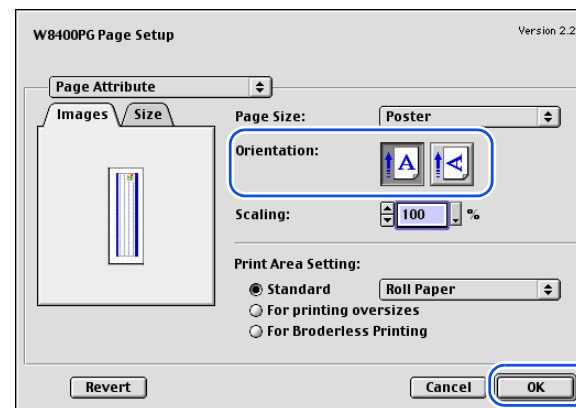
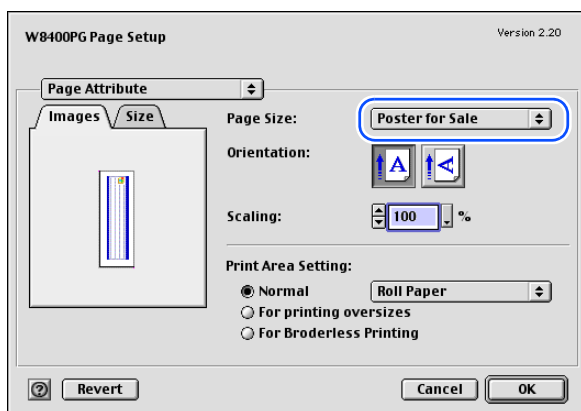
Note

- If these settings are saved using the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box (for OS 8/9, the **Media Design** dialog box), the custom paper name and size that has been set will be added to the display. For details of the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box (for OS 8/9, the **Media Design** dialog box), refer to “[Custom Sizes \(User Print Settings\)](#)”. (→ P.3-122)

8 You custom paper settings can be selected.

- Select the user-specified media name registered using the **Custom Paper Size** panel (**Media Design** panel for OS 8/9) in **Paper Size**.

- Set the **Orientation** to portrait for banner printing, and then press the **OK** button. The **Page Setup** dialog box (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9) will close.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

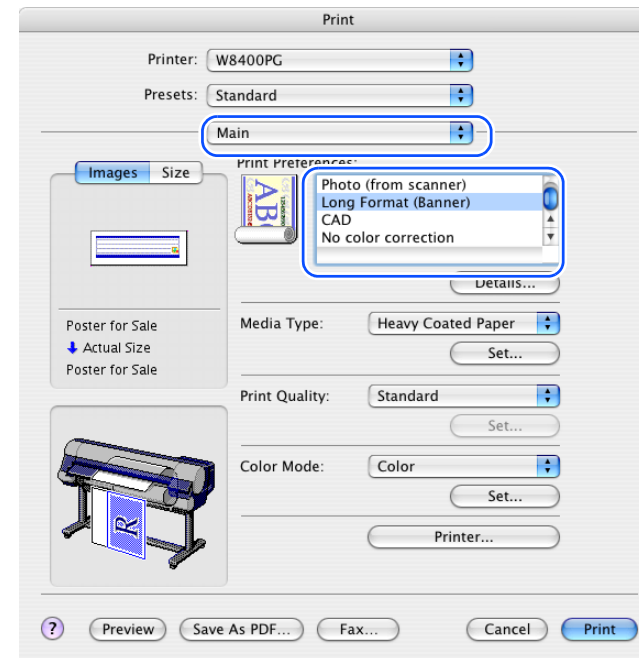
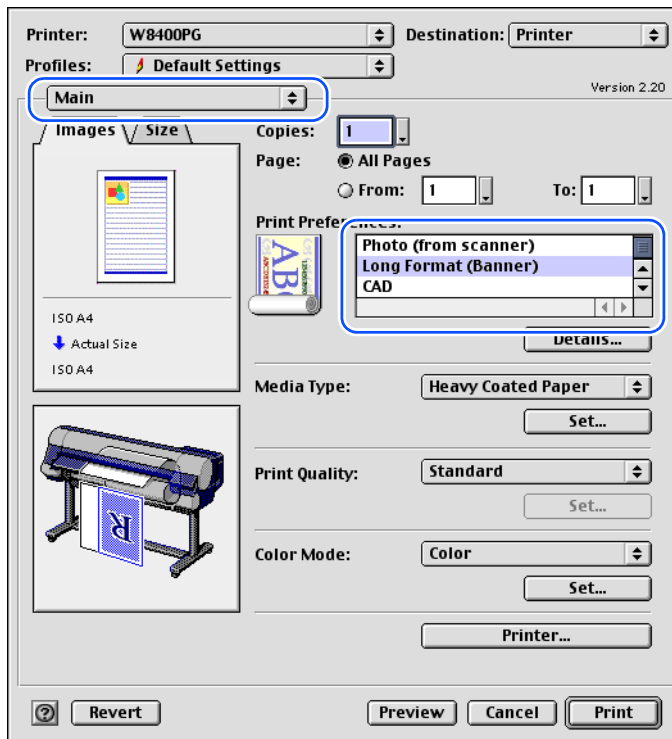
Index

9 Create the original in the software application.



10 After the original is created, from the **File** menu select **Print** to open the **Print** dialog box.

11 When the **Main** panel displays, select **Long Format (Banner)** for the **Print Preferences** for the long print.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

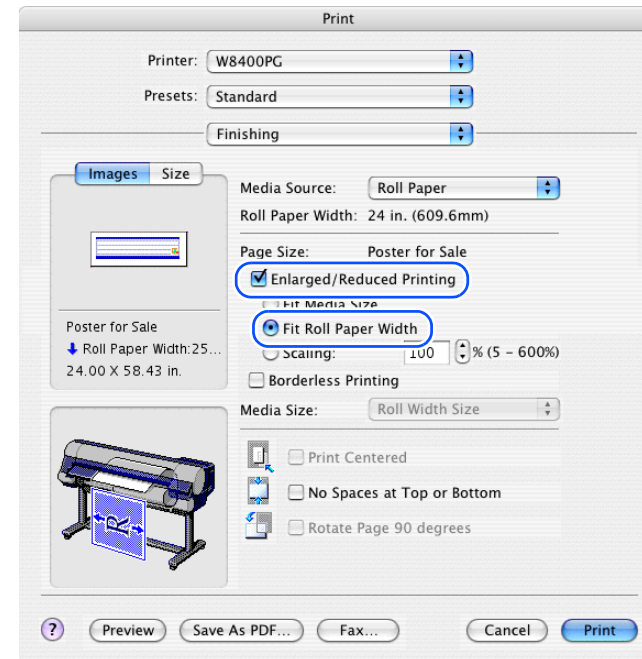
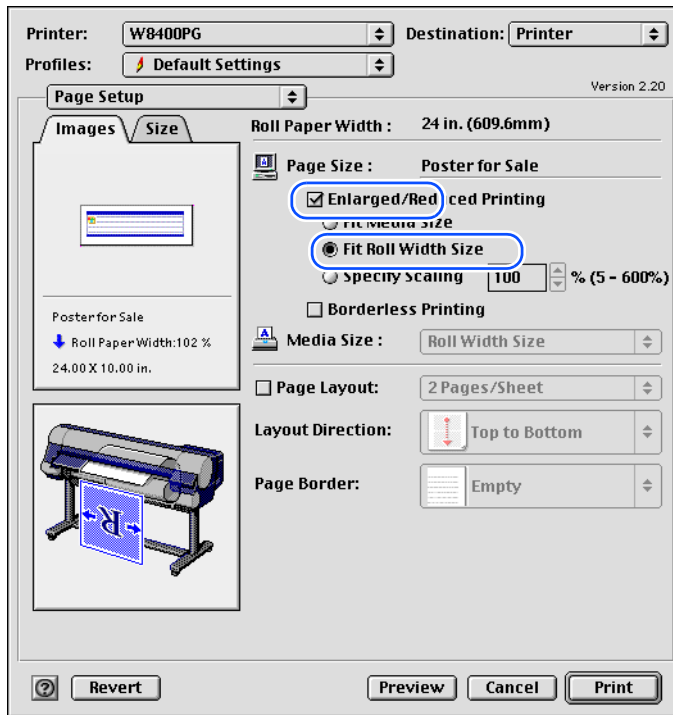
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

12 Display the **Finishing (Page Setup for OS 8/9)** panel and select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** and **Fit Roll Paper Width (Fit Roll Width Size for OS 8/9)** for the long print.



13 Check the content of the settings preview, and then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.



Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to [“Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)”](#) in [“Before You Begin”](#). (→ P.3-65)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

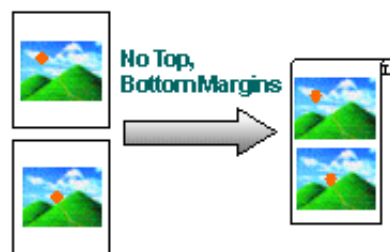
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

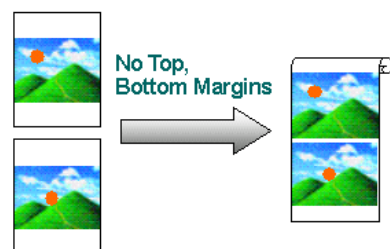
Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)

If there are blank areas at the top and bottom of the print data, delete the blank areas before printing. Paper will not feed for the blank areas, to conserve paper. This function can be used only if “Roll Media” is selected as the paper feed.



Note

- You use this method during borderless printing as shown in the illustration below.



Important

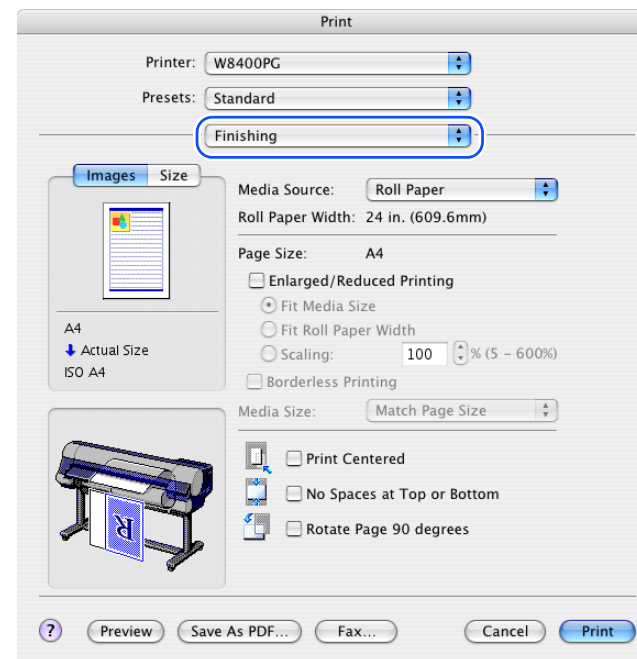
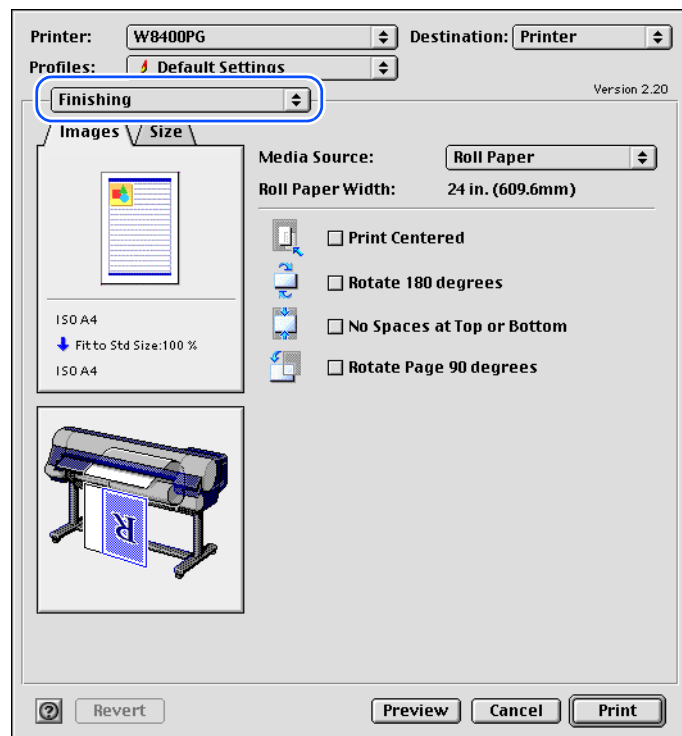
- This function cannot be used when **Roll Paper (Banner)** is selected as the Media Source.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Select the **Finishing** panel.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

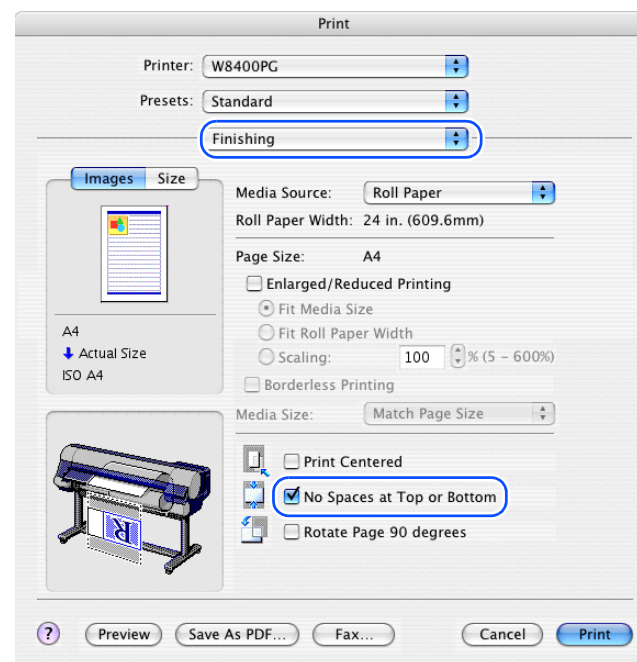
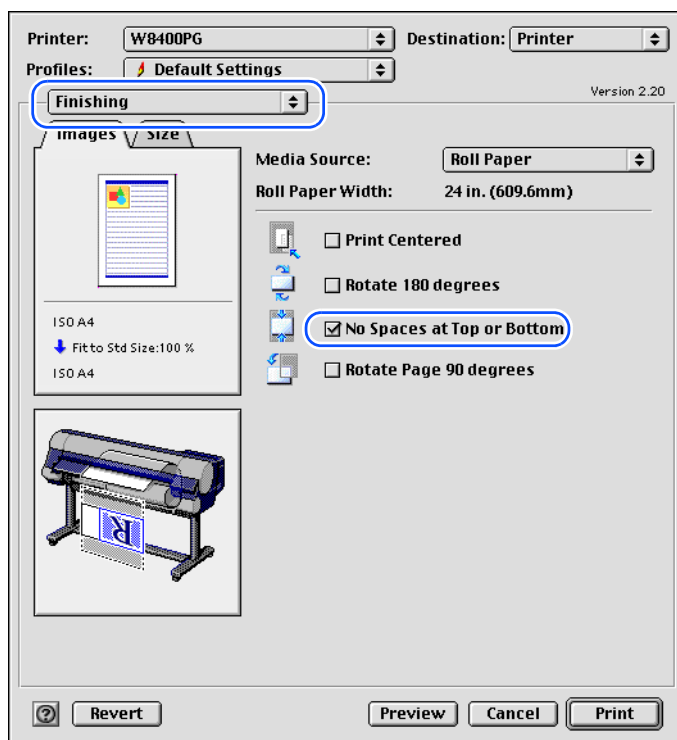
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

3 Select No Spaces at Top or Bottom.



4 Check the content of the settings preview, and then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.

Note

- To obtain the correct print results, it is recommended to check the print preview screen before printing. For the print preview screen display, refer to [“Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)”](#) in [“Before You Begin”](#). (→ P.3-65)

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

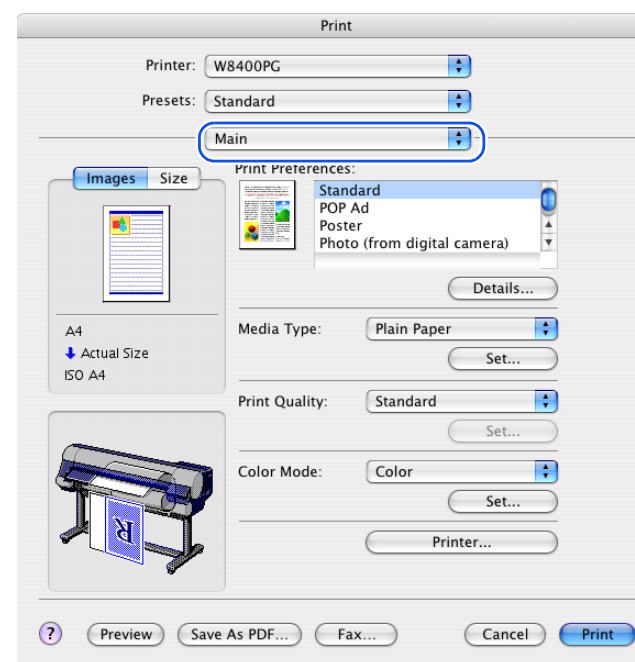
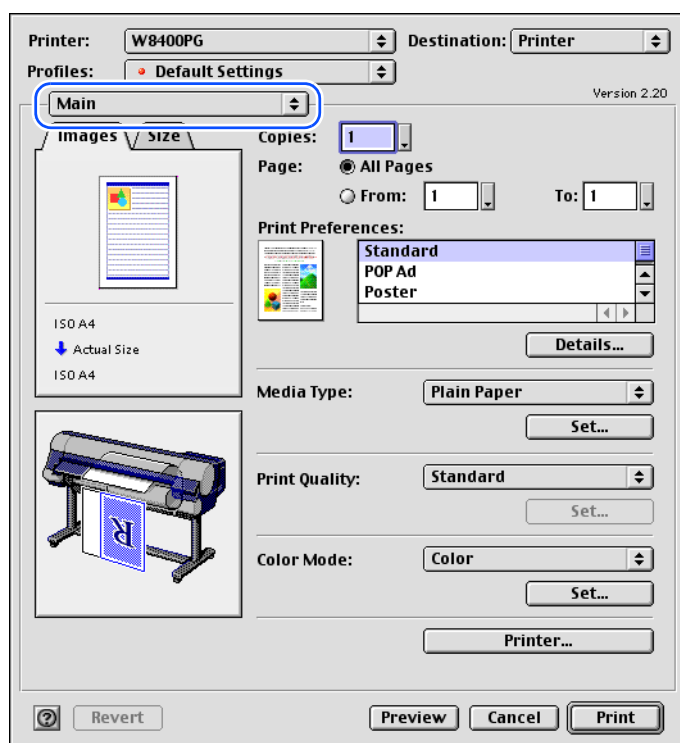
Index

Custom Print Quality

■ Customizing Print Quality

To set the print quality and print sit combinations, select **Custom Settings** in **Print Quality** to set the print quality and resolution according to the application, using the **Custom Settings** dialog box.

- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Confirm that the **Main** panel is displayed.

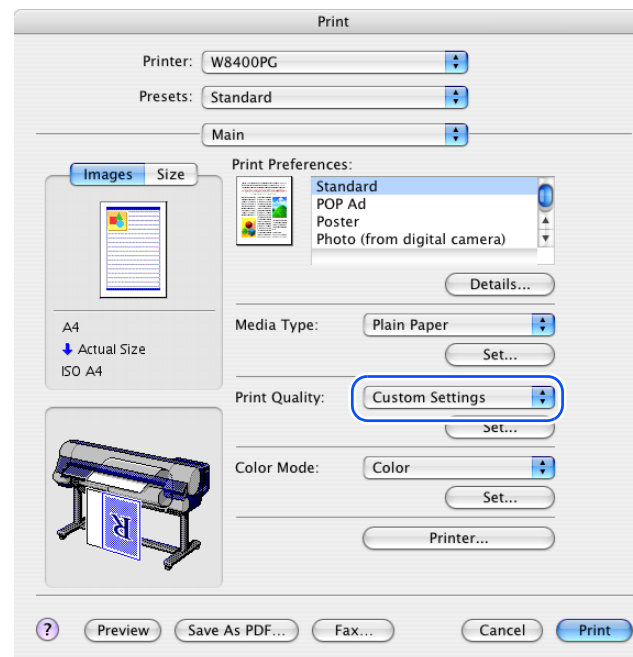
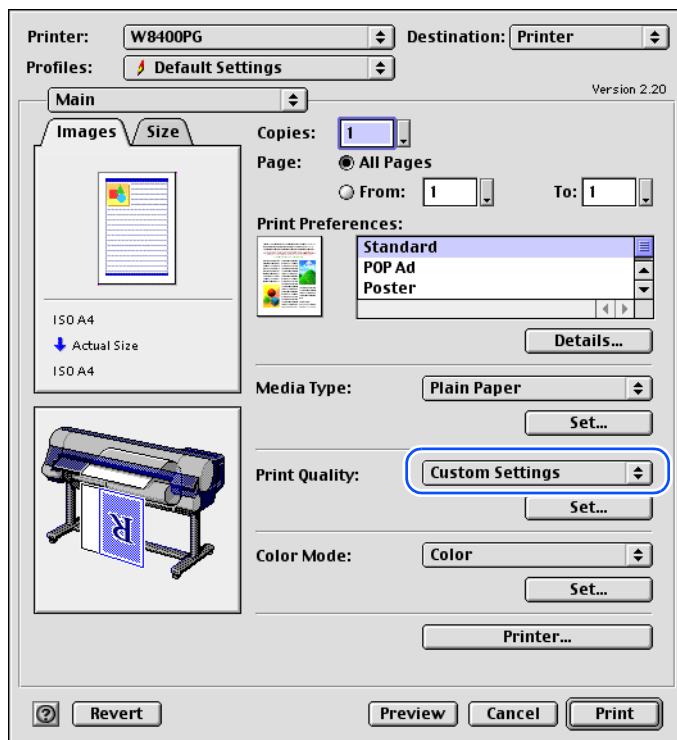
Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

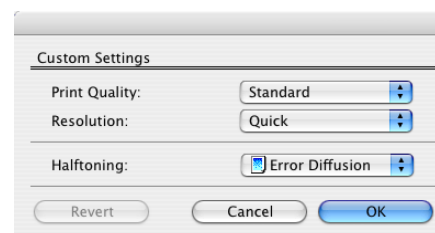
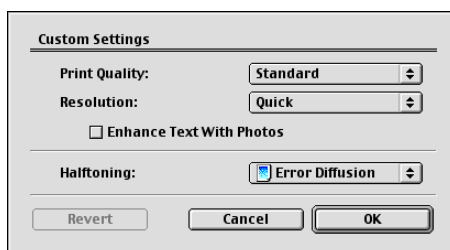
Index

3 From the **Print Quality** list, select **Custom Settings**.

A **Set...** button appears in the lower right corner of the **Print Quality** group.



4 Click the **Set...** button in the **Print Quality** group to open the **Custom Settings** dialog box.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

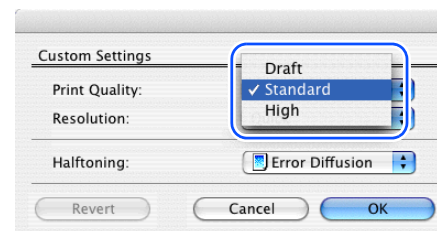
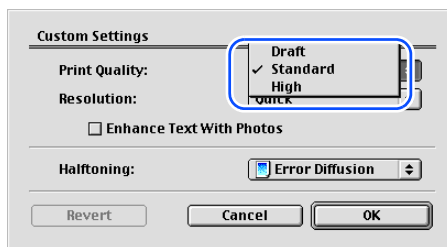
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

5 From the **Print Quality** list, select the quality settings.



Note

- The print quality settings that you can select for the custom settings are described below.

Print Quality	Content
Highest	Prioritizes attaining the highest image quality for printing.
High	Prioritizes attaining high image quality for printing.
Standard	Attains a stable image at an average printing speed.
Draft	Prioritizes high printing speed but you should check layout and other aspects of the image after printing.

Important

- The print quality that can be selected depends on the type of paper set. The **Highest** print quality can be selected only if the paper types described below have been set.
Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper, Glossy Photo Paper, Semi-Glossy Photo Paper
- If one of the types of media below is selected, **Draft** cannot be selected under **Print Quality**.
Premium Matte Paper, Glossy Photo Paper, Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper, Synthetic Paper, Adhesive Synthetic Paper, Backlit Film, Flame-Resistant Cloth, Fabric Banner, Japanese Paper Washi, CAD Translucent Matte Film, CAD Clear Film.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

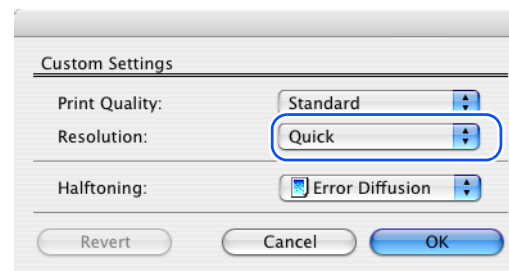
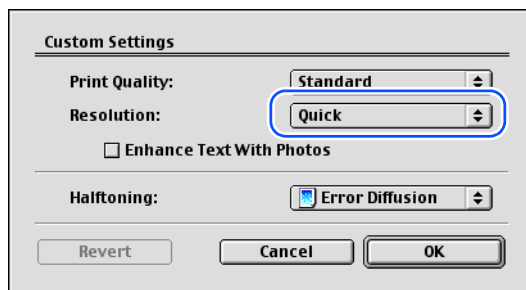
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

6 Confirm the resolution.



Important

- As described below, the resolution will be set automatically according to the printer quality selected. To change the resolution, change the print quality settings.

Print Quality	Resolution	Content
Highest/High	Fine (600 dpi)	The higher the resolution, the slower the print speed. Optimum print results can be obtained, but the print time will be considerable, and large memory space is required.
Standard, Draft	Quick (300 dpi)	The lower the resolution, the faster the print speed. The print time will be reduced, and the memory required will be small.

7 Click the **OK** button to close the **Custom Settings** dialog box.

Note

- In OS 8/9 if you select **Enhance Text With Photos** in the **Custom Settings** dialog box then when you have text mixed with photos or graphic data, the resolution of the text will be raised and the resolution of the photos or graphics will be lowered (this function is not available in OS X).
- Error Diffusion** only can be set in **Halftoning** user settings. The margin of error scatter distributes pixels randomly and is expressed in halftones. This is ideal for printing photos and graphics for which detailed gradation is required.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Fine Adjusting Color for Printing

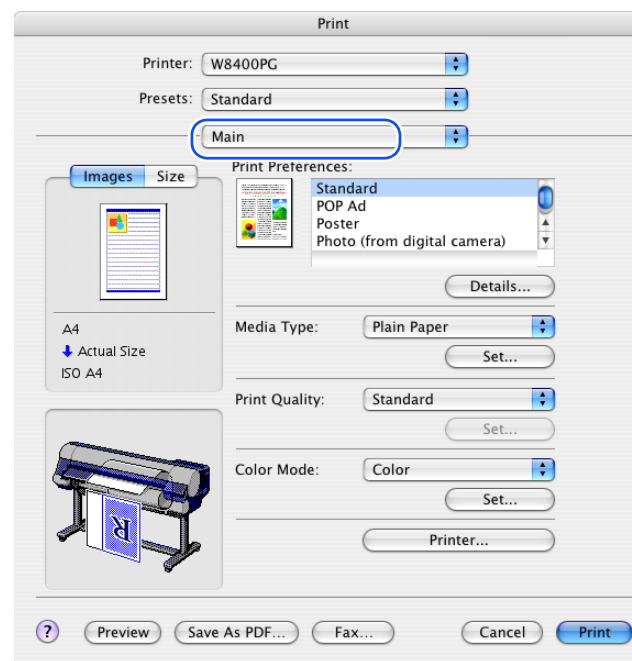
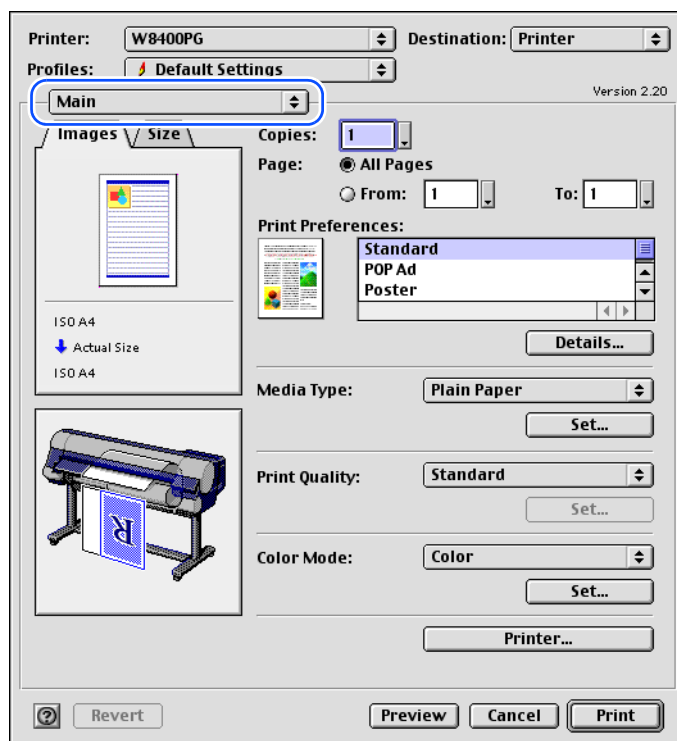
■ Adjusting Color

Basically the color settings of the software application have priority, but if the results of a print job are not what you want you can also adjust color in the printer driver.

You can also take color photos captured with a scanner or a digital camera, or any other color image, and print them in monochrome.

Now we will describe the color adjustments.

- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Confirm that the **Main** panel is displayed.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

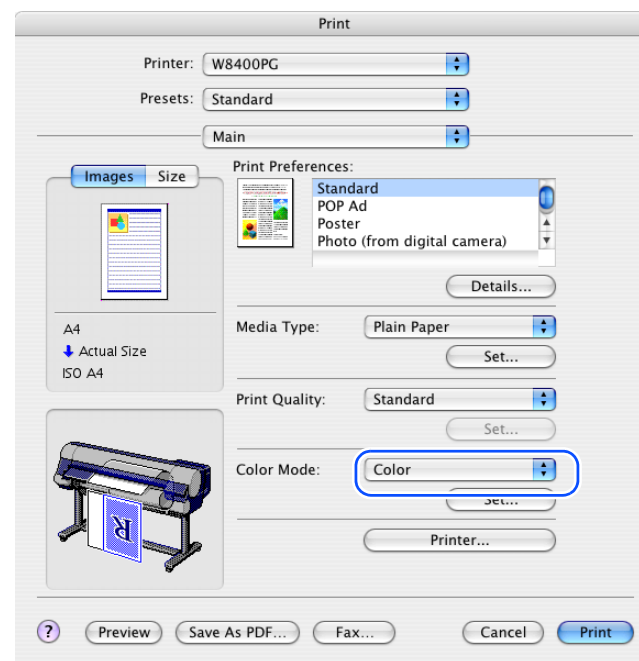
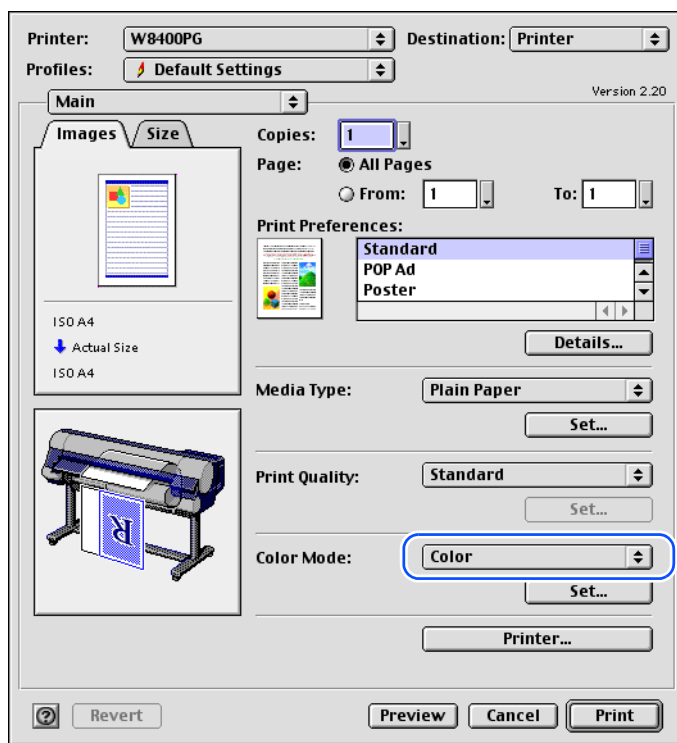
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

3 On the Main panel select **Color Mode** then **Color**.



Note

● **Color Mode** presents these following items for selection.

Color Mode	Content
Color	Prints in color.
Monochrome (Photo):	Provides stable monochrome photo printing with minimal tone change and enables detailed adjustment of gray scale gradations and color tones.
Monochrome	Prints in monochrome.
Solid Color	Printing is limited to colors only. Use to print sharply thinly-colored fine lines.
Black Only	All colors other than white are printed black.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

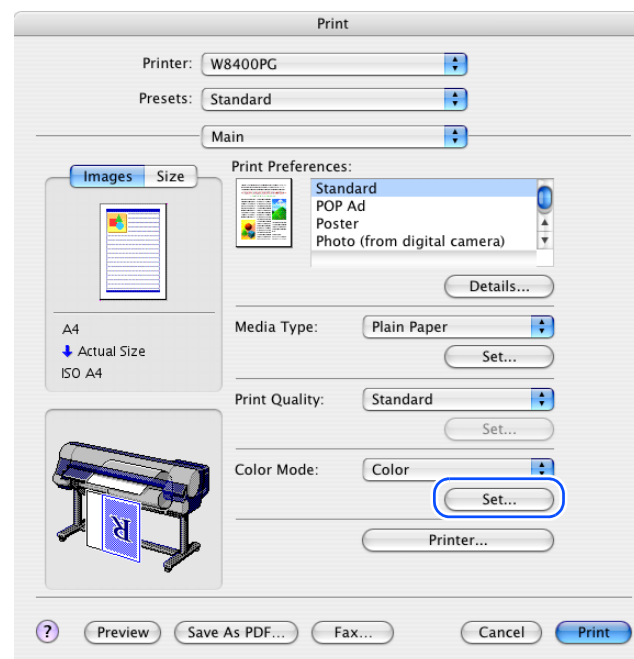
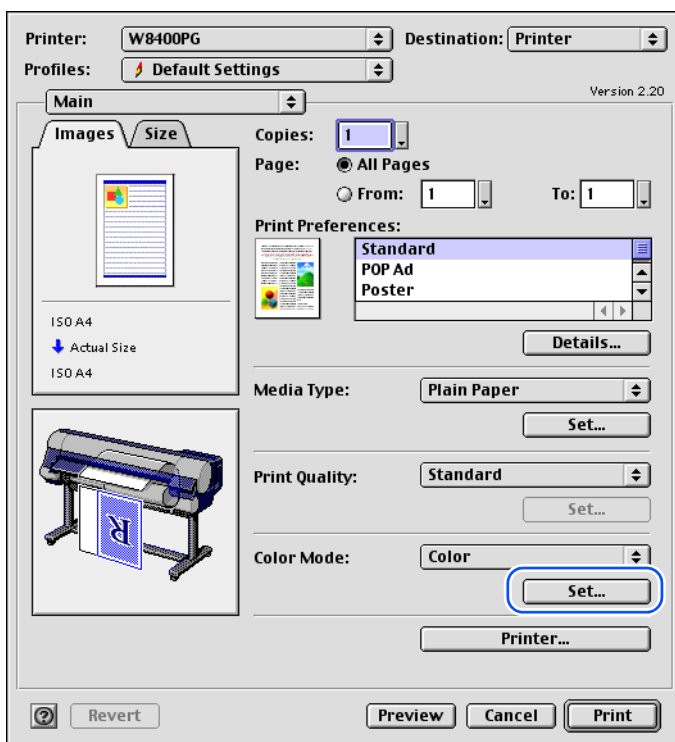
Contents

Index

Important

- Monochrome (Photo) can be selected for Color Mode only if one of the following types of paper is selected:
Glossy Photo Paper/Semi-Glossy Photo Paper/Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper/Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper/Fine Art Photo/Fine Art Heavyweight Photo/Fine Art Textured/Japanese Paper Washi

4 Press the **Set...** button.



Note

- **Manual Color Settings** are enabled when **Color**, **Monochrome (Photo)**, or **Monochrome** is selected for **Color Mode**.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

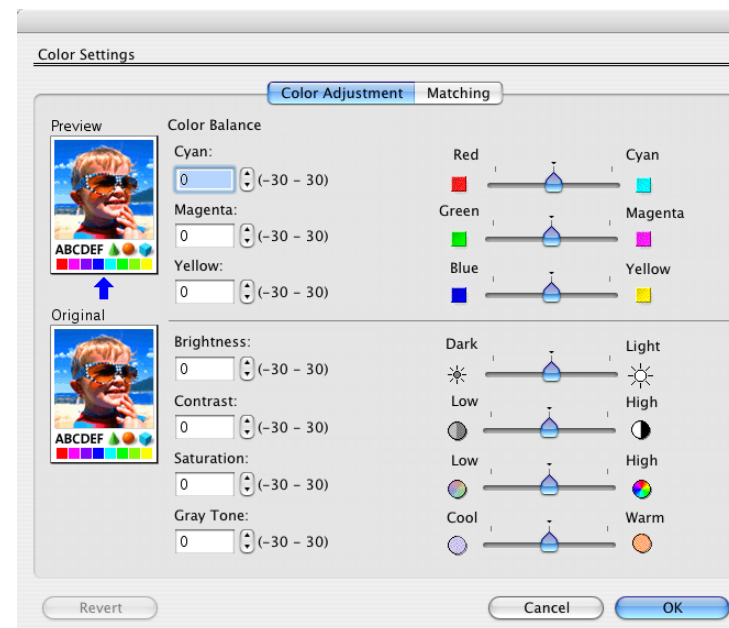
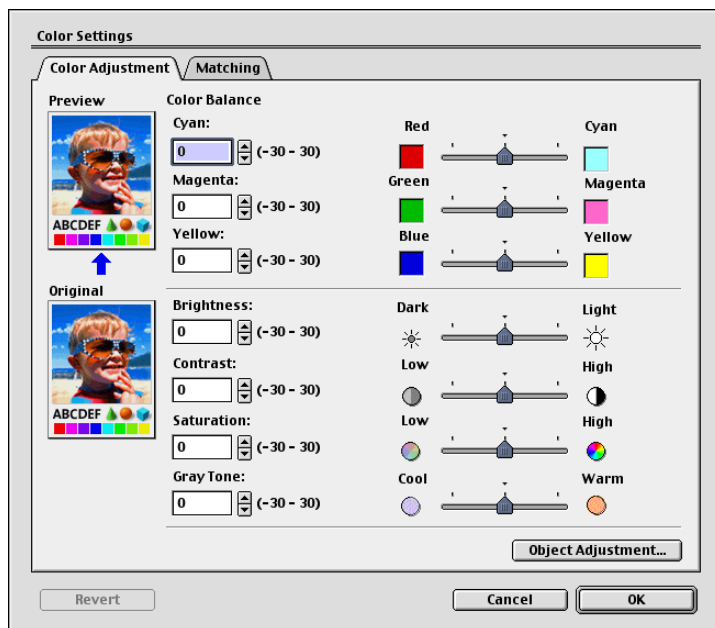
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

5 The Color Settings dialog box opens.



6 Confirm that the Color Adjustment panel is displayed, then click the Object Adjustment... button.



The **Object Adjustment** dialog box opens.

Note

- This function is not available in OS X, so [Steps 6 to 8](#) are not required.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

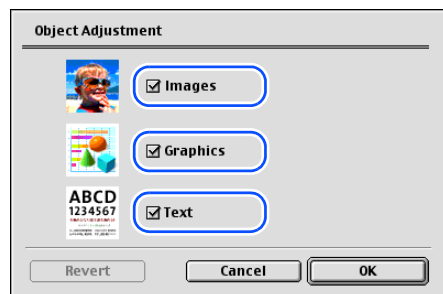
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

7 Select the item that you want to adjust: **Images**, **Graphics**, or **Text**.

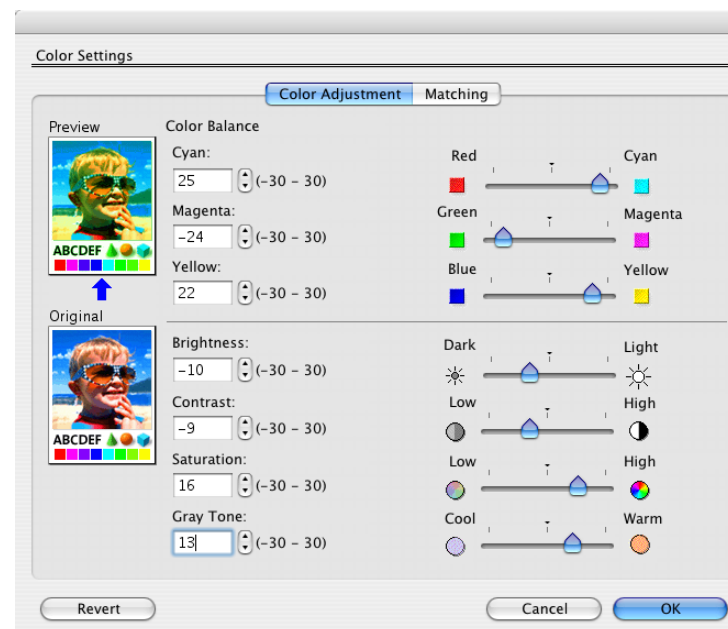
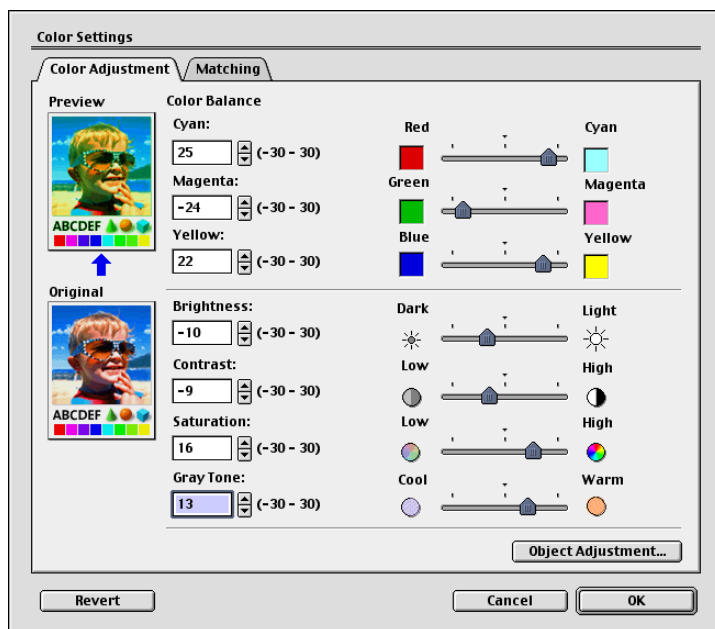


Note

- Note that for this printer driver all the items (**Images**, **Graphics**, **Text**) are selected as the default settings.

8 Click the **OK** button to close the **Object Adjustment** dialog box.

9 Drag the slide bar for the custom settings to the left or right to perform adjustment. Alternatively, click the arrow buttons in the field for entering values, or enter the value directly, to perform adjustments.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index



Note

- The **Color Adjustment** panel presents the following items for selection.

Color Adjustment	Content
Cyan	You can calibrate the hues for Cyan, Magenta, Yellow.
Magenta	
Yellow	
Brightness	Adjusts brightness from the darkest to brightest colors so none are lost in the brightness of the printed image.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative contrast from brightest to darkest colors.
Saturation	Adjusts the vividness of colors from dull to extremely vivid.
Gray Tone	Adjusts grayscale from cool colors (blue tones) to warm colors (red tones).



Important

- If changing the panel items, the **Preview** to the left will be changed. Use **Original** to restore the default settings. **Preview** reflects the current settings.

10 Click the **OK** button to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

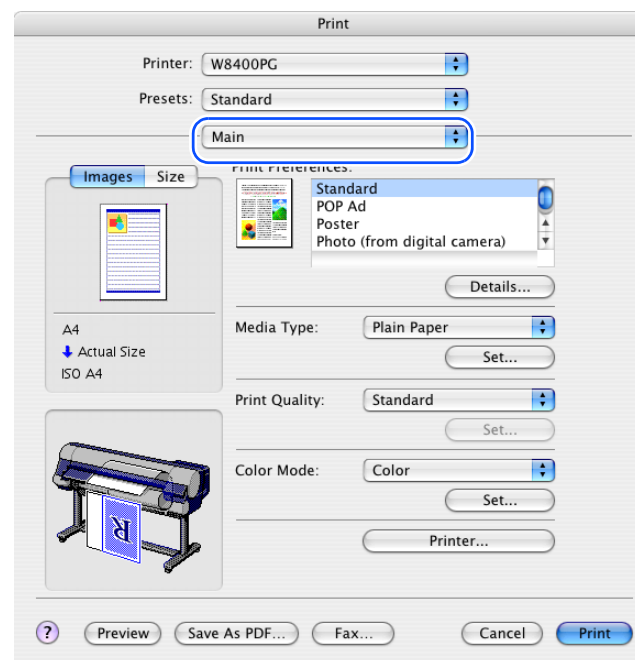
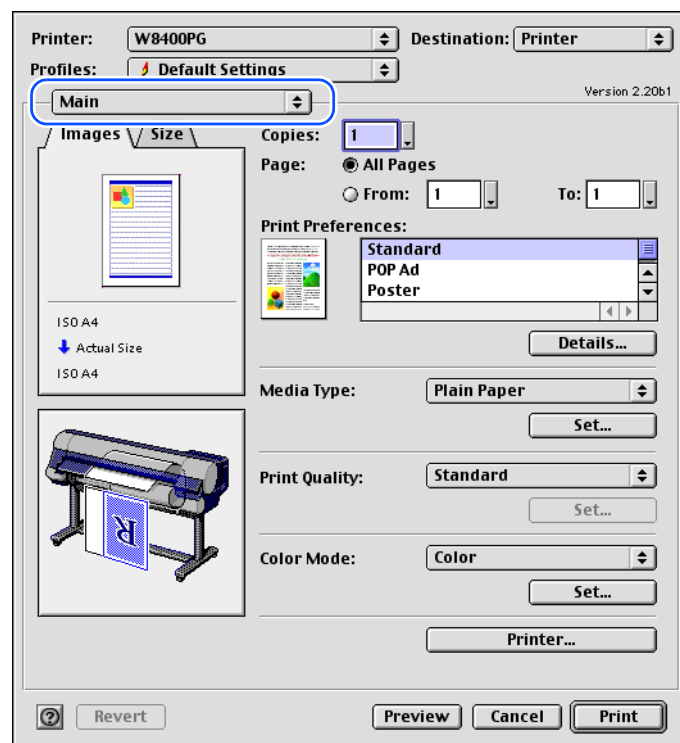
Index

■ Color Matching

When you print an image captured with a scanner or a digital camera, sometimes the appearance of the printout does not match what you see on the screen.

This is because the colors displayed on-screen and the printed colors are different. Using the **Matching** panel in the **Color Settings** dialog box, set the ICC (International Color Consortium) color profile to matching mode, enter profile, or printer profile to more closely match the colors displayed on-screen to the printer colors.

- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Confirm that the **Main** panel is displayed.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

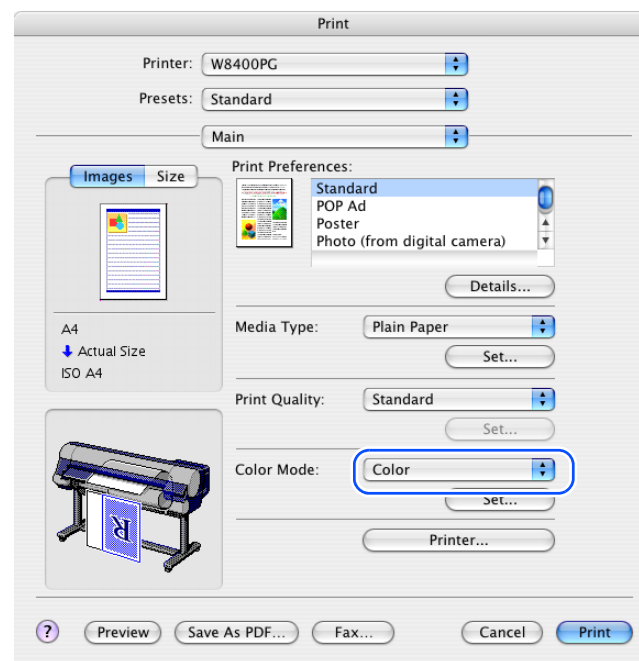
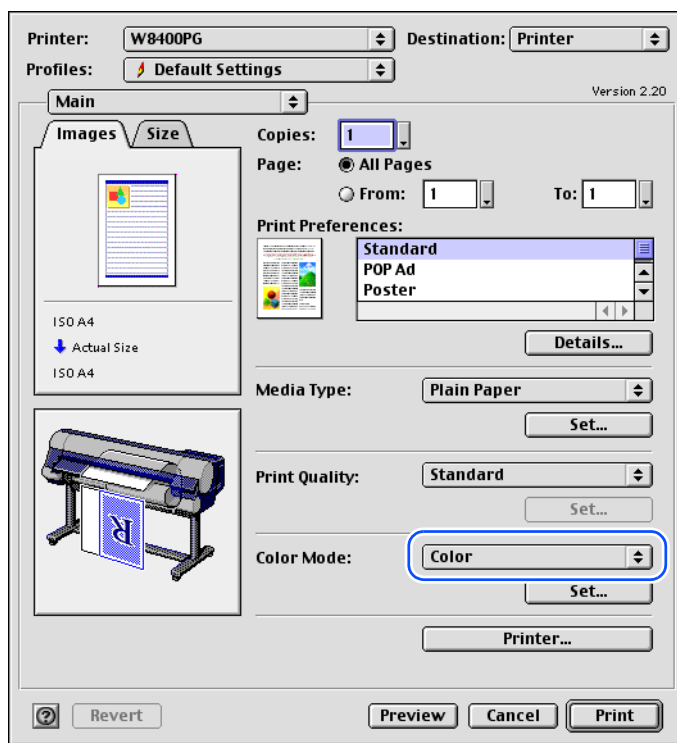
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

3 On the Main panel select **Color Mode** then **Color**.



Note

- **Color Mode** presents these following items for selection.

Color Mode	Content
Color	Prints in color.
Monochrome (Photo):	Provides stable monochrome photo printing with minimal tone change and enables detailed adjustment of gray scale gradations and color tones.
Monochrome	Prints in monochrome.
Solid Color	Printing is limited to colors only. Use to print sharply thinly-colored fine lines.
Black Only	All colors other than white are printed black.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

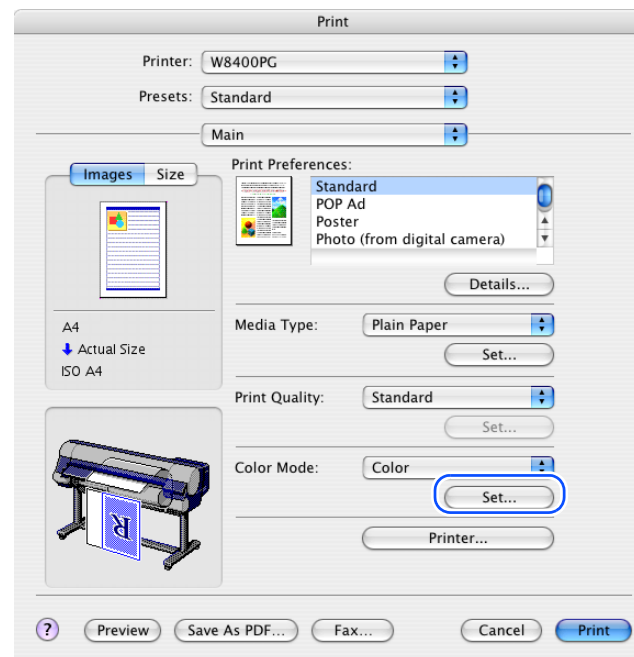
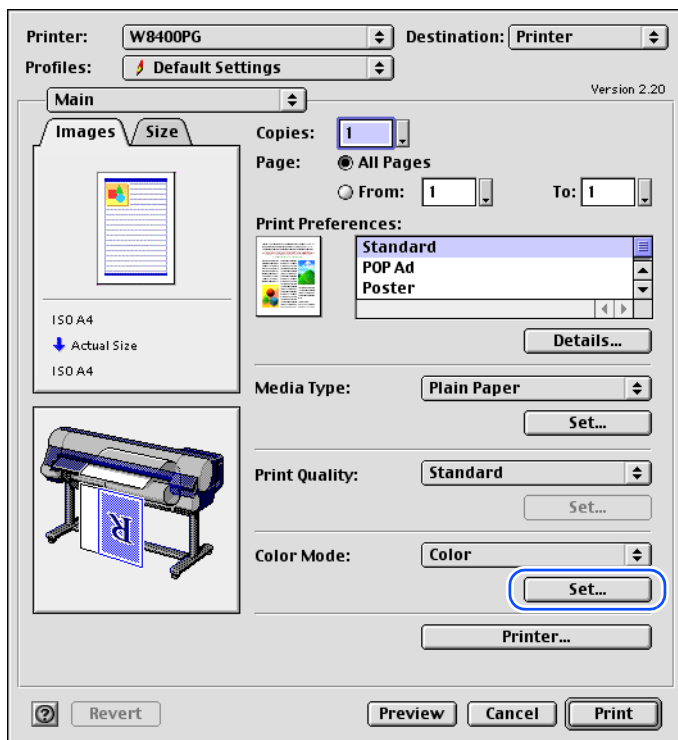
Contents

Index

Important

- Monochrome (Photo) can be selected for Color Mode only if one of the following types of paper is selected:
Glossy Photo Paper/Semi-Glossy Photo Paper/Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper/Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper/Fine Art Photo/Fine Art Heavyweight Photo/Fine Art Textured/Japanese Paper Washi

4 Press the **Set...** button.



Note

- **Manual Color Settings** are enabled when **Color**, **Monochrome (Photo)**, or **Monochrome** is selected for **Color Mode**.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

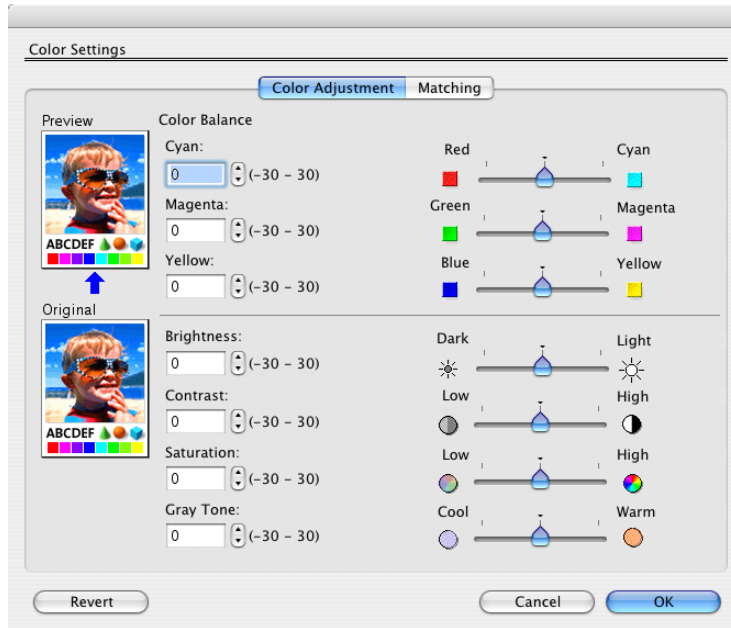
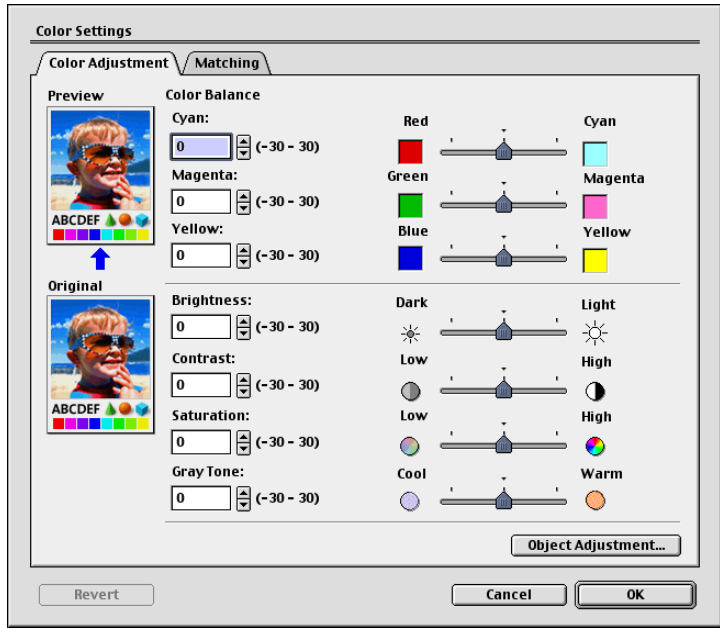
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

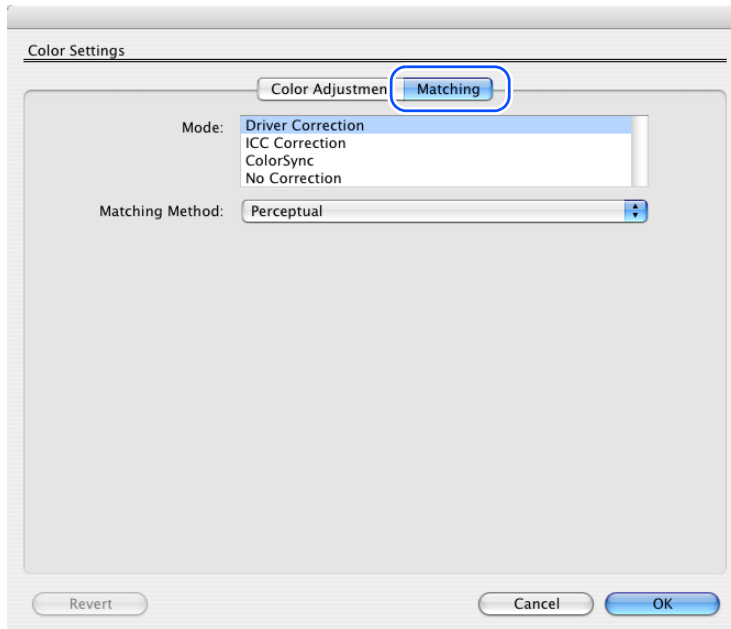
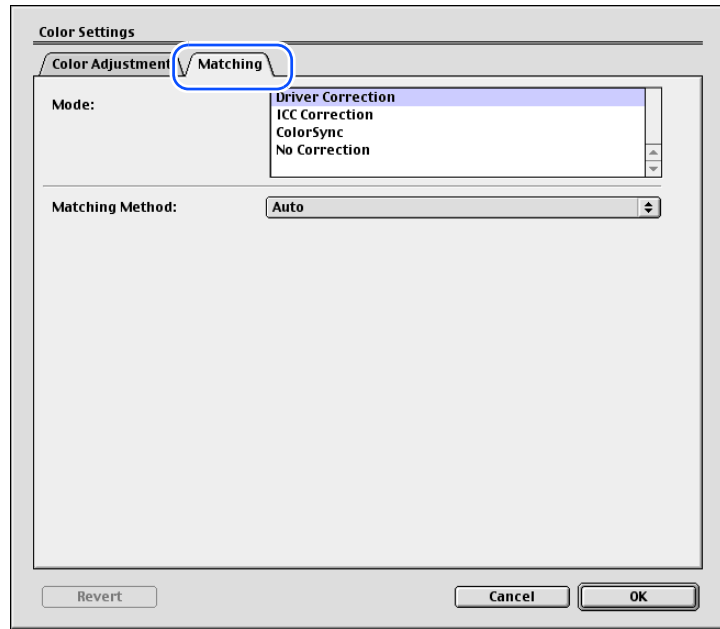
Contents

Index

5 The Color Settings dialog box opens.



6 Select the Matching panel.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

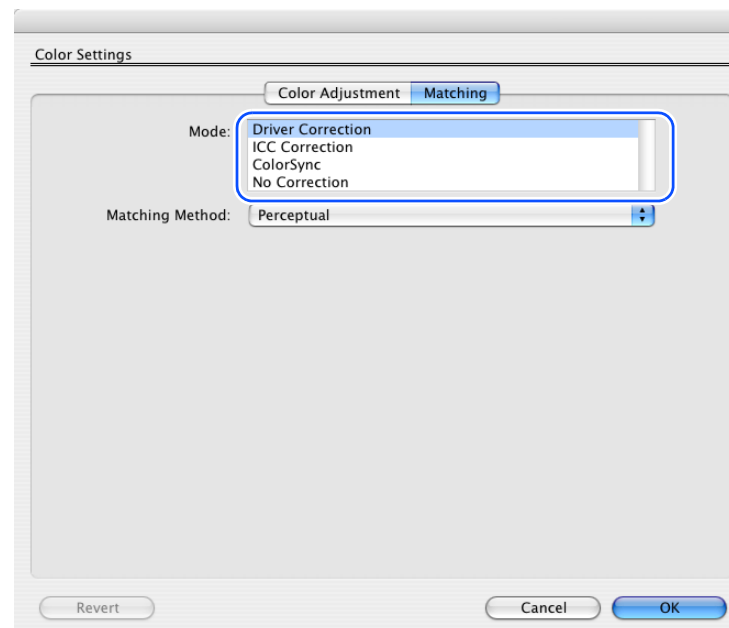
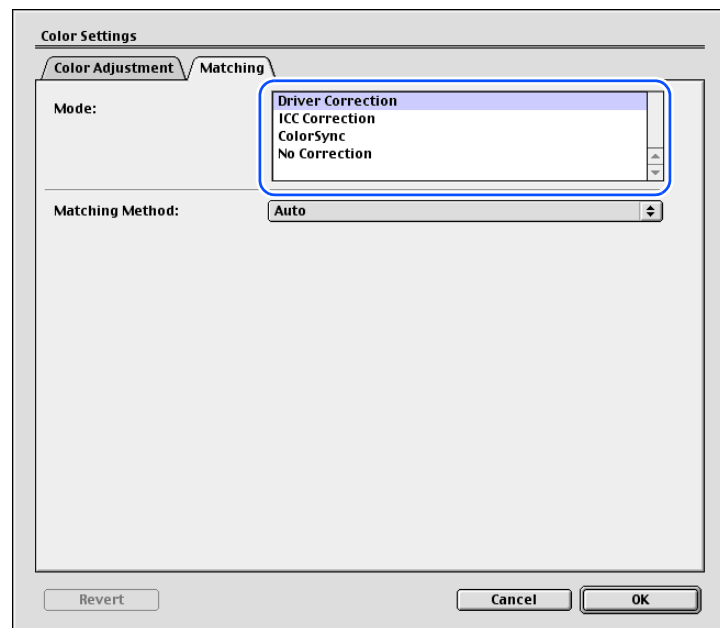
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

7 From the Matching **Mode** list, select the matching mode.



Note

- Here is a list of the available **Mode**.

Matching Mode	Content
Driver Correction	Calibrates color using the original color profile of the printer driver.
ICC Correction	Calibrates the color in the printer driver using the standards of ICC color profiles. If this mode is selected, specify the input profile and the printer profile.
ColorSync	Perform compensation using the color management system used by the Mac OS. If this mode is selected, specify the printer profile.
No Correction	Color matching was not performed. The color matching is done in the software application or performed by and independent color profile; select when you want the color matching of the printer driver is ignored.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

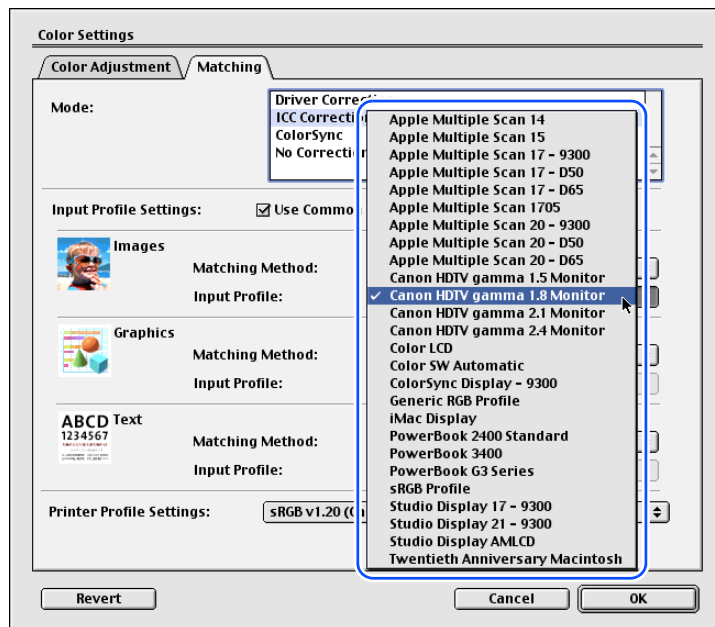
Important

- The mode you select for the **Mode** affects what items are available for selection.
- If you select the **Driver Correction**, only the **Matching Method** is available for selection.
- For OS 8/9, If **ICC Correction** is selected, **Matching Method** can be set separately for **Image**, **Graphics**, and **Text**. Further, if the **Use Common Input Profiles for All Objects** checkbox is selected, the same profile can be specified for **Image**, **Graphics**, and **Text** (This function is not supplied in OS X).

8 When **ICC Correction** is selected for the **Mode**, at Image under **Input Profile Settings** select a profile from the **Input Profile** list (This function is not supplied in OS X) .

Note

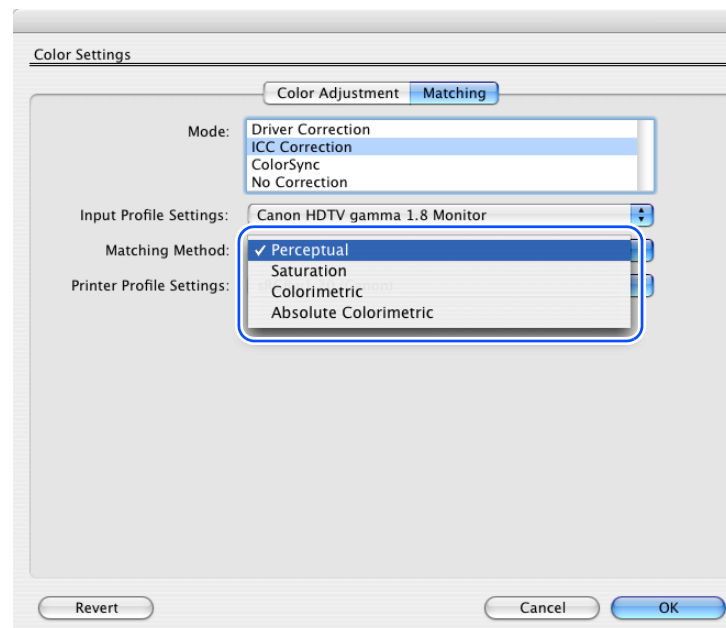
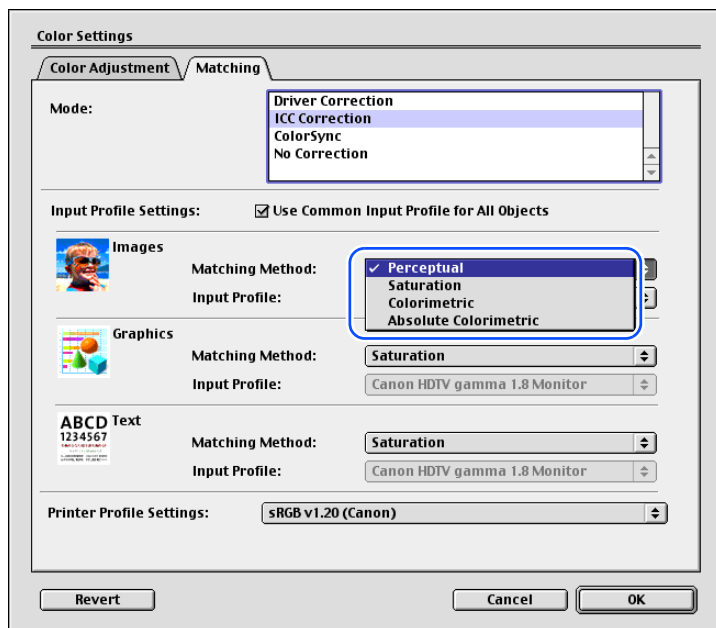
- When **Use Common Input Profile for All Objects** is selected, the same input profile is selected automatically for both **Graphics** and **Text** (this function is not available in OS X).
- If you want to do different settings for **Graphics** and **Text**, then you must cancel the selection of **Use Common Input Profile for All Objects** (this function is not available in OS X).

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

9 Click the input profile **Matching Method** list and select a matching method.



Note

- **Matching Method** presents the following items for selection.

Matching Method	Content
Auto	Makes the best matching selections for the Images , Graphics , and Text items. *Not displayed in OS X. *Selectable only when Driver Correction or ColorSync is selected for Mode .
Perceptual	Achieves the best results with priority on color hues.
Saturation	Achieves the best results with priority on color saturation.
Colorimetric	The entered data is reproduced faithfully. To compensate for white, if white data is output, no color is added.
Absolute Colorimetric	The entered data is reproduced faithfully. White compensation is not performed.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

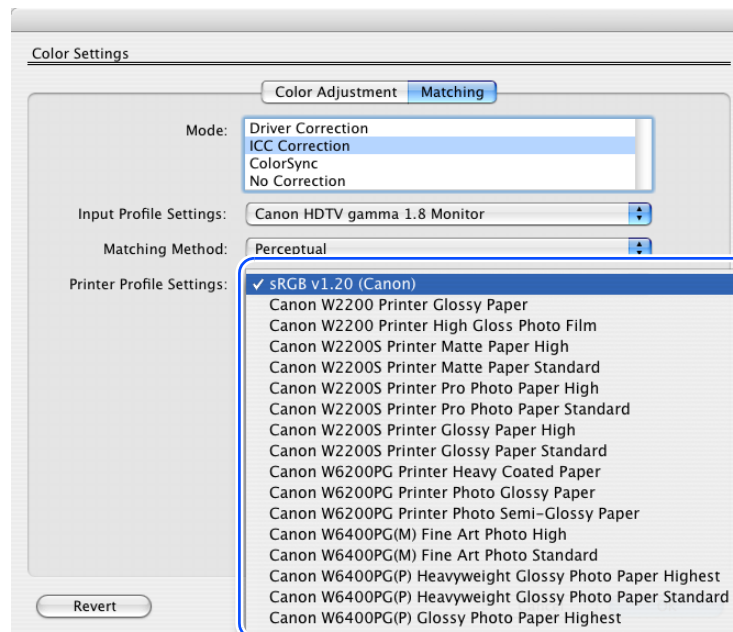
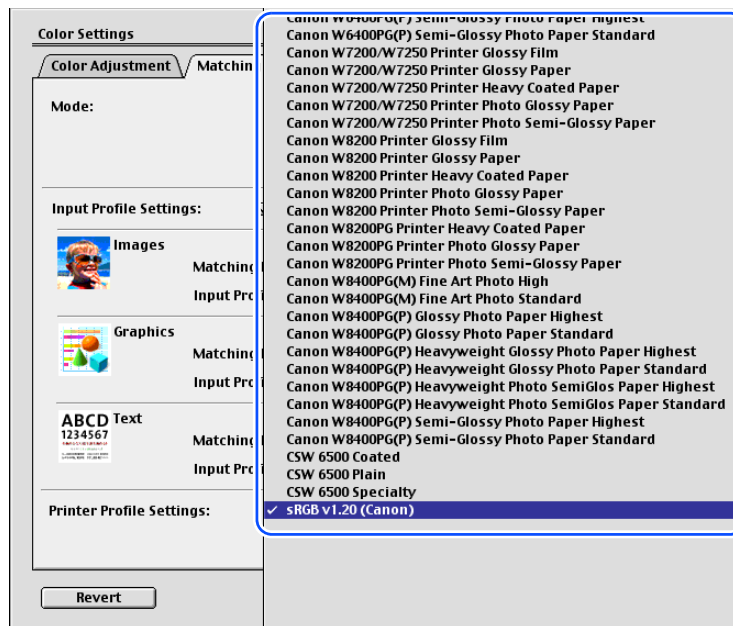
Contents

Index

10 From the **Printer Profile Settings** list, select a printer profile.

Important

- A print profile can be selected only when **ICC Correction** or **ColorSync** is selected under the **Mode**.



11 Click the **OK** button to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Custom Sizes (User Print Settings)

■ Creating Custom Sizes

Use this application to create and save unique customized paper. The customized paper sizes can be selected from the same list as standard paper sizes.

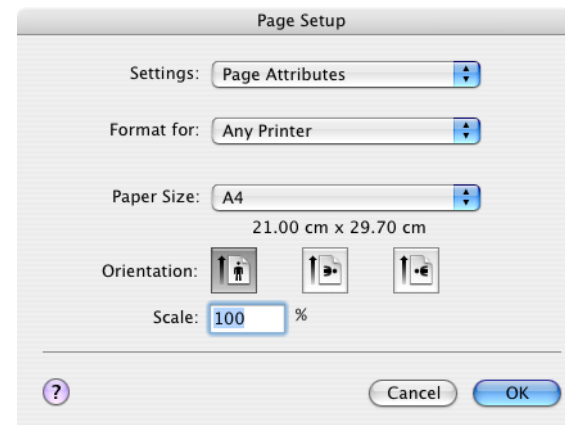
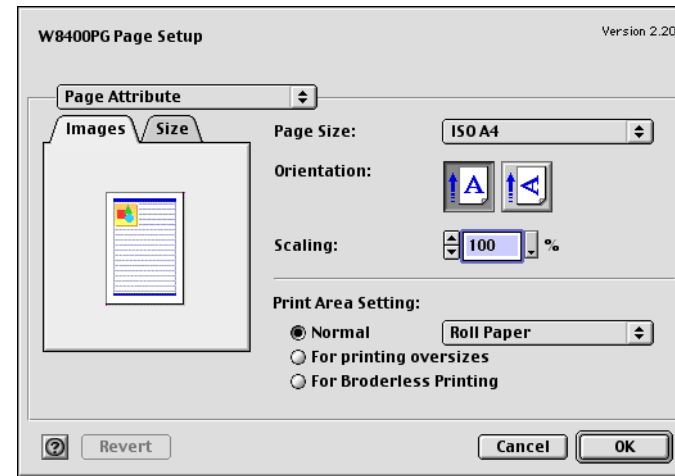
1 Select **Page Setup** from the **File** menu.



Note

- The setup method is different for some software applications.

2 The **Page Setup** dialog box opens.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

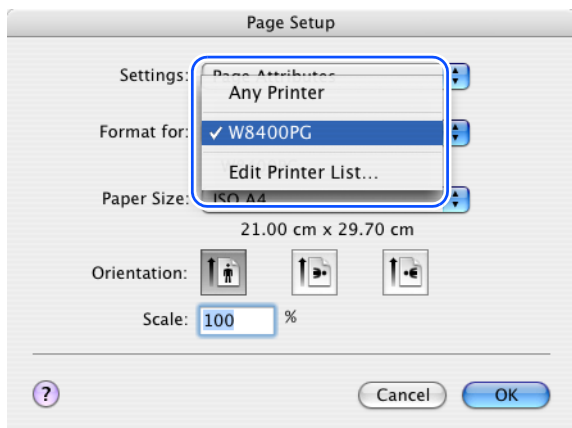
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

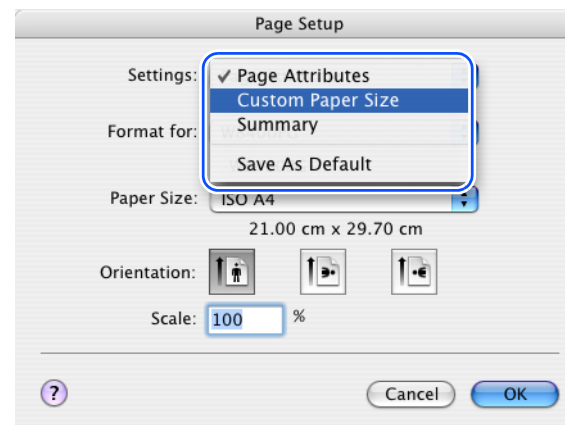
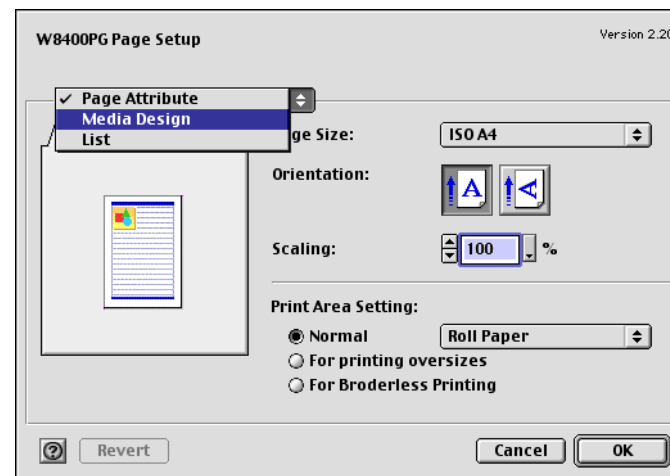
Contents

Index

3 Set the **Format for** (OS 8/9 does not have this setting).



4 Select **Custom Paper Size (Media Design for OS 8/9)**.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

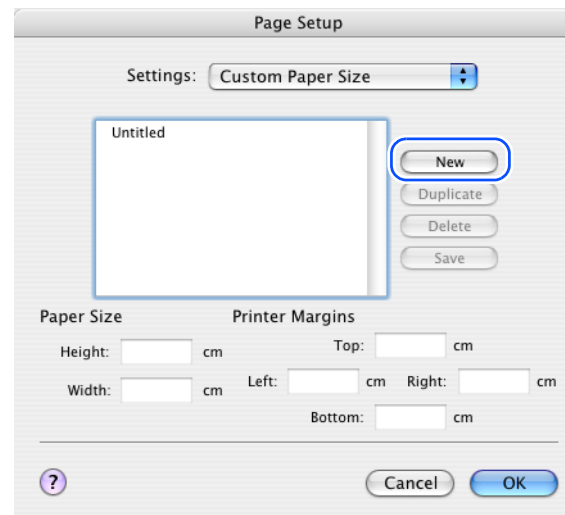
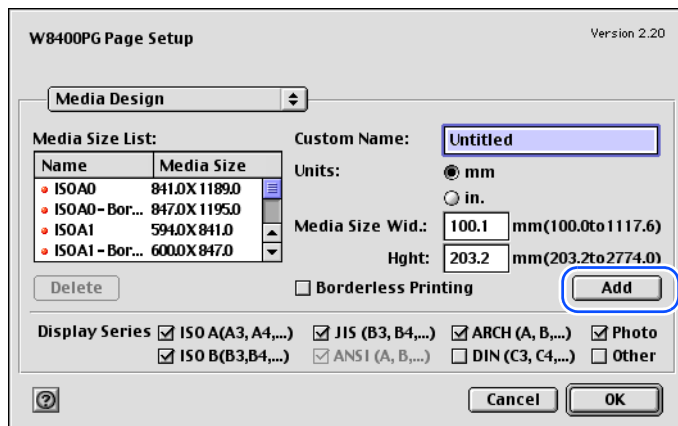
Contents

Index

5 Click the **New** button to define the user defined name, the media size and margins (for OS 8/9 click the **Add** button to define the user defined name, media size and other settings).

Note

- When you select the desired size and name from the Media Size List on the left, the **Width (Wid.** for OS 8/9) and **Height (Height** for OS 8/9) are entered automatically.
- Select the **Borderless Printing** checkbox to change the **Width** display to the list of roll media lists compatible with borderless printing. Select the customized roll width using **Width**, and enter the customized **Height** value. (This function is not provided in OS X.)



6 Click the **Save** button (this step is not required with OS 8/9).

7 Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box.

Note

- If you are using OS 8/9 you are allowed to store up to a maximum of 5 custom settings.
- The settings in the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box (**Media Design** for OS 8/9) box remain in effect even after the software application is closed.
- To delete a registered custom size, select the name of the custom size to delete, then click the **Delete** button.
- To edit a registered custom size, select the name of the custom size, then change the **Width** and **Height** settings (this editing and correction cannot be done for OS 8/9).

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Selecting a Media Display Series

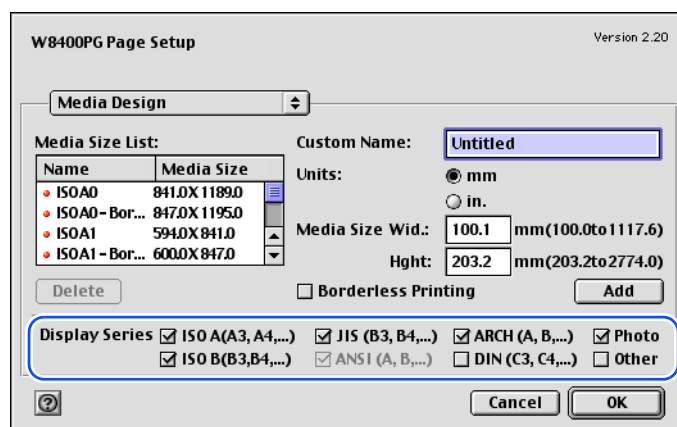
You can select a **Display Series** that will display for the **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** panel and for **Media Size** in the **Print** dialog box.



Note

- This function is not provided in OS X.

To select the size series displayed in the **Page Size** field in the **Page Setup**, or **Media Size** in the **Print** dialog box, select the **Display Series** checkbox displayed in **Display Series** in the **Media Design** dialog box. Further, to stop displaying the size system selected, deselect the **Display Series** checkbox.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

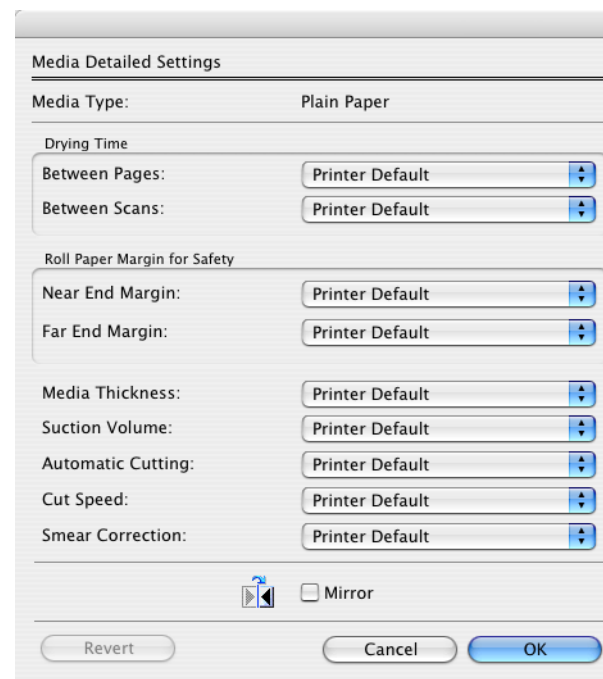
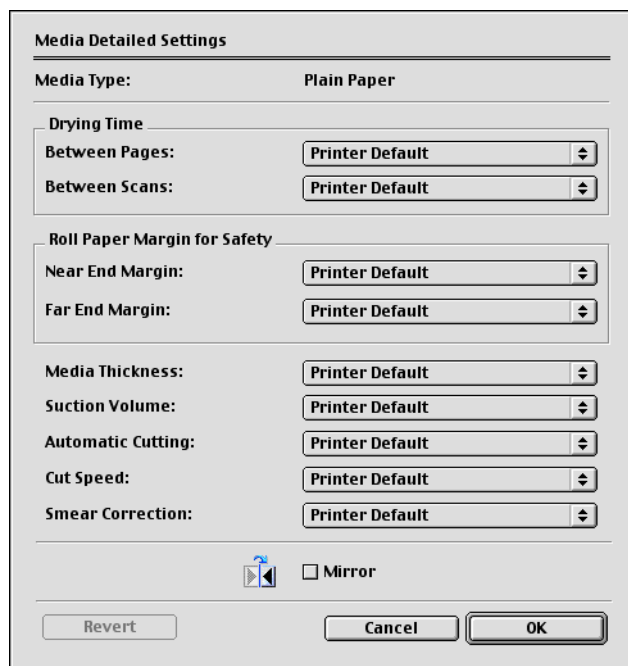
Index

When the Printout Quality Is Not Clean

■ How to Set the Media Type

Paper settings such as ink drying time, etc., can be made using the panel on the printer. Some of these settings can be changed using the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box in the printer driver. If clean printing cannot be performed, make printing adjustment using this dialog box.

For more details about the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, please refer to the online Help.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Software Provided for Macintosh

The following software applications are provided for use with Macintosh.

The function of each software application is described below.

■ Basic Software for Printing

Canon imagePROGRAF Printer Driver 2005

This software is required to print using this printer. Make sure it is installed on the PC to be used with the printer. Many functions can be used in addition to the basic print operations, such as enlargement and reduction, borderless printing, color adjustment, and multiple page printing, etc.

The printer driver is on the User Software CD-ROM enclosed with the Mac OS 8.6/9.x and the Mac OS X.

■ Displaying the Printer Status

GARO Printmonitor

This is utility software that can display the details of printer errors on a Macintosh. It will be installed together with the printer driver.

■ Using the Printer on a Network

Remote UI

This software can display the print history, delete print jobs, display the printer status, and set the printer network information. It is built into the printer ROM, and the printer IP address can be specified from the computer using a web browser, and settings made from the web browser via the network. (→ [Chapter 5 "Using the Printer in a Network Environment"](#))

If using a remote UI, the IP address must be specified to the printer in advance.

■ Printing Beautiful Digital Camera Images (for the Professional)

Canon imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop (hereinafter Print Plug-In) is software that enables printing that recreates Adobe RGB color scale with clear expression, using Photoshop. This software is recommended for professional users and high-end amateurs who seek good-quality color finish.

If Print Plug-In is installed, colors can be adjusted while checking the preview, which faithfully recreates Photoshop print results. RGB 16-bit data in Photoshop can be processed as is, so high-gradation original images can be printed without picture degradation. Settings information that has been used in the past can be saved, so if printing using the same settings, work can be performed effectively just by reading the information.

(→ [Print Plug-In for Photoshop Guide](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Printer Maintenance

Canon imagePROGRAF Media Configuration Tool

Media Configuration Tool is software to save media information if media supported by the printer (i.e., paper type) has been added. Supplies functions for users who are familiar with media and printing.

Media information such as paper name, paper thickness, head height, absorption fan strength, default margin, etc., can be downloaded to the printer, and uploaded from the printer. Also supplies functions that can update the latest media information easily.

It will be installed together with the printer driver.

(→ [Media Configuration Tool Guide](#))

Important

- If using the Remote UI with Mac OS 8.6/9.x, open **TCP/IP** on the **Control Panel** and make sure that **Ethernet** is selected for the **Connect via**.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Chapter 4 Maintenance

You can print the items that have been checked.

Replacing Ink Tanks	4-2
How to Confirm Ink Levels	4-2
When to Replace an Ink Tank	4-3
Ink Tank Handling Precautions	4-4
Replacing an Ink Tank	4-5
Cautions About Using Refilled Ink Tanks for This Printer	4-8
Switching Off Ink Level Detection	4-8
Executing a Print Job	4-9
Cleaning the Printer	4-10
Cleaning the Exterior Covers	4-10
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover	4-11
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge	4-14
Checking Spacing Remaining in the Maintenance Cartridge	4-14
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge	4-15
Maintenance Cartridge Handling Precautions	4-16
Maintenance Cartridge Replacement Procedure	4-16
Replacing the Printhead	4-21
Printhead Handling Precautions	4-21
How to Replace the Printhead	4-22
Replacing the Cutter Blade	4-27
Replacing Standard Cutter Blades (Flat Cutters)	4-27
Replacing Optional Cutter Blades (Round Cutters)	4-30
Moving the Printer	4-33
Confirming the Print Condition	4-37
Cleaning the Printhead	4-39
Types of Printhead Cleaning	4-39
Printhead Cleaning Procedure	4-39
Aligning the Printhead	4-41
Aligning Printhead Procedure	4-41
Adjusting the Amount of Media Feed	4-43
Media Feed Adjustment Procedure	4-43
Adjusting Media Feed Manually	4-44
Reducing the Amount of Cutting Dust	4-46
Changing the Black Ink Type	4-48

→ Before clicking the **Start Print** button

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Replacing Ink Tanks

When the supply of ink in an ink tank runs low, a message appears on the operation panel display or on the printer driver screen to tell you that it is time to replace the ink tank. You can separately replace any of the seven ink tanks as they run out of ink: Yellow (Y), Magenta (M), Photo Magenta (PM), Cyan (C), Photo Cyan (PC), Photo Black (BK), and Matte Black (MBK).

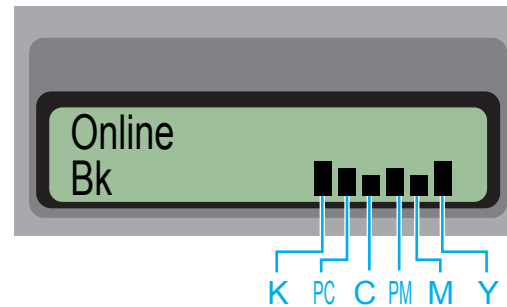


- Yellow Ink BCI-1441Y
- Magenta Ink BCI-1421M
- Photo Magenta Ink BCI-1421PM
- Cyan Ink BCI-1421C
- Photo Cyan Ink BCI-1421PC
- Photo Black Ink BCI-1421BK
- Matte Black Ink BCI-1441MBK

How to Confirm Ink Levels

You can confirm the ink level at any time by checking the printer operation panel display. You should always check the ink levels in the ink tanks and replace any ink tank that is low before starting a long print job or any other job that will consume a large amount of ink.

■ Online Status Display



The ink levels are displayed in the bottom line of the display from left to right in the following order: Black (K), Photo Cyan (PC), Cyan (C), Photo Magenta (PM), Magenta (M), Yellow (Y).

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

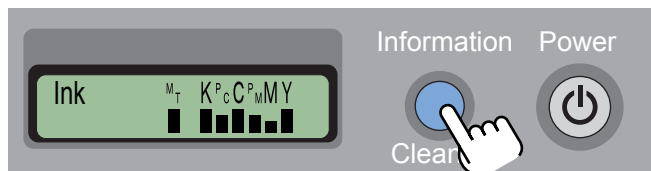
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

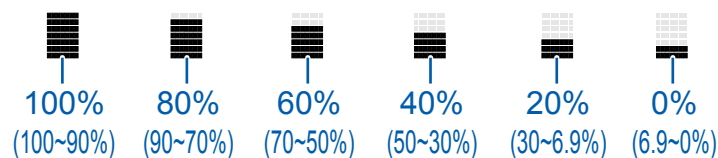
■ Information Button Display



You can check the ink level at any time (during a print job or while an error is displayed) by pressing the **Information** button. The ink levels are displayed from left to right in the following order: Black (K), Photo Cyan (PC), Cyan (C), Photo Magenta (PM), Magenta (M), Yellow (Y).

■ How to Read the Ink Level Display

The height of a small graphic ■ indicates the ink level in each tank.



When to Replace an Ink Tank

You should take the following points into consideration when installing new ink tanks.

Important

- During printing, the right back cover is locked and the ink tanks cannot be replaced.
- If you pause the printer during printing to replace an ink tank, image misalignment may occur.
- Never open the right back cover or operate the release lever while the **Initializing** message is displayed. This could damage the printer.

■ When the Check Ink Level is Displayed

The **Check Ink Level** is displayed on the printer display when the ink level in a tank becomes low. Although the printer continues to print, this message is displayed to inform you that an ink tank is about to run out of ink. Check the amount of ink remaining in the tanks in the Status Monitor (Windows), Printmonitor (Macintosh) or on the printer operation panel, and make sure that you have replacement ink tanks for the colors that are running low.

Note

- When the level of ink in a tank runs low, the printer may not have sufficient ink to complete Cleaning B or other maintenance operations that consume a large amount of ink. If this happens, replace the ink tank before cleaning the printhead.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ When the **Rep. Ink Tank** (Replace Ink Tank) Message Is Displayed

When the ink in a tank runs out, the **Rep. Ink Tank** message is displayed and the printer stops printing. Replace the ink tank as soon as this message appears. When you open the right back cover, you will see the amount of ink remaining for each color along with its notation (Y= Yellow, M= Magenta, PM= Photo Magenta, C=Cyan, PC= Photo Cyan, Bk= Black). A flashing color display means the ink tank of that color should be replaced.



Note

- If ink has run out in more than one ink tank at the same time, a message is displayed for each color that is out of ink. Replace the ink tanks for all of the colors displayed to resume printing.

Ink Tank Handling Precautions

Follow the precautions below when handling ink tanks.

Caution

- Always store ink tanks in a safe location where they are out of the reach of small children. If a child licks or ingests ink accidentally, seek medical assistance immediately.

Important

- Before installing an ink tank, slowly rotate it from side to side 7 or 8 times before breaking the seal. If you do not shake the ink tank, the ink may sediment, causing reduced printing quality.
- After breaking the seal on an ink tank, avoid dropping or shaking it. Spilled ink can stain the surrounding area.
- The ink supply ports of empty ink tanks may be covered with ink. Always handle ink tanks carefully. The ink could spill on your clothing and make stains that cannot be removed.
- It is recommended that ink tanks be fully used within six months after opening the seal. Using an ink tank for longer than this could cause the quality of printing to deteriorate.
- Never leave the printer for long periods of time (one month or more) with an ink tank removed. The ink remaining in the printer may clog up the printer and lead to poor print quality.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Replacing an Ink Tank

Follow the procedure below to replace an ink tank. You can follow this same procedure to replace any ink tank.

⚠ Caution

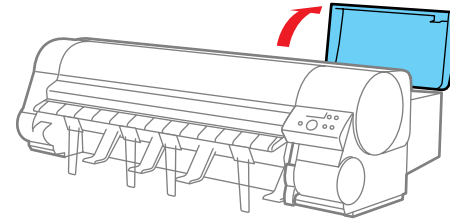
- Always confirm that the replacement black ink tank is the same type as the tank that is installed in the printer. If you mistakenly exchange a Photo Black ink tank and a Matte Black ink tank, this could damage the printer. To change the type of black ink tank, you must execute **ChangeBkInkType** on the operation panel before you replace the ink tank. (→ P.4-48)

- Look at the printer display and make sure that the printer is not operating.

You can replace an ink tank while the display shows any of the following: **Online**, **Offline**, **Check Ink Level**, or **Rep. Ink Tank**.



- Open the back right back cover.



The ink level is shown in the display; a flashing color means that the ink tank of that color must be replaced.



👉 Important

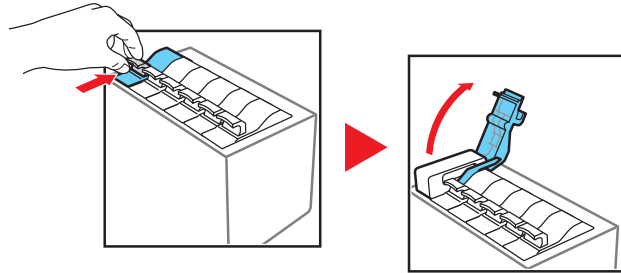
- The right back cover cannot be opened while the printer is initializing immediately after the printer is turned ON, during printhead cleaning, or during a print job. Please wait until processing is completed.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

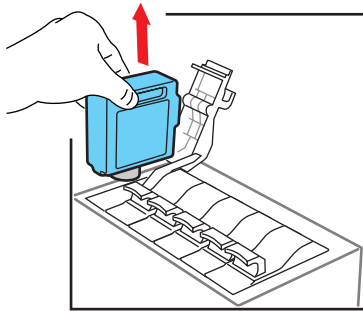
Contents

Index

- 3** Press the ink tank lever of the color to replace, then open the ink tank cover.

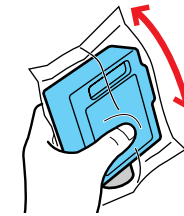


- 4** Hold the empty ink tank by the grips on the left and right side of the ink tank, then remove it.



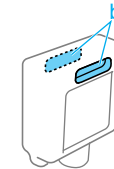
Place the ink tank that you removed in a plastic bag and seal it.

- 5** Gently shake the new ink tank 7 or 8 times while it is still in the package, then remove it from the package.

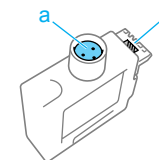


Important

- Always confirm that the replacement black ink tank is the same type as the tank that is installed in the printer. If you mix up the photo black ink tank and matte black ink tank, print quality will be reduced. To change the type of ink tank, execute **ChangeBkInkType** on the printer operation panel before replacing the ink tank. (→ P.4-48)
- Always hold an ink tank by its left and right grips (b) while you are handling it.

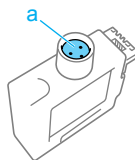


- Never touch the ink supply port (a) or the electrical contacts (c). This could damage the ink tank, cause poor print quality, or stain the work area.



Important

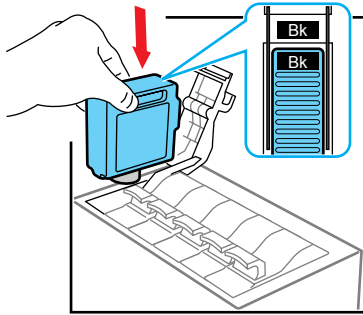
- If there is ink remaining in the removed ink tank, store the ink tank with the ink supply port (a) pointing up. If you store the tank with the ink supply port (a) facing down, ink may leak out.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

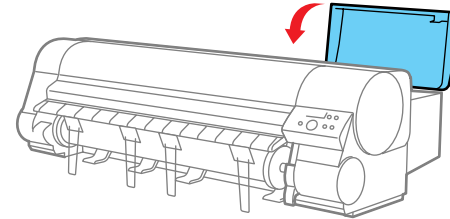
Contents

Index

- 6** Insert the ink tank into the holder with the ink supply port facing down and the color label facing the rear.



- 9** When the ink tank has been replaced, press the center of the right back cover until it locks into place, and then close the right back cover.

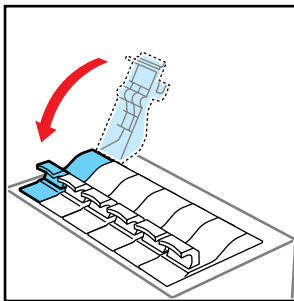


The printer returns to **Online** or **Offline** mode. Printing restarts if the **Rep. Ink Tank** message was displayed in the middle of a print job.

Important

- The ink tanks are shaped so that the cover will not close if you install the wrong color ink tank. If the ink tank cover does not close, confirm that the color label on the holder matches the color of the ink tank.

- 7** Close the ink tank cover until you hear it click.



- 8** To replace another ink tank color, repeat [Step 3](#) to [7](#).

Important

- If an ink tank has not been installed, **EXXX** (error code) will be displayed on the top line of the display, and **No X Ink Tank** will be displayed on the bottom line. Go to [Step 2](#) to correct this problem and make sure that all the color ink tanks are installed.
- If the right back cover cannot be completely closed, one of the ink tank covers may not be completely closed. Check that all the ink tank covers were completely closed during [Step 7](#).

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Cautions About Using Refilled Ink Tanks for This Printer

The ink tanks designed for this printer have an ink level detection function to prevent damage to the printhead when the ink runs out during printing.

If you use a refilled ink tank, the ink level detection function will no longer function correctly. The printer will detect ink out and print operation will halt. Before you can use tanks like this, you must switch off the ink level detection function.

If you print with the ink level detection switched off, the printer (especially the printhead) may be damaged or other problems may arise. Canon, Inc. will assume no responsibility for damages caused by using ink tanks not designed for use with the printer.

Caution

- Once the ink level detection function has been switched off, the ink level detection function cannot be restored for the ink tanks in the printer. To restore the ink level display, the ink tanks must be replaced with new ink tanks designed for use with the printer.
- If the same ink tank is repeatedly removed and reinserted, this could damage the connection points between the ink tank and the printer, leading to ink leakage which could damage the printer.

Switching Off Ink Level Detection

- 1** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
- 2** Press the [◀] or [▶] button to select **System Setup** then press [▼].
- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Stop Ink Check**, then press [▼].
- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Bk Ink Tank**, then press the **OK** button.

Note

- Press the **Online** button to cancel these procedures.

- 5** When **Stop Function?** appears press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.

An equals sign (=) appears as a prefix to the setting and the remaining ink detection function of the selected ink tank is switched off.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Executing a Print Job

After the ink level detection function is switched off, the **Ink level?** message appears on the printer operation panel display and the printer goes offline every time you execute a print job from the computer. To continue with the print job, press the **Online** button on the printer operation panel.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Cleaning the Printer

Clean the printer periodically to maintain high print quality and to avoid problems.

Always follow the safety guidelines below when cleaning the printer.

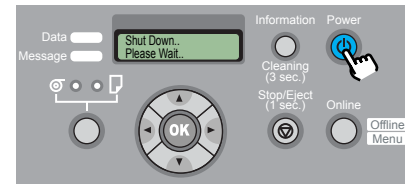
Caution

- When you clean the printer, always turn the printer off and unplug the power cord from the power supply. If the printer is accidentally switched on while you are cleaning it, moving parts inside the printer may come into contact with you and cause personal injuries.
- Never use flammable liquids such as thinners, benzene, alcohol, etc. to clean the printer. If these liquids come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, this could cause a fire or electrical shock.
- When cleaning the printer, never touch the power supply cable with wet hands. Doing so may cause electric shock.

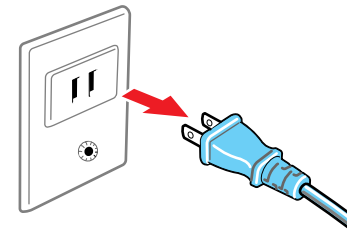
Cleaning the Exterior Covers

During normal use the printer surfaces require cleaning at least once a month.

- 1** Press and hold down the **Power** button until you see **Shut Down..** in the printer operation panel display then release the button.



- 2** Disconnect the power cord from the outlet. The shape of the power cable varies from country to country.



Caution

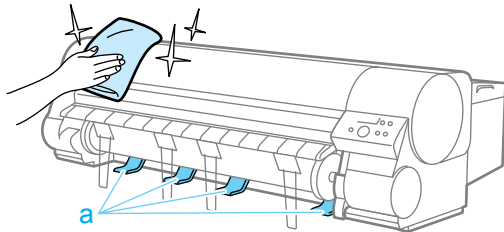
- Check that the printer power supply has been turned OFF, and then disconnect the power supply cable. Failure to do so may cause personal injury.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

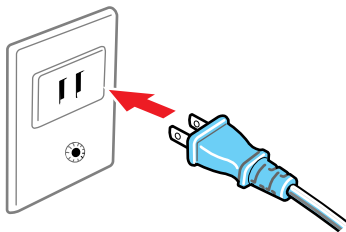
Contents

Index

- 3** Dampen a clean cloth, wring it out completely, and then use it to clean the printer exterior surfaces, paper feed slot (a), and power cord plug. After cleaning, make sure that everything is free of dirt and paper dust, then use a clean, dry cloth to wipe dry the cleaned surfaces.



- 4** Insert the power plug into the outlet. The shape of the power cable varies from country to country.



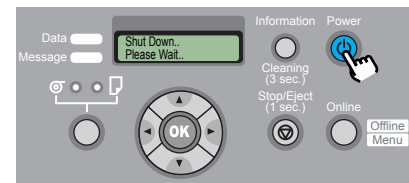
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover

To get the best results out of your printer, clean the printer when the printed surface or the back of the paper becomes dirty, or when you replace the roll media, or approximately once a month.

Important

- After printing onto paper with lots of paper dust, borderless printing, or printing onto small-size paper, the printed surface or the back of the paper may become dirty, and you will need to thoroughly clean the platen.

- 1** Press and hold down the **Power** button until you see **Shut Down..** in the printer operation panel display then release the button. Turn OFF the printer.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

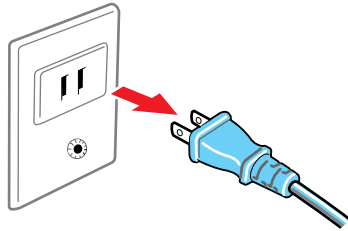
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

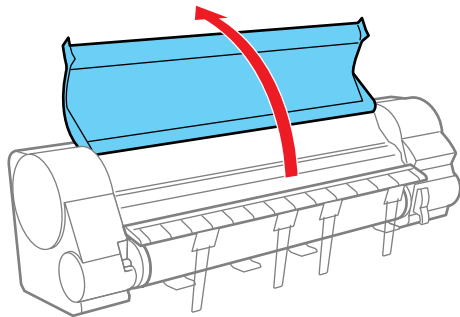
Contents

Index

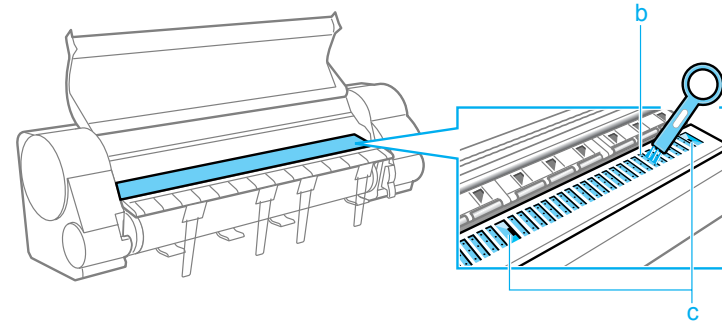
- 2** Disconnect the power cord from the outlet. The shape of the power cable varies from country to country.



- 3** Open the top cover.



- 4** If paper dust has collected in the suction ports on the platen (b) or the borderless printing ink groove (c), use the provided cleaning brush to remove the dust and dirt from the ports and groove.

**Note**

- If the cleaner brush is dirty, wash it in water.

 **Important**

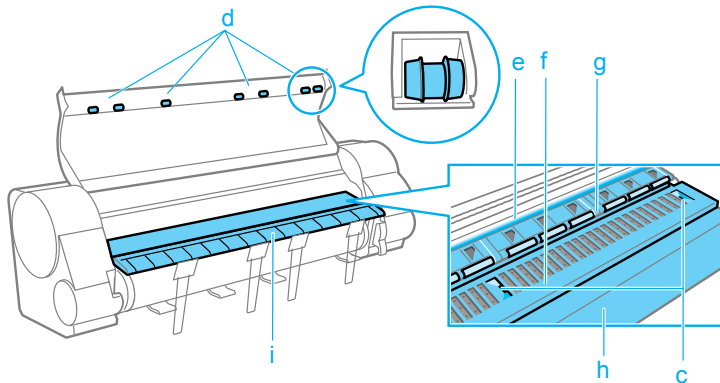
- Do not touch any areas other than as directed. Doing so may stain your hands or cause the printer to malfunction.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

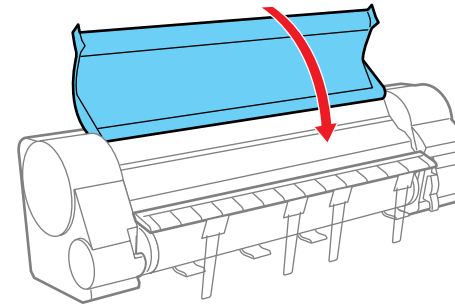
Contents

Index

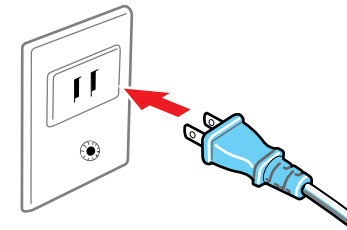
- 5** Use a damp cloth (well wrung out) to clean the top cover handle, top cover roller (d), carriage shaft (e), entire platen area (f), paperweight (g), borderless printing ink grooves (c), standard cutter unit (h), and ejection guide (i).



- 6** Close the top cover.



- 7** Insert the power plug into the outlet. The shape of the power cable varies from country to country.



 **Important**

- Never wipe the areas inside the top cover with a dry cloth. This could create static electricity that attracts dust and dirt and that can lower print quality.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

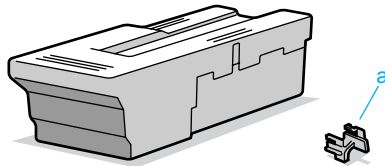
Index

Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

The maintenance cartridge vacuums excess ink that accumulates as a result of borderless printing, printhead cleaning, etc. When you see the message prompt that tells you to replace the maintenance cartridge, replace the cartridge.

● Maintenance Cartridge MC-04

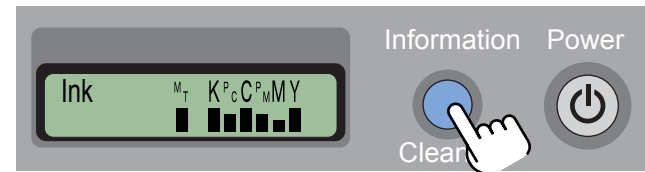
Shaft cleaner (a) is enclosed in the box of maintenance cartridge.



Checking Spacing Remaining in the Maintenance Cartridge

You can confirm the amount of space remaining in the maintenance cartridge at any time by checking the printer operation panel display. Check the amount of space remaining in the maintenance cartridge before running Heading Cleaning B, moving the printer, or performing an operation that uses a large amount of ink. Replace the maintenance cartridge as soon as possible if the remaining space is low.

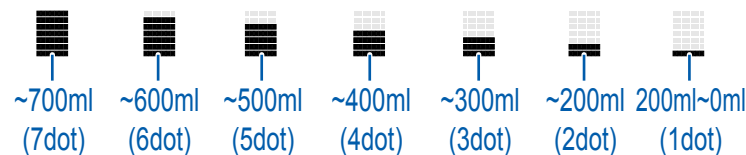
■ Displaying Using the **Information** Button



You can check the amount of space remaining in the maintenance cartridge during a print job or when an error is displayed by pressing the **Information** button. The amount of space remaining in the maintenance cartridge is displayed at the right end of the display.

■ Reading the Maintenance Cartridge Display

The height of the bar represents the amount of space remaining, which indicates how much more ink the maintenance cartridge can hold.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

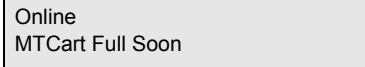
Index

When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

When the maintenance cartridge becomes full of ink, a message is displayed in the printer driver and on the printer display to notify you that the maintenance cartridge needs to be replaced.

■ When You See the **MTCart Full Soon** Message

The **MTCart Full Soon** message is displayed when the maintenance cartridge is nearly full. Although the printer continues to operate normally, this message indicates that the maintenance cartridge will soon be full. Obtain a new maintenance cartridge.



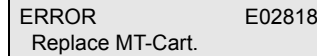
Online
MTCart Full Soon

Note

- You cannot access the menus for changing ink or moving the printer while this message is displayed. First replace the maintenance cartridge.

■ When You See the **Replace MT-Cart.** Message

When the maintenance cartridge becomes full, the **Replace MT-Cart.** message is displayed, and if printing is in progress, the current print job is paused. If this message is displayed, press the **Information** button to continue printing. Replace the maintenance cartridge as soon as printing is finished.



ERROR E02818
Replace MT-Cart.

Note

- You cannot access the menus for changing ink, replacing the printhead or moving the printer while this message is displayed. First replace the maintenance cartridge.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Maintenance Cartridge Handling Precautions

Follow the guidelines below when you handle the maintenance cartridge.

Important

- Do not remove the maintenance cartridge until you are ready to replace it.
- To avoid ink spills from a maintenance cartridge that is full of ink, never drop it and always lay it flat (never at an angle). Spilled ink can stain the surrounding area.
- Ink adheres to the top of the maintenance cartridge once it has been used. Handle the maintenance cartridge carefully. Ink may spill on your clothing and make stains that cannot be removed.
- Once a maintenance cartridge has been installed in one printer, it cannot be installed in another printer.

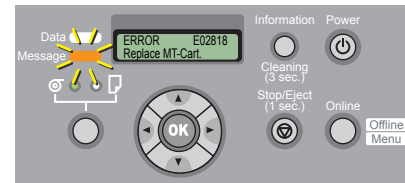
Maintenance Cartridge Replacement Procedure

When you replace the maintenance cartridge, also replace the shaft cleaner which is included with the maintenance cartridge. Use the following procedure.

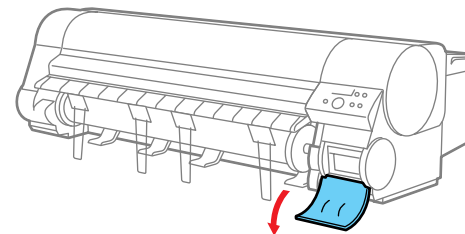
- Replacing the maintenance cartridge (→ [P.4-16](#))
- Replacing the shaft cleaner (→ [P.4-19](#))

■ Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

- 1** Look at the printer display and make sure that the printer is not operating.



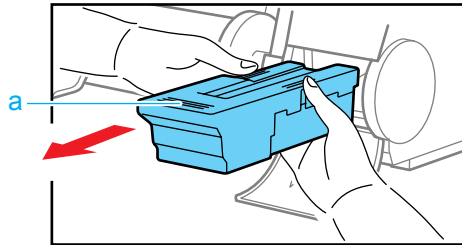
- 2** Open the maintenance cartridge cover.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

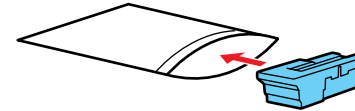
Contents

Index

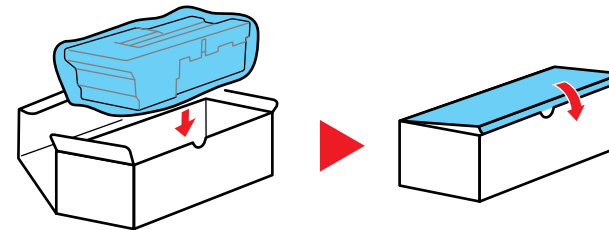
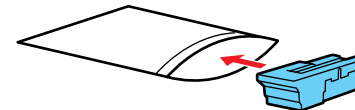
- 3** Holds the grips (a) of the used maintenance cartridge with one hand and pull out the cartridge, then grasp the base of the maintenance cartridge firmly with your other hand and remove the maintenance cartridge while keeping it level.



- 4** While holding the used maintenance cartridge level, slip it into the plastic bag included with the new cartridge, press down on the bag to expel excess air, then close the zipper completely.



- 5** Check that the maintenance cartridge you placed in the plastic bag is the right way up, then place it in the packing box and store it flat in a safe location.



⚠ Caution

- Always store used maintenance cartridges in a safe location out of the reach of children. If a child licks or ingests ink accidentally, seek medical assistance immediately.

🖐 Important

- Used maintenance cartridges are heavy. Make sure to grasp the base of the cartridge firmly and keep the maintenance cartridge horizontal during removal and storage. If you drop a maintenance cartridge or lay it down at an angle, this could cause ink to leak and stain the surrounding area.
- The amount of free space in the maintenance cartridge is stored within the printer, and so you cannot install a used maintenance cartridge in another printer.

🖐 Important

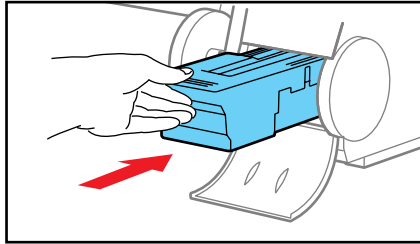
- Be sure to store the removed maintenance cartridge in the packing box and store it on a flat surface. Ink leaks will stain the surrounding area.
- Before you place the plastic bag into the packing box, make sure that the zipper is closed completely.
- Dispose of the used maintenance cartridge according to local laws.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

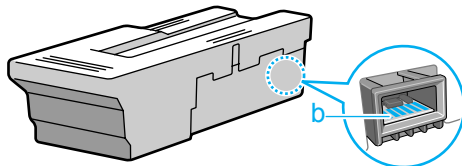
Index

- 6** Place the new maintenance cartridge into the maintenance cartridge cover and make sure that it is inserted completely.

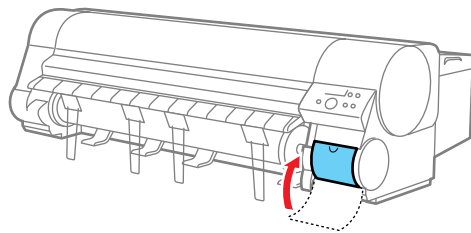


Important

- Never touch the electrical contacts (b). Touching the electrical contacts on the back of the maintenance cartridge may damage the cartridge.



- 7** Close the maintenance cartridge cover.



- 8** Press the **Information** button.



The initialization of the new maintenance cartridge finishes after about 5 seconds, and then the printer enters the **Online** mode.

Important

- Do not attempt to remove the maintenance cartridge within 5 seconds after the printer enters online mode. Touching the electrical contacts on the back of the maintenance cartridge may damage the cartridge.

Note

- The maintenance cartridge can also be replaced when the printer is switched off. In this case, do not attempt to remove the maintenance cartridge for at least 5 seconds after you switch the printer on again.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

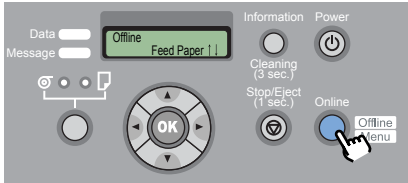
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

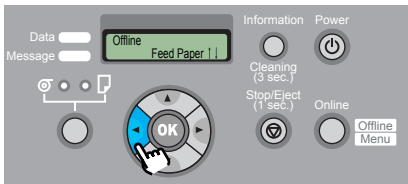
Index

■ Replacing the Shaft Cleaner

- 1 Press the **Online** button to display **Offline**.

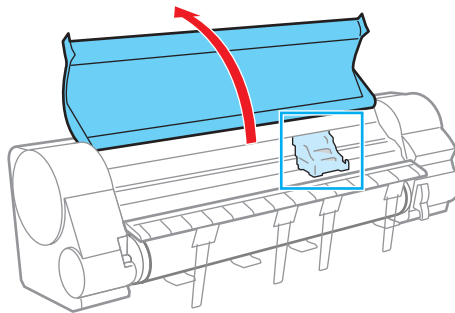


- 2 Hold down the [◀] button for more than 1 second.



The carriage moves to the center and the **Open UpperCover** message appears on the printer display.

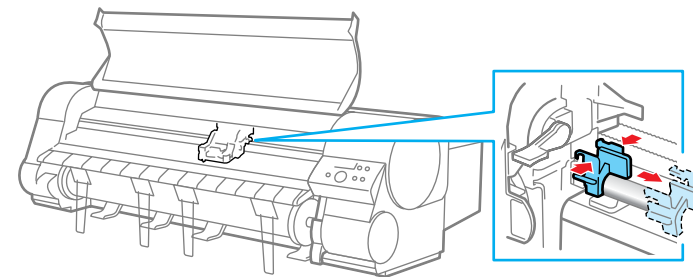
- 3 Open the top cover.



Important

- Do not touch any areas other than as directed. Doing so may stain your hands or cause the printer to malfunction.

- 4 Push the front and back levers on the top-right of the shaft cleaner together while you pull the shaft cleaner out to the right.

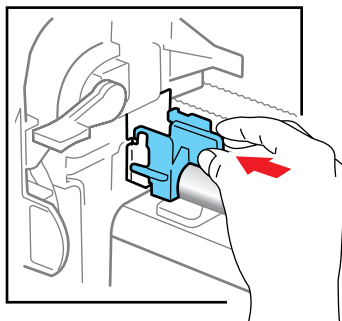
Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

5 Install the new shaft cleaner into the carriage by holding the tab on the new shaft cleaner.

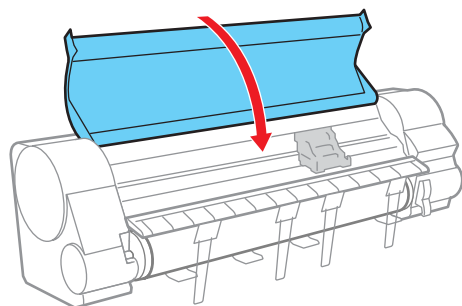
Push in the shaft cleaner until you hear it click.



 Note

- Mount the cap that has just been removed from the new shaft cleaner to the used shaft cleaner, place the used shaft cleaner in a small container, and pack with the used maintenance cartridge for disposal.

6 Close the top cover.



The carriage returns to the home position and the printer enters **Online** mode.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

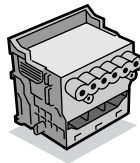
Contents

Index

Replacing the Printhead

Replace the printhead if running Head Cleaning B twice does not restore acceptable print quality, or if a customer service center instructs you to replace the printhead. You can easily stain your hands during printhead replacement, so wear the plastic gloves provided in the box with the new printhead.

● Printhead BC-1350



Note

- If the ink level is low, procure a new ink tank for replacement as soon as possible.

Printhead Handling Precautions

Always follow these precautions when handling the printhead.



Caution

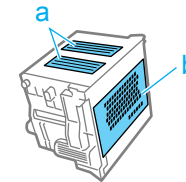
- Always store the printhead in a safe location where it is out of the reach of small children. If a child licks or ingests ink accidentally, seek medical assistance immediately.

- Never touch the printhead immediately after printing has stopped. The printhead becomes extremely hot during printing and can cause minor burns.



Important

- Try to avoid dropping or shaking the printhead. Spilled ink can stain the surrounding area.
- The ink supply port of a removed printhead may be covered with ink. Always handle the printhead carefully. The ink could spill on your clothing and make stains that cannot be removed.
- Never break the seal on the printhead package until immediately before you install the printhead. Always handle the printhead carefully after breaking the seal. If the printhead is stored after the seal has been broken, the nozzles may dry out and lead to poor print quality.
- If you need to store a printhead temporarily, place it with the nozzles (a) and electrical contacts (b) facing down. Damage to the nozzles or electrical contacts can lead to poor print quality.



- Never attempt to disassemble or alter a printhead. Doing so may damage the printer.
- Never touch the nozzles or the electrical contacts on the printhead. Doing so may cause printing problems.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

How to Replace the Printhead

To replace the printhead, execute **Replace P.head** on the **Maintenance** menu then follow the directions given by the messages on the printer display. Load a roll or cut sheets of A3 size or larger paper into the printer for the printhead adjustment that runs after the printhead is replaced.

- ▼ Remove printed media and cut sheets from the printer.
- ▼ Execute **Replace P.head**
- ▼ Clean the intake ducts inside the top cover
- ▼ Remove the printhead, and install the new printhead

Important

- Always follow the prescribed procedure to replace the printhead. If you do not adhere to the replacement procedure, the printhead may leak ink that will stain the printer and the surrounding area.

- 1** If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

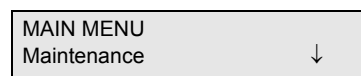


After a few moments, **Online** appears in the display.

- 2** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

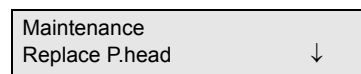


- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Maintenance**, then press [▼].

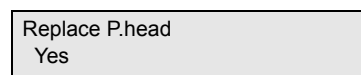


The maintenance functions are displayed.

- 4** Select **Replace P.head** then press [▼].



- 5** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.



The message **Please Wait..** is displayed and the printer begins the printhead replacement operation. This operation requires about 3 minutes to complete.

Open UpperCover is displayed when the printer is ready.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

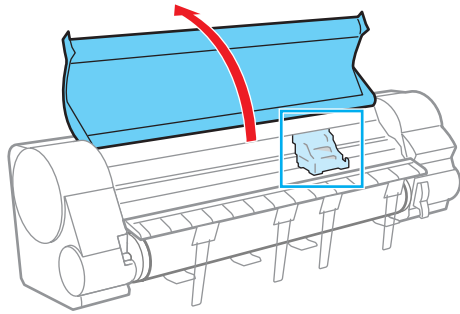
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

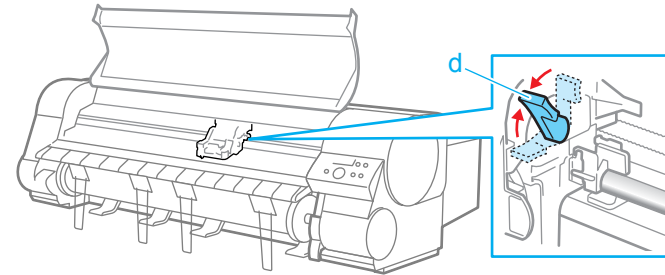
Index

6 Open the top cover.

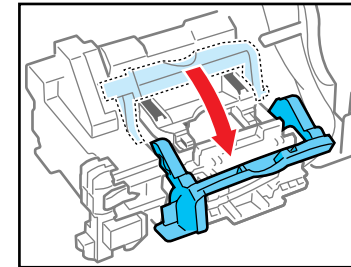


Rep. P.head OK is displayed on the printer operation panel.

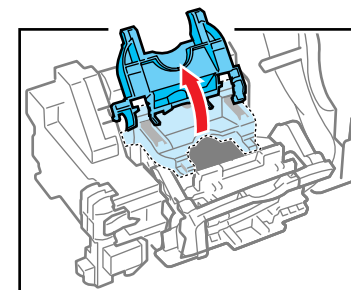
8 If the printhead adjustment lever (d) is in the high or low position, return it to the middle (standard) position.



9 Pull the printhead fixer lever completely forward to open it.



10 Raise the printhead fixer cover completely to open it.

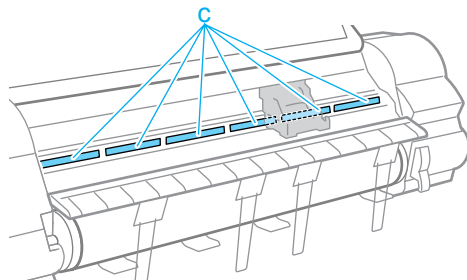


Important

- Do not touch any areas other than as directed. Doing so may stain your hands or cause the printer to malfunction.
- Before you start the procedure, wring out a damp cloth and clean the carriage cover, printhead fixer cover, and printhead fixer lever if they are dirty.

7 Wet and wring out a cloth, and then use the cloth to wipe dirt from the intake ducts (c).

Clean the areas that are obscured by the intake duct carriage by moving the carriage by hand.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

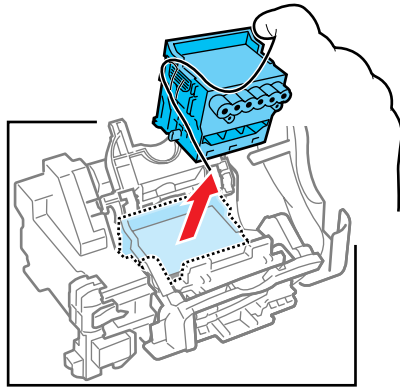
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

11

 Remove the old printhead.

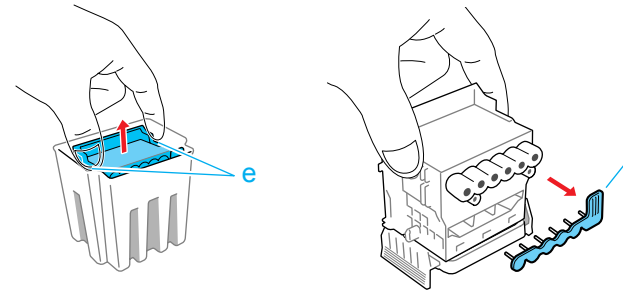
⚠ Caution

- If you are going to replace the printhead immediately after printing, wait a few minutes before starting the work. The metal parts of the printhead may be hot immediately after printing, and touching these parts could cause a minor burn.

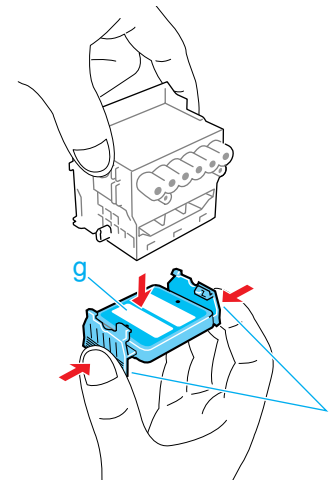
🖐 Important

- Never touch the electrical contacts on the carriage. Doing so may damage the printer.

12

 Grasp the new printhead knob (e) and remove the printhead from the case, and then remove the orange safety cap 1 (f).

13

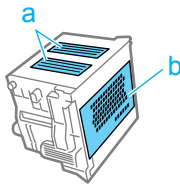
 Press and hold down the knobs (h) on both sides of the safety cap 2 (g) on the new printhead, and then pull the cap down to remove it.Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

 Important

- The inside surface protective cap 2 (g) is covered with ink to protect the nozzles. Do not touch this area of the cap or drop it. Doing so may stain the surrounding area.
- When handling the printhead, always hold it by the grips (e) on the left and right sides.
- Never touch the nozzles (a) or the electrical contacts (b). Doing so may damage the printhead, or cause printing problems.

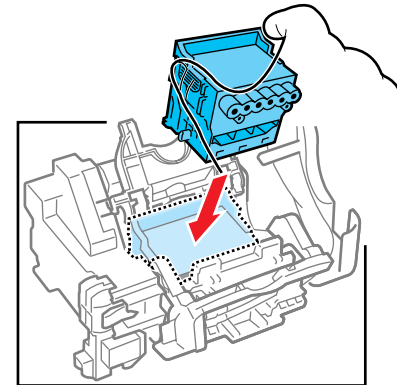


- Never try to re-attach the protective cap or packing material removed from the printhead.

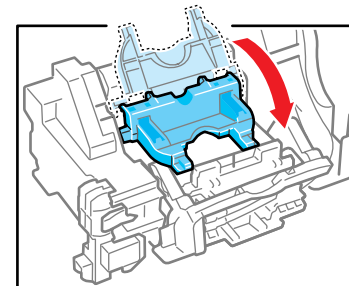
14

 With the nozzles pointing down and the electrical contacts facing the printer, insert the new printhead into the carriage.

Handle the printhead carefully so that the nozzles do not touch the carriage, then push the printhead firmly into the carriage.



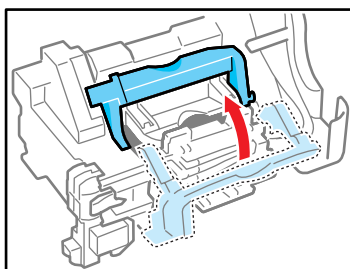
15

 Pull the printhead fixer cover toward you and down to lock the printhead in place.Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

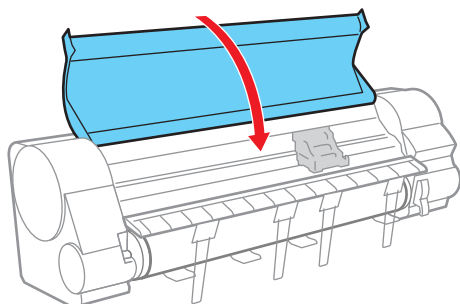
Contents

Index

- 16** Push the printhead fixer lever toward the back of the printer until you hear it click.



- 17** Close the top cover.



As soon as you close the top cover of the printer, **Please Wait..** is displayed in the bottom line of the display and processing begins. The processing requires about 10 minutes to complete. As soon as processing is finished, **Advanced Adj.** is displayed and the printhead is automatically adjusted.
(→ [P.4-41](#))

 **Important**

- Printhead Adjustment does not execute if the **Auto Print** feature on the Main menu is set to **Off**. After replacing the printhead, do **Advanced Adj. / Auto Head Adj.** on the printer operation panel to adjust the printhead automatically. (→ [P.4-41](#))
- The printhead adjustment cannot proceed if the loaded roll paper or cut sheets are not at least A3 size or larger. Printhead adjustment continues as soon as the media is loaded.
- Never attempt to remove an ink tank when the ink tanks are filling during the installation procedure, immediately after replacing the printhead, or during the printer cleaning operation.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Replacing the Cutter Blade

Follow the procedure below to replace the cutter blade when it no longer cuts cleanly.

- Replacing Standard Cutter Blades (Flat Cutters) (→ [P.4-27](#))
- Replacing Optional Cutter Blades (Round Cutters) (→ [P.4-30](#))

Replacing Standard Cutter Blades (Flat Cutters)

Change the cutting position of a blade when the blade no longer cuts cleanly. The cutting position can be changed twice for each blade. Once the cutting position adjustment dial is set to 3, replace the blade with a new one.

- Cutter Blade CT-02



- 1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

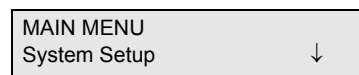


After a few moments, **Online** appears in the display.

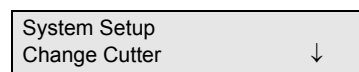
- 2 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3 Press [◀] or [▶] to display **System Setup** then press [▼].



- 4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Change Cutter**, then press [▼].



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 5** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.

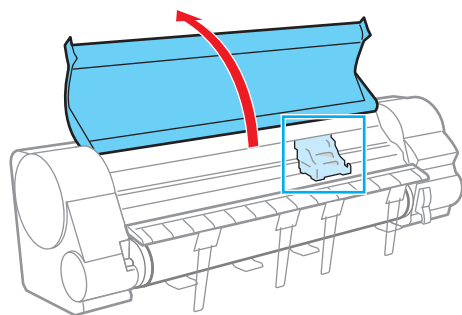
Change Cutter
Yes

Carriage Moving appears in the bottom line of the display and the carriage moves to the center of the platen. **Open UpperCover** is then displayed.

Note

- If no further actions are performed within two minutes after executing the **Change Cutter** function, the cutter replacement procedure will be cancelled, and the printer will automatically return online. If this happens, start again from step 2.

- 6** Open the top cover.

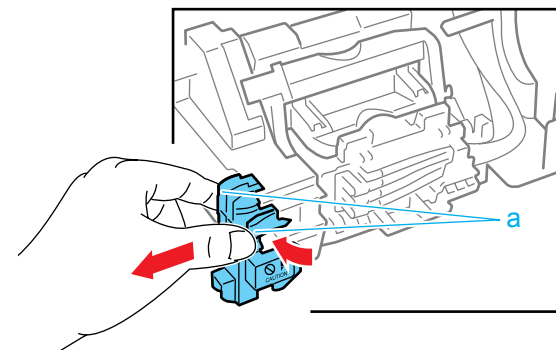


Important

- Do not touch any areas other than as directed. Doing so may stain your hands or cause the printer to malfunction.

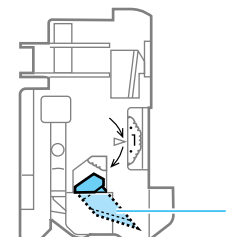
- If the cutter blade or the carriage is dirty, wring out a damp, clean cloth and use it to clean the cutter blade and the carriage before you begin the procedure to adjust the operation of the cutter blade.

- 7** Grasp the cutter blade (a) by the grips then remove it from the carriage.



Important

- After removing the cutter blade, never touch the cutting edge (b). This could cause personal injury.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

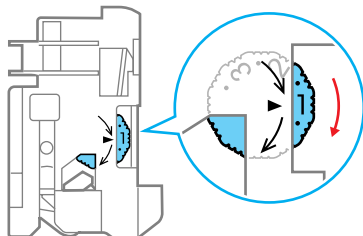
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

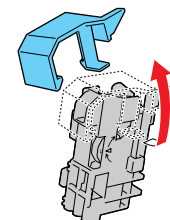
8 Rotate the cutter position adjustment dial 1 notch in the direction shown.

If the dial is already at notch “3” replace the cutter blade with a new one.



Note

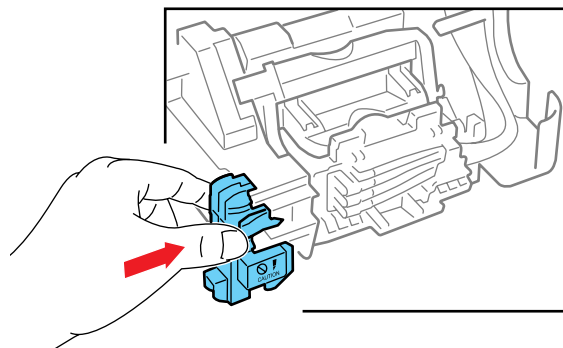
- To remove the protective cap from a new cutter blade, turn the cap in the direction of the arrow. Attach the removed cap to the used cutter blade then discard the cutter blade in accordance with the local laws and regulations regarding the disposal of such items.



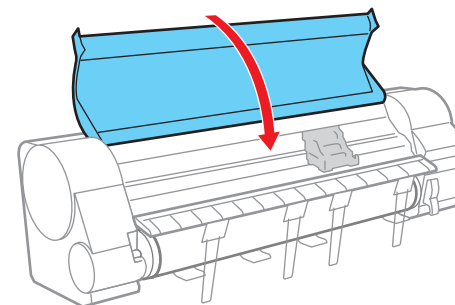
Note

- The position adjustment dial has 3 positions that can be adjusted; the blade can be used at three steps (1, 2, 3). If the dial is returned to a position, the blade can no longer be used.
- Once you have set the cutter blade dial to position 3, procure a new cutter blade for future replacement.

9 Install the cutter blade back into the carriage.



10 Close the top cover.



Please Wait.. appears in the bottom line of the display and the carriage moves, then the **Reset Cut Count** message is displayed.

11 If you have set the cutter position dial to 2 or 3, press the **Stop/Eject** button, or if you have replaced the cutter blade with a new one, press the **OK** button.

Reset Cut Count
Press OK/Stop

The printer returns to online mode.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

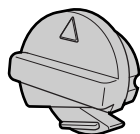
Contents

Index

Replacing Optional Cutter Blades (Round Cutters)

Follow the procedure below to replace a cutter blade that no longer cuts cleanly.

- Cutter Blade CT-04



- 1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

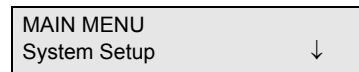


After a few moments, **Online** appears in the display.

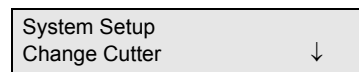
- 2 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



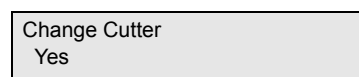
- 3 Press [◀] or [▶] to display **System Setup** then press [▼].



- 4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Change Cutter**, then press [▼].



- 5 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.



Carriage Moving appears in the bottom line of the display and the carriage moves to the center of the platen, then **Open UpperCover** is displayed.



Note

- If no further actions are performed within two minutes after executing the **Change Cutter** function, the cutter replacement procedure will be cancelled, and the printer will automatically return online. If this happens, start again from step 2.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

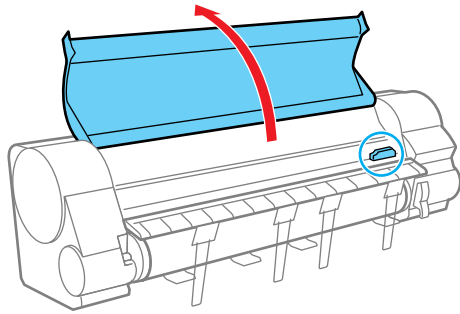
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

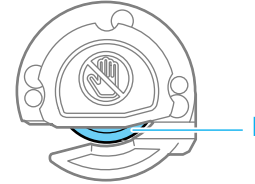
Index

6 Open the top cover.

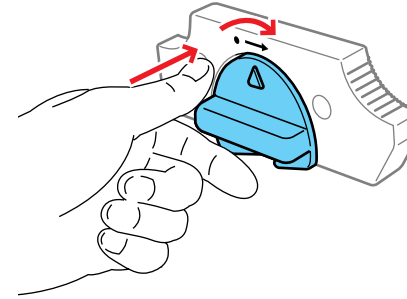


Important

- After removing the cutter blade, never touch the cutting edge (b). This could cause personal injury.



8 Insert the new cutter blade such that the [▲] symbol on the new cutter blade is aligned with the ● symbol on the cutter unit, and rotate it to the right to lock.



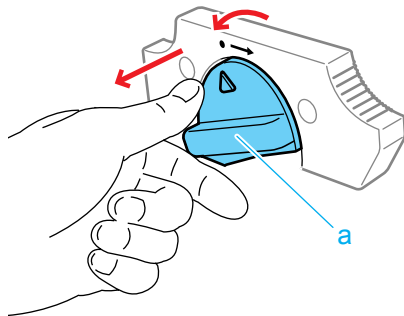
Note

- Dispose of the used cutter blade according to local laws.

Important

- Do not touch any areas other than as directed. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.
- If the cutter unit is dirty, wring out a damp, clean cloth and use it to clean the cutter unit before replacing the cutter blade.

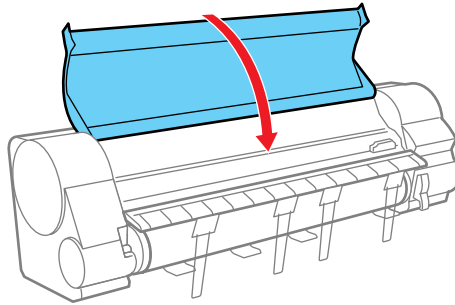
7 Rotate the cutter blade knob (a) to the left, and remove the cutter blade from the cutter unit.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

9 Close the top cover.



Please Wait.. appears in the bottom line of the display. After the carriage has moved, the **Reset Cut Count** message is displayed.

10 Press the **OK** button.

Reset Cut Count
Press OK/Stop

The printer returns to online mode.

Note

- Refer to the “Round Blade Cutter Unit Setup Guide” binding to the Round Blade Cutter Unit for the installation.
- Refer to the “[Media Type](#)” (→ [P.2-4](#)) for the available paper type with the Round Blade Cutter Unit.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Moving the Printer

Follow this procedure before moving the printer to protect the internal parts during moving or shipping. To pack the printer for transport, refer to the Quick Start Guide and follow the installation procedure in reverse order. (→ Quick Start Guide)

Important

- If you cannot avoid tilting or standing the printer on end when you are moving it, please contact the dealer where you purchased the printer or the nearest service center.
- Before you move the printer, always execute the **Move Printer** menu function and follow the directions given by the messages on the display. The printer may be damaged if you attempt to move it after disconnecting the power cord before switching off the printer. If you accidentally disconnect the power cord before switching the printer off, reattach the power cord, reinstall the ink tanks, then start the procedure again from [Step 1](#). (→ Quick Start Guide)
- You cannot execute **Move Printer** once the **MTCart Full Soon** or **Replace MT-Cart.** appears. Replace the maintenance cartridge before executing **Move Printer**.
- Never tilt the printer while you are moving it.

- 1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

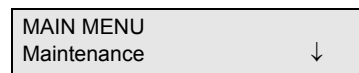


After a few moments, **Online** appears in the display.

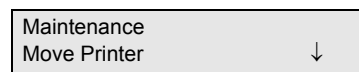
- 2 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Maintenance**, then press [▼].



- 4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Move Printer** then press [▼].



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

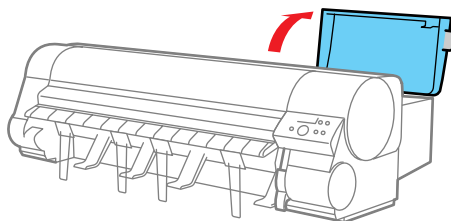
Index

5 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.

Move Printer
Yes

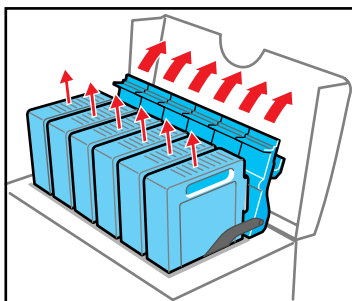
Open RightCover is displayed.

6 Open the right back cover.



Remove Ink Tank is displayed on the operation panel.

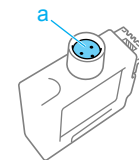
7 Open the ink tank cover, then remove all the ink tanks.



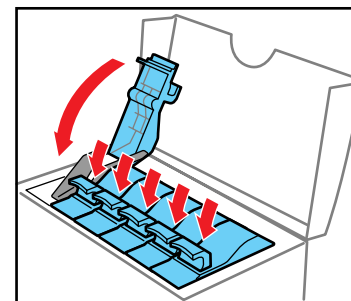
Place each ink tank in a plastic bag and seal the bag.

Note

- Store the removed tanks with the ink supply ports facing up (a). If the ink tanks are stored with the ink supply ports (a) facing down, ink may leak out.



8 Lock all of the ink tank covers, and press the pocket of the right back cover upper face. Then close the right back cover.



Please Wait.. appears followed by **Ink Draining..** while the ink is sucked from inside the tubes. This process requires about 4 minutes to complete.

The printer switches off automatically once the process is complete.

9 Disconnect the power cord and interface cable.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

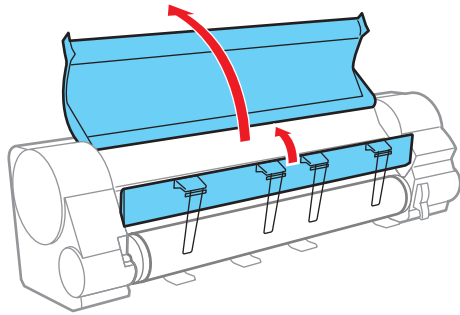
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

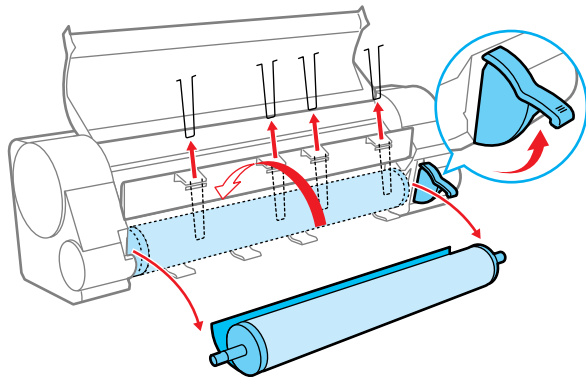
10 Open the top cover, and then open the ejection guide.



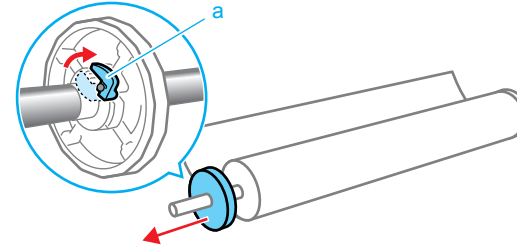
Important

- Do not touch any areas other than as indicated. Doing so may damage the printer.

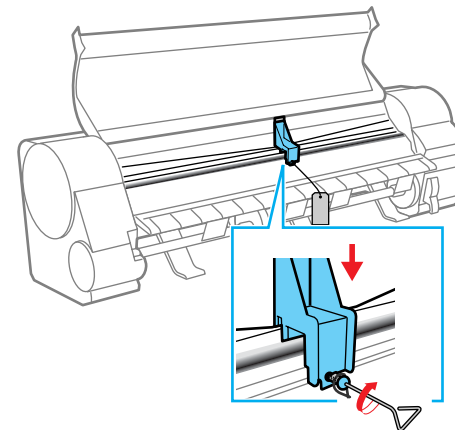
11 Rewind the roll media back onto the roll and remove the roll holder and the four spool prevention stays, and then remove the ejection guide.



12 Lower the holder stopper lever, remove the stopper, remove the roll from the roll holder, then store the roll holder and the holder stopper.



13 Clamp the belt with the belt stopper then use the hex screws to fasten the belt stopper.



Note

- Attach the belt stopper that you removed and stored during the initial installation.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

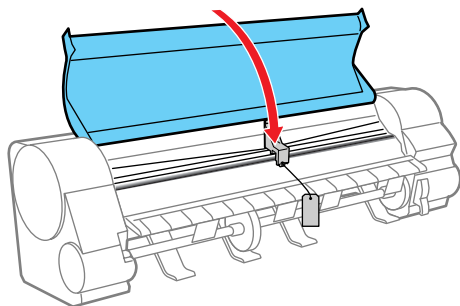
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

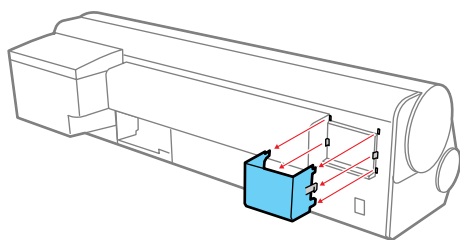
Contents

Index

14 Close the top cover.



15 Remove the accessory pocket.



16 Tape each printer cover in the reverse order of tape removal during setup.

17 To remove the output stacker, apply the attachment procedure in reverse.

18 Apply the printer mounting procedure in reverse to unmount the printer.

19 Apply the stand assembly procedure in reverse to disassemble and pack the stand.

20 Reattach the tapes and shipping materials to the roll holder and printer, then pack them in the original shipping box.

This completes the preparation for moving the printer.

 **Important**

- To reassemble the printer after moving, perform installation according to the “Quick Start Guide”.
- Executing the **Move Printer** menu and removing the power supply cable before turning the printer off to move the printer may cause damage to the printer. Perform the procedures for attaching the power supply cable and ink tanks starting from [Step 1](#). (→ Quick Start Guide)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Confirming the Print Condition

When you see that the printouts are faded and uneven, or streaked with white lines, print a Nozzle Check to determine whether the nozzles are blocked. Before you print a Nozzle Check, make sure roll media or cut sheets of A3 size or wider are loaded in the printer.



Note

- If you are using cut sheets, make sure at least one sheet of unused A3 paper (not the blank side of used paper) or larger are loaded in the printer.

- 1** If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to turn the printer on.

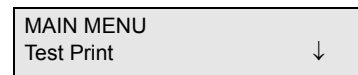


Within a short time, **Online** or **Offline** is displayed.

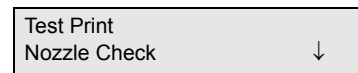
- 2** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Test Print** then press [▼].



- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Nozzle Check**, then press **OK** button.



The nozzle check pattern prints. The printer returns to the online mode and displays **Online** in the display as soon as printing completes.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

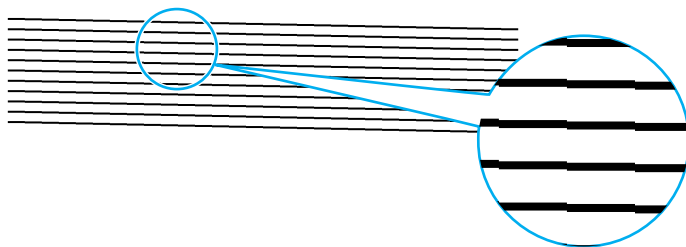
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

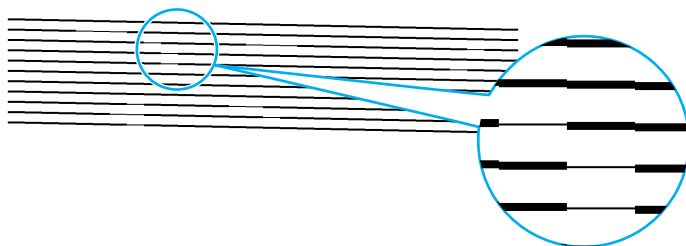
Index

If there are no breaks in the horizontal lines of each color, the nozzle check pattern is normal.

• Sample: Printhead Normal



• Sample: Printhead Abnormal



If any of the lines are broken, perform the following procedure:

1. Execute printhead cleaning. (→ [P.4-39](#))
2. Print the Nozzle Check Pattern again.
3. If the Nozzle Check patterns are still broken after repeating this procedure several times, call the dealer where you purchased the printer or call the nearest service center.

Cleaning the Printhead

When the ink nozzles of the printhead become clogged, you can restore normal operation by cleaning the printhead.



Note

- If you activate the **Nozzle Check** setting, the printer checks the nozzles and executes automatic recovery each time the specified number of pages are printed. The default setting is **10 Pages**.

Types of Printhead Cleaning

There are two methods for printhead cleaning.

■ Head Cleaning A:

Execute Head Cleaning A when printing appears uneven, or when the printhead is dirty. This cleaning method consumes the least amount of ink. Head Cleaning A requires approximately 90 seconds.

■ Head Cleaning B:

Execute Head Cleaning B if no ink is coming out of the printhead or if Head Cleaning A did not correct the problem. Head Cleaning B requires approximately 3 mins. 30 seconds.

Printhead Cleaning Procedure

Follow this procedure to clean the printhead. The procedure is almost the same for each method.

If printing does not improve after executing Head Cleaning A once, execute Head Cleaning B. If Head Cleaning B does not correct the problem, repeat Head Cleaning B two or three times. If the printer operation does not recover after running Cleaning B, the printhead may have reached the end of its service life. Call for service or contact the dealer where you purchased the printer.



Note

- You can execute **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for more than three seconds.

- 1** If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.



Within a short time, **Online** or **Offline** is displayed.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

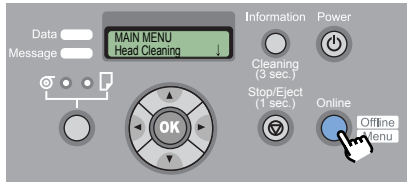
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

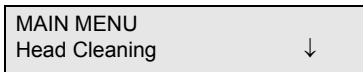
Contents

Index

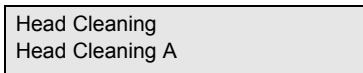
- 2** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3** Select **Head Cleaning** then press [▼].



- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select the printhead cleaning method then press **OK** button.



Printhead cleaning starts. When printhead cleaning is finished, the printer returns **Online**.

- 5** Print the nozzle check pattern to check if the printing has improved. (→ [P.4-37](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Aligning the Printhead



If printed vertical lines are bent, or if colors are faded and uneven, adjust the printhead position. The printer will print the printhead adjustment pattern and read the pattern as it prints it to adjust the position of the printhead automatically. Before you adjust the position of the printhead, make sure roll media or cut sheets of A3 size or wider are loaded in the printer.

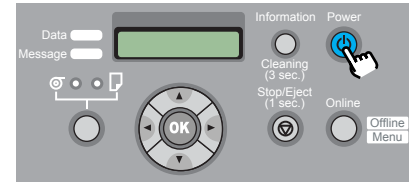
Follow this procedure to adjust the printhead.

Note

- When you adjust the printhead, you should use the type of media (other than film) that you use most frequently.
- If you are using cut sheets, make sure you load at least one sheet of unused A3 paper (not the blank side of used paper).

Aligning Printhead Procedure

- 1** If the printer power is off, press the Power button to turn the printer on.

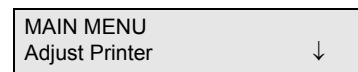


Within a short time, Online or Offline is displayed.

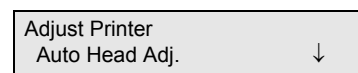
- 2** Press the Online button to display MAIN MENU.



- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select Adjust Printer then press [▼].



- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Auto Head Adj.**, then press [▼].

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

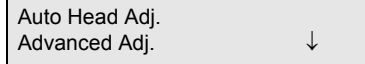
Contents

Index

- 5** Press [◀] or [▶] to select Advanced Adj. or Standard Adj., then press [▼].

Advanced Adj. adjusts the gaps between the even and odd numbered nozzles, the color boundaries, and print direction boundaries.

Standard Adj. adjusts only the print direction boundaries.



Auto Head Adj.
Advanced Adj. ↓

- 6** Press [◀] or [▶] to select Advanced Adj., then press OK button.



Advanced Adj.
Yes

The printer will adjust the position of the printhead automatically as it reads the pattern used to adjust the position of the printhead.

As soon as adjustment is completed, the Online message is displayed.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Adjusting the Amount of Media Feed



Use the following procedure to run the **Adjust Band** function to adjust the amount of media feed if you see white lines or dark color lines in your printed images. The printer prints the band adjustment pattern and reads the resulting printout as it prints it to automatically adjust the setting for the amount of media feed for the media currently loaded in the printer. The amount of media feed can be set for different types of media. Before executing the adjust band function, make sure roll media or cut sheets of A3 size or wider are loaded in the printer.

Important

- Before you adjust the amount of feed, you must use the operation panel to select the media type of the paper loaded in the printer. If the value of the media type selection does not match the paper loaded in the printer, you will not achieve good print results and the quality of the printing will be poor.
- To perform **Adjust Band**, select **Band Joint** in **Feed Priority**.

Note

- If you are using cut sheets, make sure you load at least one sheet of unused A3 paper or larger (not the blank side of used paper).
- There is no automatic adjustment for highly transparent film. Execute Fine Tuning to perform the adjustment with manual entry.

Media Feed Adjustment Procedure

- 1** If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to turn the printer on.

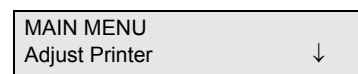


Within a short time, **Online** or **Offline** is displayed.

- 2** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Adjust Printer** then press [▼].

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Adjust Band**, then press [▼].

Adjust Printer
Adjust Band ↓

- 5** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Standard Adj.** or **Advanced Adj.**, then press [▼].

Adjust Band
Standard Adj. ↓

- 6** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.

Standard Adj.
Yes

The printer prints band adjustment pattern B and reads the results of the print as it prints to automatically adjust the settings for the amount of media feed for the currently loaded media.

When settings are finished, the printer returns **Online**.

Adjusting Media Feed Manually

If horizontal lines or bands appear in printouts, the amount of media feed can be manually fine tuned to be either greater or smaller. Follow the procedure below to make the adjustment manually.

- 1** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 2** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Adjust Printer** then press [▼].

MAIN MENU
Adjust Printer ↓

- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Adjust Band**, then press [▼].

Adjust Printer
Adjust Band ↓

- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Fine Tuning**, then press [▼].

Adjust Band
Fine Tuning ↓

Displays the current value of the setting.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 5** Press the [◀] or [▶] button to select the desired setting value then press the **OK** button.

If you want to increase the gap between the bands, enter a number from 1 to 3.

If you want to reduce the gap between the bands, enter a number from -1 to -3.

Fine Tuning
=0

The selected setting is prefixed with a (=) mark to denote the current value.

- 6** Press the **Online** button.



The Online lamp lights and the printer is ready to print.

Note

- The paper feed adjustment value can be entered even while printing is being performed. If the paper feed adjustment value is changed while printing is being performed, however, the print result may be misaligned by approx. 3 cm immediately after the change is made.
- If there are conspicuous white lines in the printed matter, adjust towards “+”, and if there are conspicuous black lines in the printed matter, adjust towards “-”.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

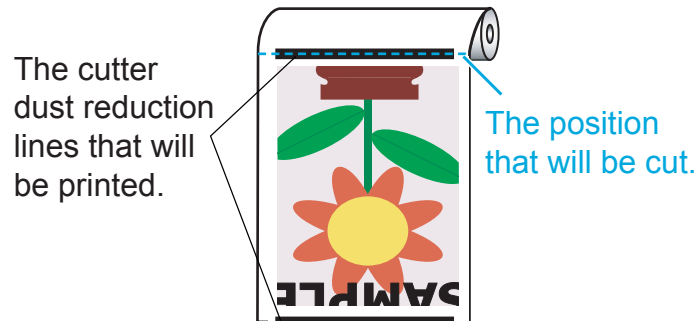
Contents

Index

Reducing the Amount of Cutting Dust

When you are using a media like backlight film that creates a large amount of cutting dust, you can activate the cutter dust reduction function to improve the quality of printing and reduce damage to the printhead. The cutter dust reduction function can be configured separately for each type of media. (→ P.1-21)

If you activate the cutter dust reduction function, black lines are printed at the leading edge and trailing edge of each printed sheet.



Important

- Do not use this function for plain paper, thin paper, or any other media that buckles easily. These types of media may not cut properly and can cause paper jams.
- Borderless printing cannot be performed when the cutter dust reduction function is active. In order to perform borderless printing, you must switch the cutter dust reduction function off.

- 1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

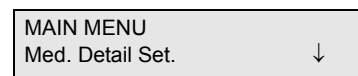


Within a short time, **Online** or **Offline** is displayed.

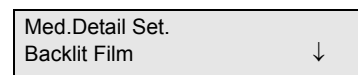
- 2 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Med.Detail Set.**, then press [▼].



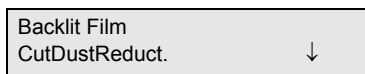
- 4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select the name of the media type then press [▼].

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

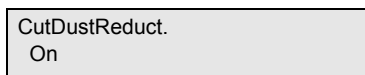
Index

5 Press [◀] or [▶] to display **CutDustReduct.** then press [▼].



6 Press [◀] or [▶] to select a value for the setting, and then press the **OK** button.

Select **On** to activate the cutter dust reduction function for the selected media type, or select **Off** to deactivate the function for the media type.



The selection is prefixed with an equals sign (=) to denote that the cut waste reduction function is selected.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

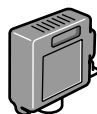
Contents

Index

Changing the Black Ink Type

This printer uses two types of black ink, either **Photo Black Ink (Bk)** or **Matte Black Ink (MBk)**, to best match the media type and the requirements of the print job. For more details about the types of black ink, refer to “[The Suitable Black Ink for Media](#)”. (→ P.2-2)

- Photo Black (Bk) Ink Tank
BCI-1421BK
- Matte Black (MBk) Ink Tank
BCI-1441MBK



Follow this procedure to switch the type of black ink.

- ▼ Remove printed media and cut sheets from the printer.
- ▼ On the printer operation panel select **ChangeBkInkType**.
- ▼ After the process of draining the ink has finished, remove the black ink tank.
- ▼ Install the black ink that you want to use.
- ▼ Confirm the installed black ink tank.
- ▼ Aligning the Printhead



Note

- It takes about 10 minutes to complete the process of changing the black ink.

Important

- When you execute **ChangeBkInkType**, the printer consumes about 55 ml of black ink and about 15 ml of the colored inks in total. Before you change the ink tanks, confirm that there is sufficient ink in the tank. It is recommended that you use a new ink tank whenever possible. (→ P.4-2)
- You cannot install both photo black (Bk) ink and matte black (MBk) ink at the same time.
- You cannot execute **ChangeBkInkType** if **MTCart Full Soon** or **Replace MT-Cart.** is displayed. You can execute **ChangeBkInkType** after the maintenance cartridge has been replaced.

- 1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to turn the printer on.



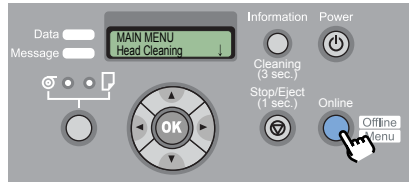
Within a short time, **Online** or **Offline** is displayed.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

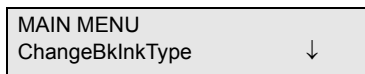
Contents

Index

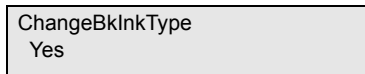
2 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **ChangeBkInkType**, and then press the [▼] button.



4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.



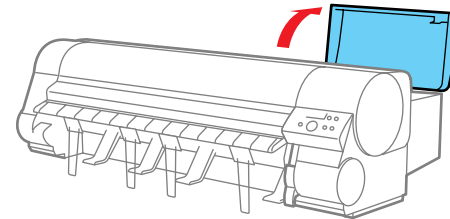
The black ink drains while the **Please Wait..** message is displayed. The draining requires about 3 minutes to complete.

As soon as processing is completed, the **Open RightCover** message is displayed.

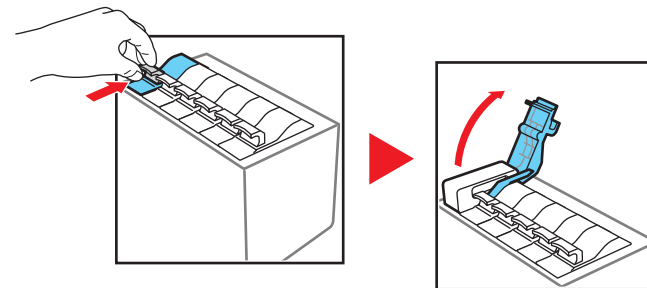
Important

- If the **Not Enough Ink** error message is displayed, replace the drained ink tank with a new one.

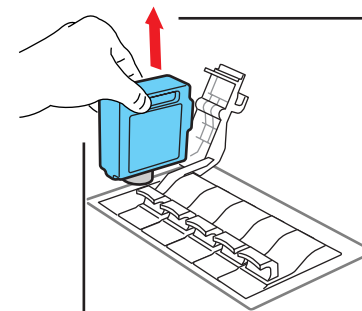
5 Open the right back cover.



6 Press down on the lever for the black ink tank to open the ink tank cover.



7 Hold the black ink tank by the grips and remove it.



Place each ink tank in a plastic bag and seal it.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

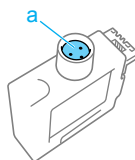
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

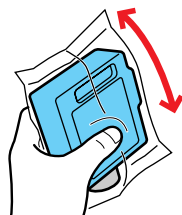
Index

Important

- If there is ink remaining in the ink tank you removed, store the ink tank with the ink supply port (a) facing up. If you store the ink tank with the ink supply port (a) facing down, ink may leak out.

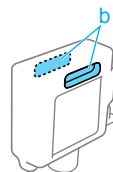


- 8** Keep the black ink tank that you are going to use in the bag and gently shake it 7 or 8 times, then remove it from the bag.

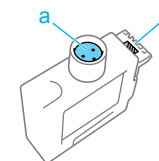


Important

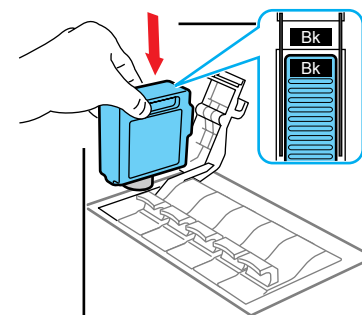
- Always hold the ink tank by the left and right grips (b) when you are handling it.



- Never touch the ink supply port (a) or the electrical contacts (c). Doing so may damage the ink tank, cause poor print quality, or stain the surrounding area.



- 9** With the ink supply port facing down and the color label facing front, insert the black ink tank into the holder.



Important

- The ink tanks are shaped so that the cover will not close if you the ink tank in the wrong holder. If the ink tank cover does not close, confirm that the color labels on the holder match the color of the ink tank.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

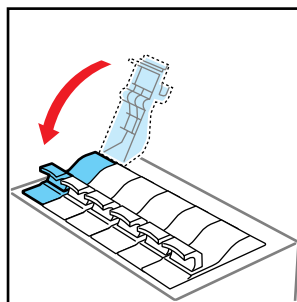
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

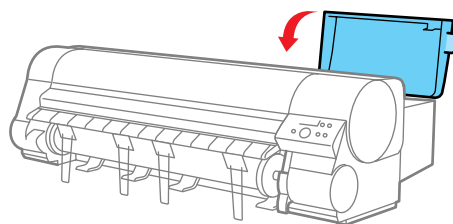
Contents

Index

- 10** Close the ink tank cover until you hear it click.



- 11** Press the indentation on the top of the right back cover to close the right back cover.



The name of the ink tank type you just installed is displayed.

- 12** Check the ink type, and then press the **OK** button.

If the ink type display is incorrect press the **Stop/Eject** button, open the right back cover, and replace the black ink tank.

- For a matte black ink tank

ChangeBkInkType
MBk Ink Tank OK?

- For a photo black ink tank

ChangeBkInkType
Bk Ink Tank OK?

The operation panel displays **Ink Filling..** while the ink fills. Ink filling requires about 15 minutes.

When ink fill process is finished, the printer returns **Online**.

- 13** Adjusts the printhead. (→ [P.4-41](#))

Important

- If you change the type of black ink frequently, the black ink may not print clearly. If that happens, perform **Cleaning B**.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Chapter 5 Using the Printer in a Network Environment

You can print the items that have been checked.

Before Using the Printer	5-2
System Requirements	5-2
The Network Environment	5-3
TCP/IP Network Settings (Windows, Macintosh, UNIX)	5-5
Procedures Required for a TCP/IP Network	5-5
Connecting the LAN Cable	5-5
Setting the Printer IP Address	5-7
Configuring TCP/IP Protocol Settings	5-15
Configuring the Printer for Sharing	5-18
Macintosh Network Settings	5-20
Procedures Required for a Macintosh Network	5-20
Configuring a Macintosh	5-21
Configuring the AppleTalk Protocol	5-25
Install the Printer Driver	5-31
NetWare Settings (Windows)	5-33
Procedures Required for a NetWare Network	5-33
Setting the Printer Frame Type	5-34
Setting Up a NetWare Print Service	5-37
Setting NetWare Protocol	5-40
Configuring the Computer for NetWare	5-44
Printing with UNIX	5-45
Using LPD to Print	5-45
Using FTP to Print	5-46
Initializing the Network Settings	5-47
List of Network Settings	5-48
Software Applications Used to Configure Network Settings	5-51

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Before Using the Printer

This section describes information you need to know before using the optional network interface board, such as the supported network environments and how to check the network environment you are using. It is recommended that the network settings are made by the network administrator.

System Requirements

This section describes the system environments that are compatible with the printer network interface. The following system environment is required depending on the network to be used.

■ Using a TCP/IP Network for Printing

- Compatible Operating Systems
 - Windows Server 2003
 - Windows XP
 - Windows 2000
 - Windows NT 4.0
 - Windows Me, Windows 98
 - Mac OS 8.6 or later
 - Mac OS X ver 10.1 or later
 - Solaris Version 9
 - Red Hat Linux 9
- Compatible Computers
 - IBM PC or IBM compatible PC
 - A Macintosh Series computer equipped with a Power PC processor.
 - Sun Microsystems SPARC platform computer

Note

- If you are using Windows NT 4.0, install Service Pack 6 or later.
- If using Mac OS X ver 10.2.5 or later, you can connect using the Mac OS X Zeroconf function.
(Further, if using Mac OS 8.6 or 9.x, if the Canon imagePROGRAF printer driver for Macintosh has been installed, connection can be made using the Zeroconf function.)

■ Using an AppleTalk Network for Printing

- Compatible Computers
 - A Macintosh Series computer equipped with a Power PC processor.
- Compatible Operating Systems
 - Mac OS 8.6 or later
 - Mac OS x 10.1 or later
- Compatible AppleTalk
 - EtherTalk Phase 2
- Required Memory
 - 24 MB or more for Mac OS 8.6, 32 MB or more for Mac OS 9.x
 - 128 MB or more is required for Mac OS x.

Note

- This printer is not compatible with a Macintosh LocalTalk Network.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Using a NetWare Network for Printing

- Compatible Servers
 - Novell NetWare Version 4.2/5.1/6.0
- Compatible Clients
 - Windows XP Professional
 - Windows 2000 Server
 - Windows 2000 Professional
 - Windows NT Server 4.0
 - Windows NT Workstation 4.0
 - Windows Me, Windows 98
- Compatible Computers
 - IBM PC or IBM compatible PC



Note

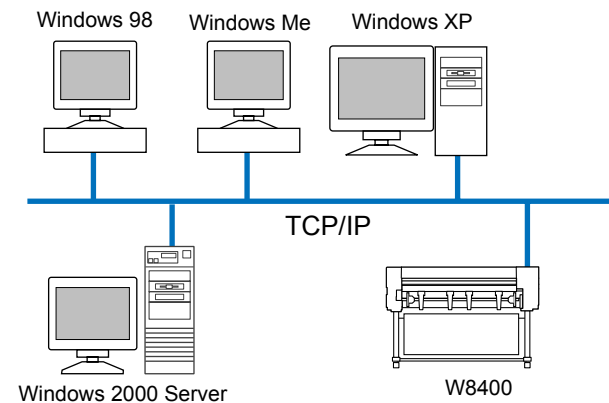
- NetWare Version 6.0 iPrint is not supported.

The Network Environment

Use the following diagrams as a reference to determine the type of network environment that the printer will connect to, and then follow the required procedure.

● Windows Network Examples

If you are using Windows network, you can use TCP/IP as the protocol. (→ P.5-5)



Note

- If the Windows computers are setup to use a TCP/IP network, each computer can send print jobs directly to the printer over the network for printing. Furthermore, if a Windows Server 2003/ Windows XP/ Windows 2000/ Windows NT computer on the network is setup as a print server, higher printing efficiency can be obtained by sending the print jobs from each computer to the print server and allowing the print server to manage the print jobs and sends the print jobs to the network printer. For details on the procedures to setup a print server, refer to “[Configuring the Printer for Sharing](#)”. (→ P.5-18)
- The NetBIOS protocol cannot be used with this printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

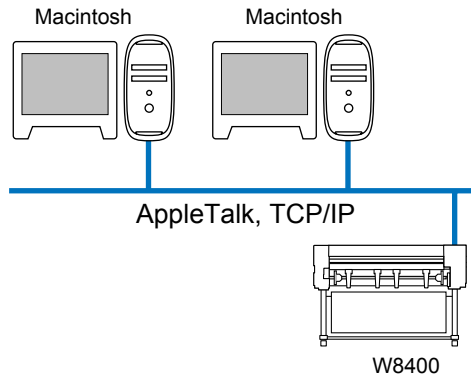
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

● Macintosh Network Examples

For Macintosh computers, the AppleTalk (EtherTalk) or TCP/IP, or Zeroconf (Mac OS X Ver. 10.2.5 or later) protocols can be used. (→ [P.5-20](#))

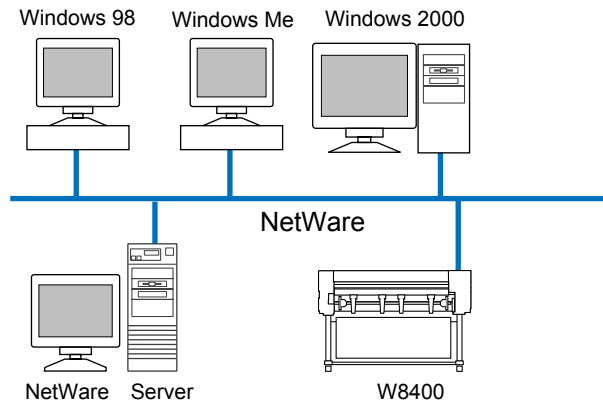


Note

- In a network environment that has a NetWare server, the TCP/IP or AppleTalk protocols can be used concurrently. In this case, setup the protocol you want to use.

● NetWare Network Examples

If you are using a network environment as described in the following diagram, perform printing using the NetWare protocol. The NetWare client software must be installed on each server and client computer. (→ [P.5-33](#))



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

TCP/IP Network Settings (Windows, Macintosh, UNIX)

This chapter describes the configuration procedures for connecting the printer to a TCP/IP network.

Procedures Required for a TCP/IP Network

The following is a summary of the procedures required to set the printer for use on a TCP/IP network.

The following work should be performed by the network system administrator.

1 Installing the network interface board → Quick Start Guide

First, install the optional network interface board.

2 [Connecting the LAN Cable](#) → P.5-5

Connect the printer LAN board to the HUB using a network cable.

3 [Setting the Printer IP Address](#) → P.5-7

Set the printer IP address so that the printer can communicate with the computer you are using. Settings can be made using one of the following.

- GARO Device Setup Utility (Canon software application provided with the printer.)
- ARP/PING command
- Printer Operation Panel

4 Installing the Printer Driver → Quick Start Guide

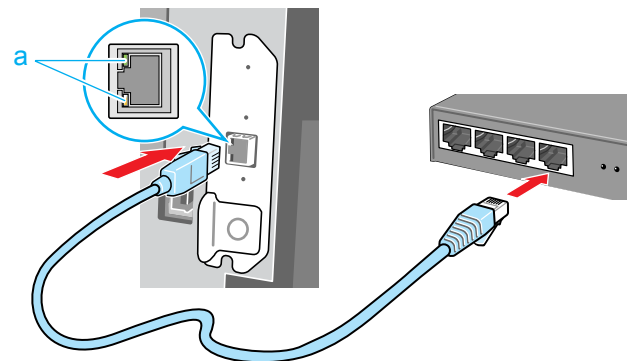
You can use the Canon IMAGEPROGRAF printer driver for Windows or the Canon IMAGEPROGRAF printer driver for Macintosh (OS X). Install the printer driver by following the procedure in the quick start guide. There is no printer driver for UNIX.

5 [Configuring TCP/IP Protocol Settings](#) → P.5-15

Configure the TCP/IP protocol settings as required. You can use a Web Browser to configure these settings from your computer.

Connecting the LAN Cable

- 1 Use a LAN cable to connect the printer LAN port to a port on the hub.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

2 Use a LAN cable to connect the computer LAN port to a port on the hub.

Note

- If you are using the printer connected to a network, check that the LINK lamp (a) lights up after you turn the printer on. If you are using a 100 Base-TX connection, the lamp will turn green, and if you are using a 10 Base-T connection, the lamp will turn yellow.
- If the LINK lamp does not turn on, check the following points:
 - Is the hub turned on?
(If the hub is off, turn the hub on.)
 - Is the LAN cable connector connected correctly?
(Push in the connector until it locks with a click.)
 - Is the LAN cable defective?
(Replace the LAN cable with another cable, and then check the lamp.)
 - Is the hub communication format compatible?
(If the communication format (mode and speed) of the printer and hub do not match when network auto negotiation is used, follow the procedure below to manually configure the connection settings.)
 1. Press the **Online** button twice to display **MAIN MENU**.
 2. Press the [◀] or [▶] buttons to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the [▼] button.
 3. Press the [◀] or [▶] buttons to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press the [▼] button.

4. Press the [◀] or [▶] buttons to select **Auto Detect**, and then press the [▼] button.
5. Press the [◀] or [▶] buttons to select **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press the [◀] or [▶] buttons to select **Comm.Mode**, and then press the [▼] button.
7. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Half Duplex** or **Full Duplex** then press **OK** button.
8. Press the [◀] or [▶] buttons to select **Ethernet Type**, and then press the [▼] button.
9. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **10 Base-T** or **100 Base-TX** then press **OK** button.
10. Press the [◀] or [▶] buttons to select **Spanning Tree**, and then press the [▼] button.
11. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Use** or **Not Use** then press **OK** button.
12. Press the **Online** button.
13. If **Store Setting OK?** is displayed, press the **OK** button.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Setting the Printer IP Address

The printer IP address needs to be configured so that the computer you are using can communicate with the printer before you can setup the printer protocol settings. Make the settings in one of the following ways. Use the method that is easiest for you.

- GARO Device Setup Utility (→ [P.5-7](#))

If you are using a Windows computer, make the settings using the utility software.

- ARP/PING command (→ [P.5-10](#))

The printer IP address can be set using the command screen. Set the subnet mask and default gateway using the remote UI.

- Printer Operation panel (→ [P.5-12](#))

If you are using an AppleTalk connection on a Macintosh computer, you will need to configure the settings using the printer operation panel. However, if you are using a Mac OS X v10.2.5 or later, or the Zeroconf function (IP print (auto)) on Mac OS 8.6/9.x to connect, printing can be performed even if the network settings of the printer have not been configured.

 **Important**

- Before setting the IP address, confirm that the printer is switched on and connected to the network.

■ Configuring the Printer Using the GARO Device Setup Utility

If you are using Windows, use the “GARO Device Setup Utility” (a software utility provided with the printer) to perform the printer network settings.

- Installing the GARO Device Setup Utility

 **Important**

- If you are using Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, or Windows NT 4.0, you must log in as a member of the Administrators group.

1 Insert the provided “User Software” CD-ROM into the computer CD-ROM drive.

The **Setup Menu** window is displayed.

 **Note**

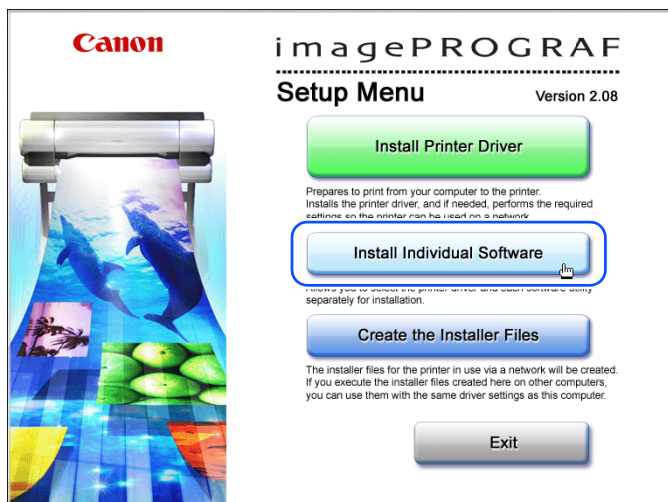
- If the AutoPlay function is switched off, double-click the **My Computer** icon on the desktop, click the **CD-ROM drive** icon, and then from the **File** menu select **AutoPlay**.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

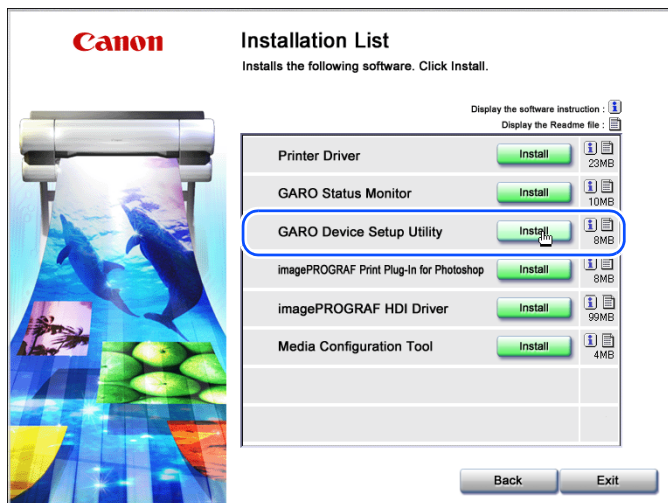
Contents

Index

2 Click the **Install Individual Software** button.



3 Click the **Install** button in the **GARO Device Setup Utility**.

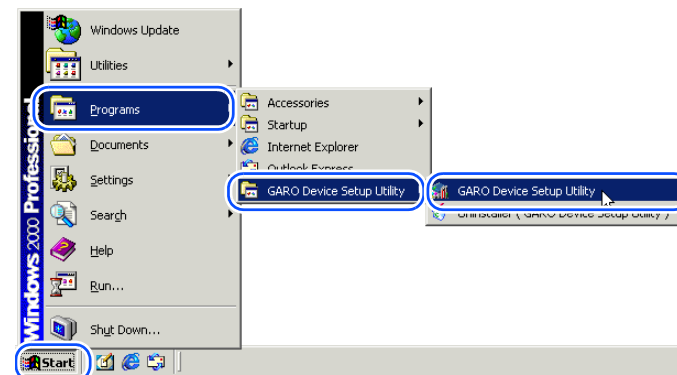


4 Follow the instructions on the screen.

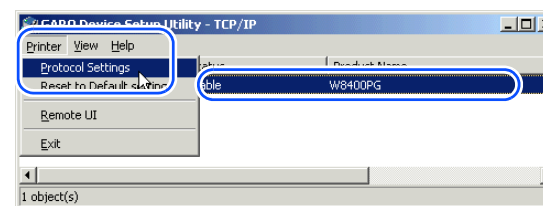
This completes the installation of the GARO Device Setup Utility.

● Setting Network Information

1 Select **Programs / GARO Device Setup Utility / GARO Device Setup Utility** from the **Start** menu.



2 Select the name of the printer you want to setup from the list of printer names, then select **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

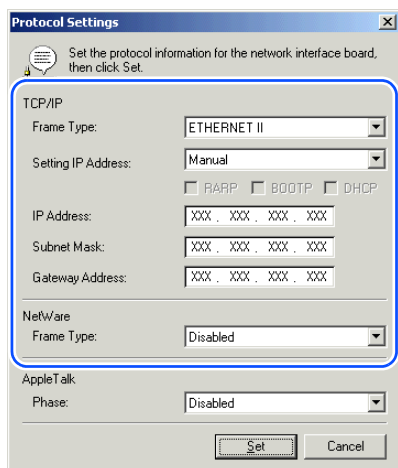
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

3 Enter the IP Address, Subnet Mask, and Gateway Address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.

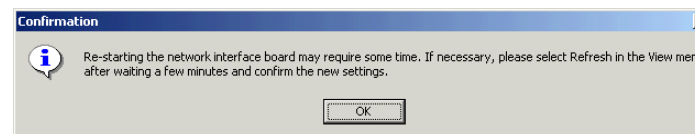
To configure the IP address automatically, select **Auto** from **Setting IP Address**, and then place a checkmark next to method to use (choose between **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**). To configure a static IP address, select **Manual** from **Setting IP Address**.



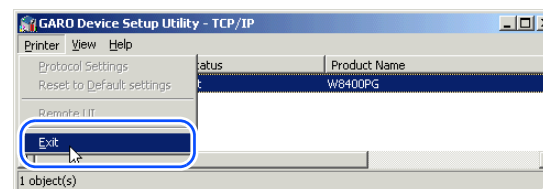
AppleTalk and NetWare are disabled under the factory default printer settings. To use AppleTalk for printing, set the **AppleTalk Phase** to **Phase 2**.

To use NetWare for printing, set **NetWare Frame Type** to the frame type you are using.

4 Click the **OK** button when the confirmation message is displayed.



5 When you have finished configuring the settings, select **Exit** from the **Printer** menu.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Configuring the Printer Using the ARP/PING Command

The printer MAC address is required to configure the printer using the ARP/PING command. The MAC address can be determined by a status print, from the sticker on the internal printer network card, or from the **Information** menu on the operation panel.

● Checking the Printer MAC Address

To find the MAC address using the **Status Print**, use the following procedure to print the status print. Load roll media of A3 size or greater before printing.



Note

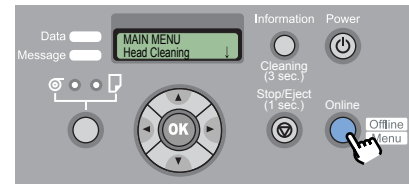
- The MAC address can be found on the sticker on the internal print network card, or by pressing the **Online** button in the printer operation panel and selecting **MAIN MENU**, **Information**, and then **MAC Address**.

- 1** If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

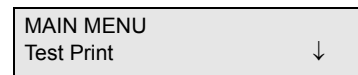


After a few moments, **Online** appears in the display.

- 2** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Test Print** then press [▼].



- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Status Print**, then press **OK** button.



The printer settings information will be printed. When printing has finished, **Online** is displayed and the printer is ready to print.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

The MAC address is printed in the Status Print at the location indicated in the sample below.

```

Canon imagePROGRAF W8400PG Status Print
S/C:Ver.00.XX S/BOOT:Ver.00.XX
E/C:Ver.00.XX E/Rel:Ver.0001 E/BOOT:Ver.1.XX
BK:80% C:80% M:80% Y:80% PC:80% PM:80% MC:161

Take-up Reel : Disable
Media Type : Heavy Coated
Adjust Printer
Head Adjust
Auto Print : On
A1:0 A2:0 A3:0 A4:0 A5:0 A6:0
B1:0 B2:0 B3:0 B4:0 B5:0 B6:0
C1:0 C2:0 C3:0 C4:0 C5:0 C6:0
D1:0 D2:0 D3:0 D4:0 D5:0
Network
Zone : *
Ethernet Driver
Auto : Off
Type : Full Duplex
Speed : 100BaseTx
Scanning Type : No
MAC Address : 000085XXXXXX
System Setup
Warning
Buzzer : On
Head Ht. : Off
Media : Off
Keep Media Size : On
Chk Remain Roll : Off
Nozzle Check : 10pages
Stop Ink Check : Off Off Off Off Off Off
Sleep Timer : 15min.
Length unit : meter
Language : ｶﾀｶﾅ
Information
RAM : 128MB
Ext. Interface : LAN
Error Log 01:E00000 02:E00000 03:E00000 04:E00000 05:E00000
Counter
Cutter : 5

```

● Setting the IP Address

- 1 If you are using a Windows computer, open an MS-DOS prompt or a command prompt.

If you are using UNIX or Linux, open the console screen.

- 2 Execute the following commands to add static entries to the arp table.

```
arp -s <IP Address> <MAC Address>
```

IP address:

Enter the IP address assigned to the printer. Enter four numbers (0 to 255 in decimal) separated by full stops. Have the network administrator check the assigned address.

MAC Address:

Enter the dedicated MAC address of the printer. Separate each set of two digits with a hyphen.

Entry Sample:

```
arp -s XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX 00-00-85-XX-XX-XX
```

- 3** Execute the following commands to configure the IP address of the printer.

```
ping <IP Address> -l 479
```

IP address:

Enter the same IP address as used in [Step 2](#).

Entry Sample:

```
ping XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX -l 479
```

(For Windows)

```
ping -s 479 XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
```

(For Red Hat Linux)

```
ping -s XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX 479
```

(For Solaris)



Note

- The “l” of the “-l” entry is an alphabetic lower case “l” (el).
- The subnet mask and gateway address are set to “0.0.0.0”.

Once you have finished configuring the settings, use Remote UI or the printer operation panel to change the subnet mask and gateway address to the printer to match the settings of the network you are using.

(→ [P.5-12](#), [P.5-15](#))

This completes the preparation for configuring the printer protocol settings.

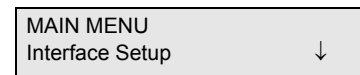
■ Configuring the Printer Using the Printer Operation Panel

Network information can be configuring using the printer operation panel. You can set the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway.

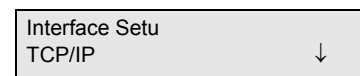
- 1** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 2** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Interface Setup** then press [▼].



- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **TCP/IP**, then press [▼].



- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **IP Setting**, then press [▼].



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 5** Press the [◀] or [▶] buttons to select **IP Address**, and then press the [▼] button.

IP Setting IP Address	↓
--------------------------	---

- 6** Press the [◀] or [▶] buttons to select the number within the IP address to change, and then press **OK** button.

IP Address =0.0.0.0

- 7** Press [◀] or [▶] to change the number to the IP address assigned to the printer, then press [▼] or **OK** button.

Each time you press the [▶] button the number increases by 1. The next number after **255** is **0**.

Each time you press the [▼] button the number decreases by 1. The next number after **0** is **255**.

IP Address =XXX.0.0.0

- 9** Press the [▲] button once, and then press the [◀] or [▶] buttons to select **Subnet Mask**, and then press the [▼] button.

IP Setting Subnet Mask	↓
---------------------------	---

- 10** Press [◀] or [▶] to select the number within the subnet mask to change, then press **OK** button.

Subnet Mask =0.0.0.0

- 11** Press [◀] or [▶] to change the value of the number to the subnet mask for the network you are using, then press **OK** button.

Each time you press the [▶] button the number increases by 1. The next number after **255** is **0**.

Each time you press the [◀] button the number decreases by 1. The next number after **0** is **255**.

Subnet Mask =XXX.0.0.0

- 12** Repeat [Step 10](#) to [11](#) to enter the subnet mask that the network is using.

Subnet Mask =255.255.255.0

Enter the default gateway.



Note

- If you press and hold the [◀] or [▶] button, the value increases or decreases in steps of 10.

- 8** Repeat [Step 6](#) to [7](#) to enter the IP address assigned to the printer.

IP Address =XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX

Enter the subnet mask.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 13** Press the [▲] button once, and then press the [◀] or [▶] button to select **Default G/W**, and then press the [▼] button.

```
IP Setting
Default G/W  ↓
```

- 14** Press [◀] or [▶] to select the number within default gateway to change, then press **OK** button.

```
Default G/W
=0.0.0.0
```

- 15** Press [◀] or [▶] to change the number to the IP address of the default gateway, then press **OK** button.

Each time you press the [▶] button the number increases by 1. The next number after **255** is **0**.

Each time you press the [◀] button the number decreases by 1. The next number after **0** is **255**.

```
Default G/W
=XXX.0.0.0
```

- 16** Repeat [Step 14](#) and [15](#) to enter the IP address of the default gateway.

Finally, you need to save the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway settings.

- 17** Press the **Online** button.

```
Default G/W
=XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
```

Store Setting is displayed.

- 18** Press the **OK** button.

If you want to abort the settings, press **Stop/Eject** button.

```
Store Setting
Ok?
```

The message **Storing** appears on the display and then the printer is restarted.

When finished, the printer returns **Online**.

If an error message is displayed, review the values of each of the settings, and correct the settings.

Important

- If you change the IP address, subnet mask, or default gateway, make sure you save the settings using [Step 18](#). If the settings are not saved, the entered values will not be enabled.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Configuring TCP/IP Protocol Settings

“Remote UI”, the software application built into the network interface of this printer, allows you to use a Web browser on your computer to monitor the status of the printer and perform the network information settings for the printer.

■ Setting the Protocol with Web Browser (Remote UI)

The procedure below describes how to use Remote UI to perform the network information settings.

Important

- You can use Netscape Navigator/Communicator 6.0 or later, or Internet Explorer 5.01 or later for the web browser. The Macintosh Safari web browser is not supported.
- You cannot connect to the printer via a proxy server. In an environment that uses a proxy server, add the printer IP address to **Exceptions** (addresses that do not use a proxy) in the web browser proxy server settings. (These settings vary depending on the network environment.)
- Configure the web browser to enable JavaScript and Cookies.
- If multiple Remote UIs are run at the same time, the last setting made will be used. It is recommended that only one Remote UI be started at a time.

Note

- When Remote UI is started using the printer name, make sure that the DNS settings in the DNS environment and on the network board have been set up correctly.

- 1 Start the Web Browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** or **Address** box, then press the **Enter** key.

`http:// <Printer IP Address or name> /`

Sample: `http://XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX/`

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

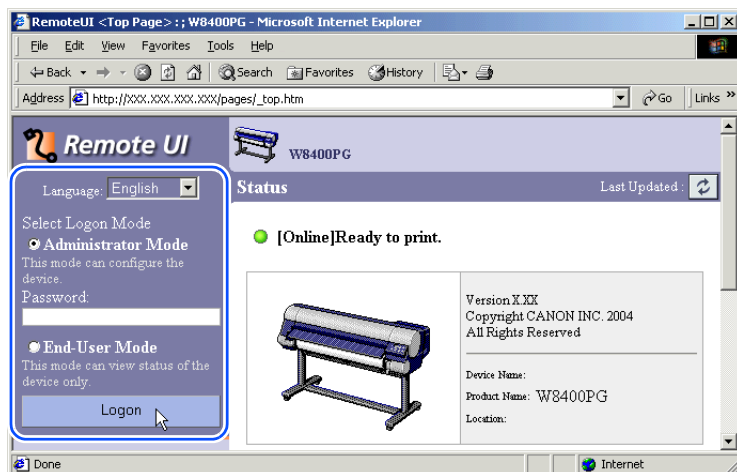
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

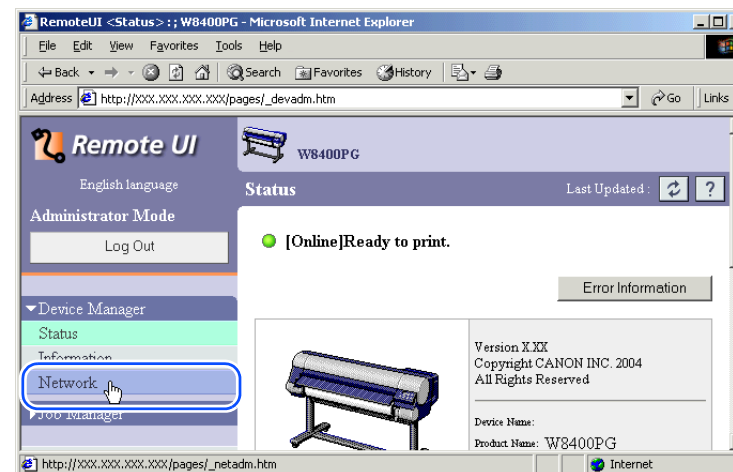
Index

2 Select **Administrator Mode** and then click the **Logon** button.



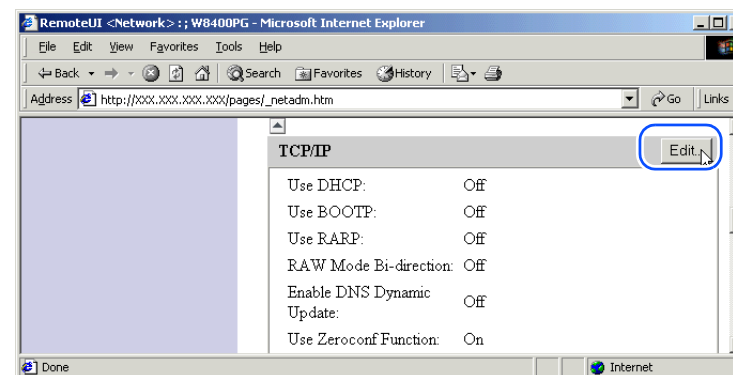
Remote UI starts.

3 Select **Network** from the **Device Manager** menu on the left.



The **Network** page appears.

4 Click the **Edit** button to the right of TCP/IP protocol.



The **Edit TCP/IP Protocol Settings** page opens.

Note

- If a password has been setup on the printer, enter the password and then press the **Logon** button. If a password has not been setup, you do not need to enter a password.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

5 Configure each of the settings.

To dynamically obtain an IP address, check the checkbox for the method to use: **Use DHCP**, **Use BOOTP**, or **Use RARP**. If the IP address is static, clear all three check boxes.

Note

- If the printer IP address is configured to use DHCP, BOOTP, and RARP, a check is performed to see which of DHCP, BOOTP, and RARP is available when the printer is turned on or reset, and the IP address is allocated using first available method. If you clear the checkmark from **Use DHCP**, **Use BOOTP**, or **Use RARP**, that particular method will not be checked. If none of the address allocation methods are available, the printer is assigned the IP address that was configured in the **IP Address** field.
- The check to determine whether DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP are available requires approximately 1 to 2 minutes to execute. It is therefore recommended that you clear the checkboxes for the methods that are not available.
- When DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP is used to assign the IP address, the server for that protocol in the network must be running.
- If you are using a DNS server, tick the **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** checkbox, and then enter the **Primary DNS Server Address**, **Secondary DNS Server Address**, **DNS Host Name**, and **DNS Domain Name**.
- Enter the **DNS Host Name** using English letters, numbers, and hyphens to a maximum of 63 characters. Numbers and hyphens cannot be used as the first character, and hyphens cannot be used as the last character.
- Enter the **DNS Domain Name** using English letters, numbers, hyphens and periods to a maximum of 64 characters. Numbers, hyphens, and periods cannot be used as the first character, and hyphens and periods cannot be used as the last character.

6 Click the **OK** button.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

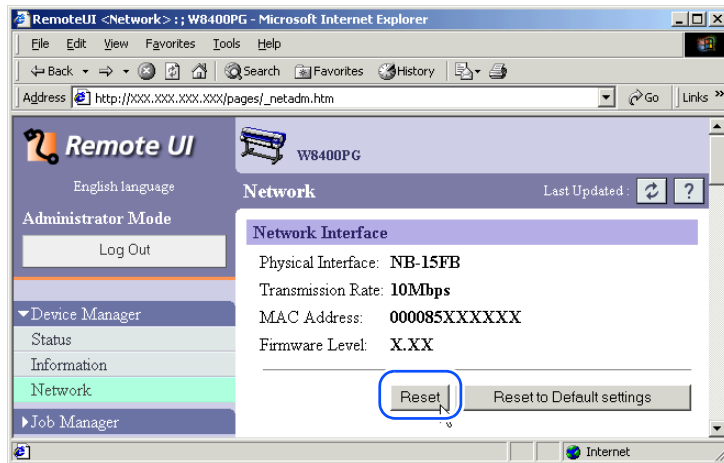
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

7 When you return to **Network** under **Device Manager**, press the **Reset** button.



The printer network interface restarts and the settings are enabled.

Configuring the Printer for Sharing

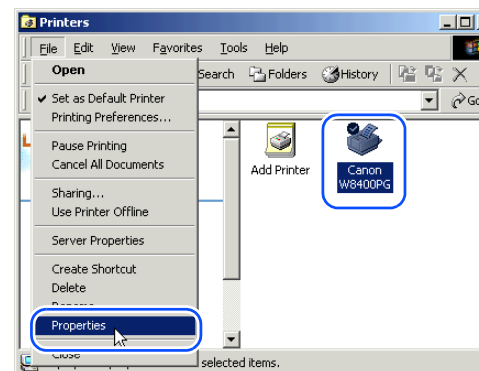
The network printer can be managed efficiently by setting up a Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, or Windows NT 4.0 computer on the network as a print server using the following procedure. If you setup a printer server, print jobs are managed by the print server. Further, if an alternative driver has already been installed on the server, each computer on the network can install the printer driver via the network.

Important

- The shared printer settings should be made by the network system administrator.

1 Open the **Sharing** sheet of the Printer Properties dialog box.

- ▼ Select **Settings / Printers** from the **Start** menu.
- ▼ Select the icon of the printer to use, then select **Sharing...** from the **File** menu.

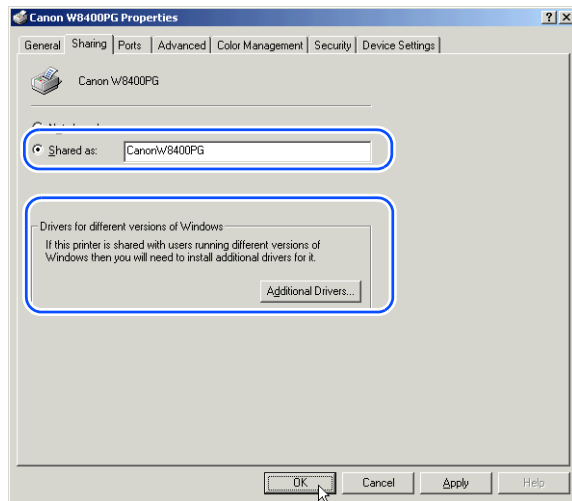
Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

2 Configuring the Printer for Sharing.

- ▼ Select **Shared as** then enter the desired share name of the printer.
- ▼ Click the **Additional Drivers...** button (click the **Alternative Drivers** button in Windows NT 4.0) and select the printer driver to install.
- ▼ Press the **OK** button. If you are installing additional (alternative) drivers, a screen appears for you to enter the location of the printer driver files. Insert the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer into the CD-ROM drive and select the folder that contains the drivers.



To install the printer drivers on other computers, select **Network Printer** in the connection type screen in Printer Wizard and select the shared printer from the print server that you setup.



Note

- If the printer is shared from a Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, or Windows 2000 computer with IIS installed, you can install the “DSE (Device Status Extension)” contained on the included User Software CD-ROM, which allows you to view printer information and manage print jobs using a web browser from client computers. For the “DSE” installation method, refer to the Readme file in the “DSE” folder on the User Software CD-ROM.

Important

- If you are using Windows NT 4.0, Service Pack 6 or later will need to be installed on the computer in order to use the alternative drivers function.

This completes the printer sharing settings.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Macintosh Network Settings

This section describes how to connect to a network using AppleTalk, IP Print, Canon IP (GARO) and Zeroconf and provides procedures for setting up the printer for use.

Procedures Required for a Macintosh Network

The following is a summary of the procedures required to setup the printer for use on a Macintosh network.

The following procedures should be performed by the network system administrator.

1 Installing the Network Interface Board → Quick Start Guide

First, install the optional network interface board.

2 Connecting the LAN Cable → P.5-5

Connect the LAN port in the printer to the hub using a network cable.

3 Configuring a Macintosh → P.5-21

- Check the Macintosh network settings.

4 Configuring the AppleTalk Protocol → P.5-25

To connect to the printer using AppleTalk, enable the AppleTalk protocol on the printer. To set the printer name and zone, or to connect to the printer using IP print or Canon IP (GARO), set the printer IP address using the operation panel before configuring the protocol settings using the web browser.

5 Install the Printer Driver → P.5-31

Follow the procedure in the Quick Start Guide to install Canon imagePROGRAF printer driver on the Macintosh.



Note

- This section describes examples where the printer is connected to the Ether port (**built-in Ethernet**) which is standard on Macintosh computers. To connect to the printer using wireless LAN or an expansion network interface board, select the port name.
- If you are using Mac OS 8.6/9.x, the printer can be used over the **IP Print** network. IP Print uses the TCP/IP protocol. For **IP Print (Auto)**, if the TCP/IP settings have been enabled on the Macintosh computer, the printer can be used simply by connecting it to the LAN. To connect to the printer using **IP Print**, first save the IP address of the printer using **Registering IP Address...** in **Chooser**, and then select **IP Print** and the printer name.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- If you are using Mac OS X v10.1, the printer can be used over the “Canon IP (GARO)” network. Canon IP (GARO) uses the TCP/IP protocol. If the TCP/IP settings have been enabled on the Macintosh computer and printer, save the printer IP address to make the printer available.
- If you are using Mac OS X v10.2.5 or later, the Zeroconf function can be used. The Zeroconf function uses the TCP/IP protocol. If the TCP/IP settings have been enabled on the Macintosh computer, the printer can be used simply by connecting it to the LAN. “Zeroconf” is an abbreviation for “Zero Configuration”, and settings such as IP address and DNS service name are not required.

Configuring a Macintosh

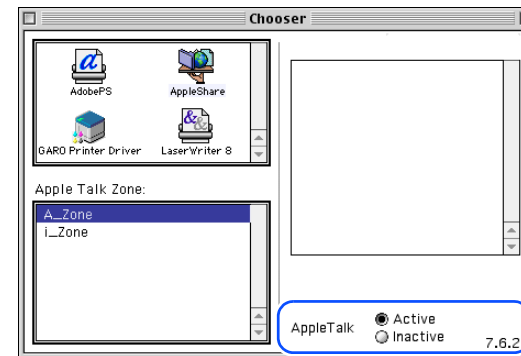
■ Setting the AppleTalk Network Functions

- For Mac OS 8.6/9.x

Use **Chooser** and the **AppleTalk** item in **Control Panel** to confirm the Macintosh network settings.

1 Confirm that AppleTalk can be used.

- ▼ From the **Apple** menu select **Chooser**.
- ▼ Confirm that **Active** is selected for **AppleTalk**. If **Inactive** is selected, select **Active**.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

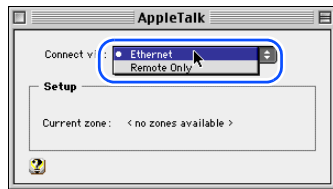
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

2 Confirm that Ethernet is selected for the AppleTalk connection.

- ▼ Start **AppleTalk** on **Control Panels**.
- ▼ Select **Ethernet**.



- ▼ Close **AppleTalk** to save the setting.

This completes the AppleTalk network settings for a Macintosh.

Important

- Select **Printer Port** if the computer is connected to Ethernet via LocalTalk.

- For Mac OS X

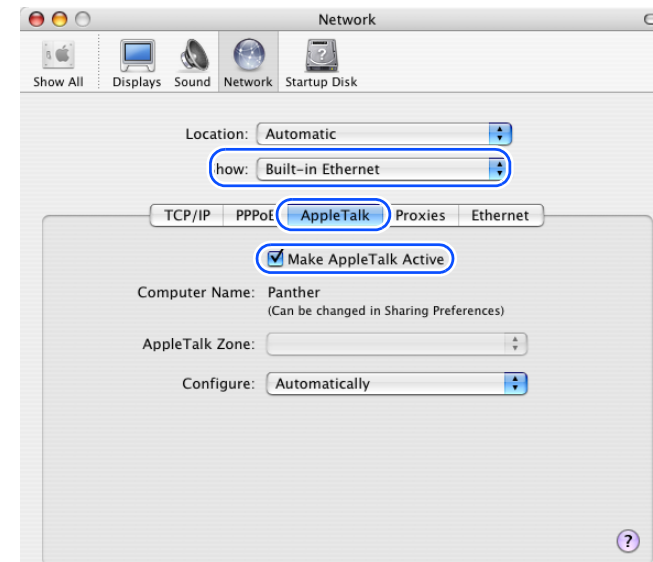
Confirm the AppleTalk settings under **Network** in **System Preferences**.

1 Open **Network** under **System Preferences**.

2 Set the **Show** setting to **Built-in Ethernet**

3 Select the **AppleTalk** sheet and confirm that **Make AppleTalk Active** is selected.

If this item is not checked, select it and then click the **Apply Now** button.



4 Close **Network** to save the settings.

This completes the AppleTalk network settings for a Macintosh.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ TCP/IP Network Function Settings

Confirm the operating system TCP/IP function settings for the Remote UI and PI Print connection, Canon IP (GARO) connection, or Zeroconf connection.

● For Mac OS 8.6/9.x

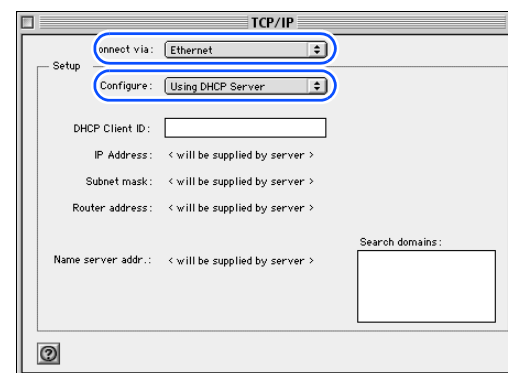
Use **Chooser** and **TCP/IP** on the **Control Panels** to confirm the TCP/IP network settings.

Important

- If a static IP address has already been allocated to the Macintosh computer you are using, you can keep using the current settings. No further configuration is required. For network settings, consult your network administrator.
- To connect to the printer using IP Print (auto), the printer and computer need to be connected to the same network segment. It is not possible to connect to a printer on another network via a router using IP Print (auto). For network settings, consult your network administrator.
- If the server cannot be found when **Using DHCP Server** is selected, then “169.254.xxx.xxx” is set as the Link Local Address. In this case, start the DHCP server on the network, or consult your network administrator.

1 Confirm that TCP/IP connection method is set to Ethernet.

- ▼ Start **TCP/IP** on **Control Panels**.
- ▼ For the **Connect via** select **Ethernet**.



- ▼ Set **Using DHCP Server** for **Configure**.
- ▼ Close **TCP/IP** to save the setting.

This completes the TCP/IP network settings for a Macintosh.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- For Mac OS X

Confirm the TCP/IP settings under **Network** in **System Preferences**.

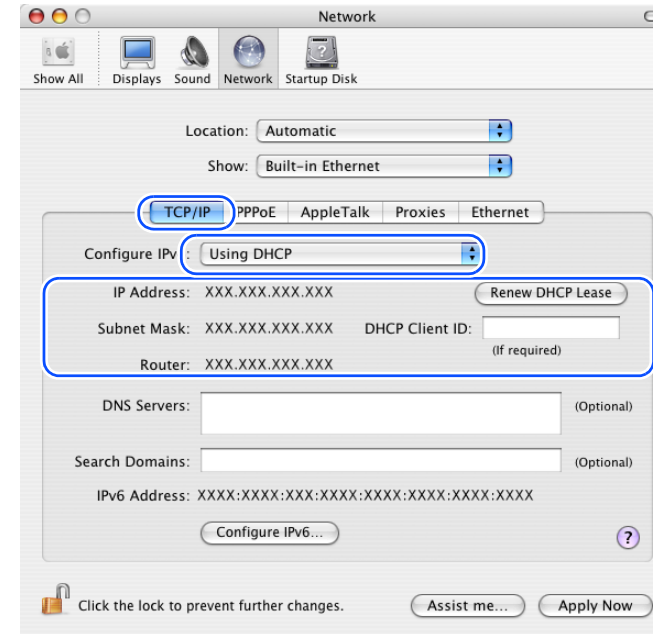
Important

- To connect to the printer using the Zeroconf function, the printer and computer need to be connected to the same network segment. It is not possible to connect to a printer on another network via a router using Zeroconf. For network settings, consult your network administrator.
- If the server cannot be found when **Using DHCP** is selected, then “169.254.xxx.xxx” is set as the Link Local Address. In this case, start the DHCP server on the network, or consult your network administrator.

1 Open **Network** under **System Preferences**.

2 Set the **Show** setting to **Built-in Ethernet**.

3 Select the **TCP/IP** panel and confirm that the IP address, subnet mask, and router settings are valid.



4 Close **Network** to save the settings.

This completes the TCP/IP network settings for a Macintosh.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Configuring the AppleTalk Protocol

The AppleTalk protocol is disabled in the factory default printer settings. To connect to the printer using AppleTalk, the AppleTalk protocol needs to be enabled on the printer. The printer protocol settings can be configured using the operation panel or a web browser (Remote UI).

● Remote UI (→ [P.5-25](#))

The AppleTalk settings can be configured using a web browser from a Macintosh computer on which TCP/IP has already been setup. To configure the settings, set the printer IP address using the operation panel, and then configure the protocol settings using a web browser. (→ [P.5-25](#))

● Printer Operation Panel (→ [P.5-30](#))

You can configure the AppleTalk settings using the printer operation panel.

Important

- Before configuring the AppleTalk settings, verify that the printer is switched on and connected to the network.

■ Setting the Protocol Using a Web Browser (Remote UI)

Important

- You can use Netscape Navigator/Communicator 6.0 or later, or Internet Explorer 5.01 or later for the web browser. The Macintosh Safari web browser is not supported.
- You cannot connect to the printer via a proxy server. In an environment that uses a proxy server, add the printer IP address to **Exceptions** (addresses that do not use a proxy) in the web browser proxy server settings. (These settings vary depending on the network environment.)
- Enable JavaScript and Cookies in the web browser.
- If multiple remote UIs are run at the same time, the last setting made will be used. It is recommended that you only start Remote UI once.

Note

- When Remote UI is started using the printer name, make sure that the DNS settings for the DNS environment and board have been set up correctly.
- If you are using the Zeroconf function to connect to the printer on a system using Mac OS X Ver. 10.2.5 or later, you can use the following procedure to start Remote UI.
 1. Open the **Printer Setup Utility**.
 2. Select the name of this printer from the print list and click the **Add** button.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

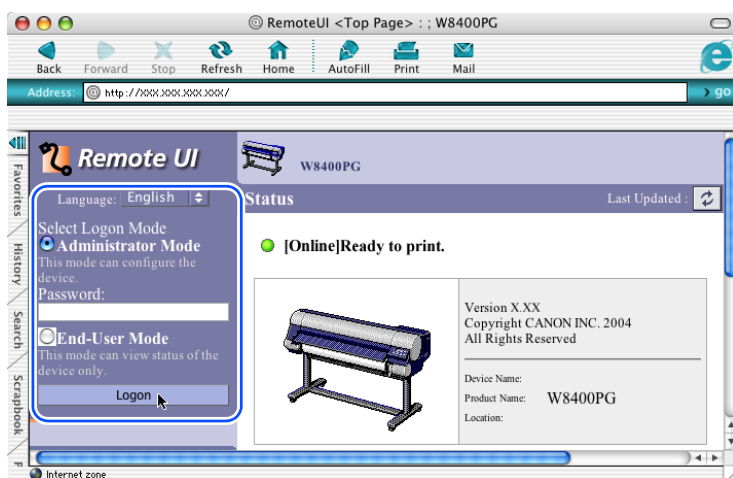
Index

- 1 Start the Web Browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** or **Address** box, then press the **Enter** key.

http:// <Printer IP Address or name> /

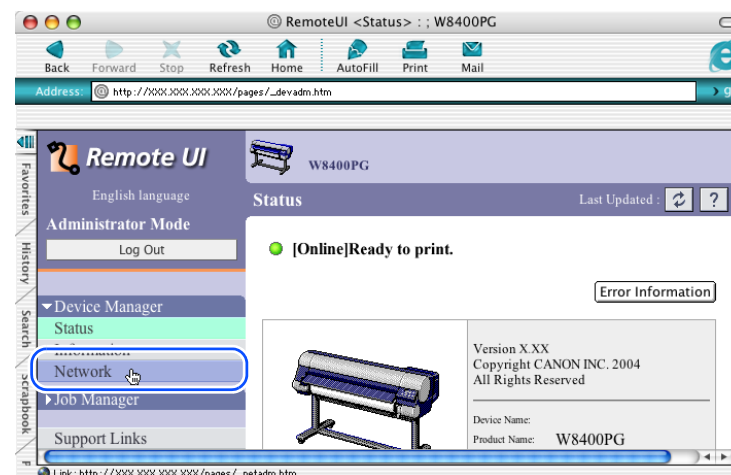
Sample:http://XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX/

- 2 Select **Administrator Mode** and then click the **Logon** button.



Remote UI starts.

- 3 Select **Network** from the **Device Manager** menu on the left.



The **Network** page appears.

If you are using the Zeroconf function in MacOS X or **IP Print (Auto)** in MacOS 8.6/9.x to connect to the printer, go to [Step 9](#).

Note

- If a password has been setup on the printer, enter the password and then press the **Logon** button. If a password has not been setup, you do not need to enter a password.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

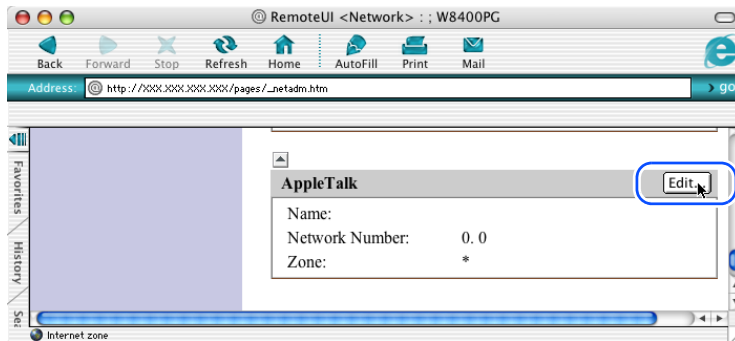
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

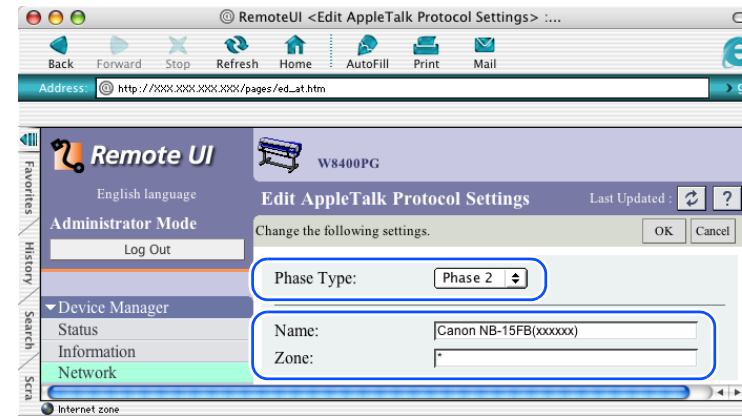
- 4** To configure the AppleTalk protocol settings, click the **Edit** button to the right of **AppleTalk**.



The **Edit AppleTalk Protocol Settings** page is displayed.

If you are using the Zeroconf function in MacOS X or **IP Print (Auto)** in MacOS 8.6/9.x to connect to the printer, go to [Step 9](#).

- 5** Set the **Phase Type** to **Phase 2**.



Note

- If **Disabled** is selected, the printer will not be recognized by the AppleTalk network.

- 6** Enter the name of the printer on the network in the **Name** field.

Enter the printer name displayed in Chooser (Mac OS 8.6/9.x) or the name displayed in Print Setup Utility (Print Center) (Mac OS X).



Important

- If more than one printer is in the same zone, be sure to assign a unique name to each printer.



Note

- The initial (default) network phase **Name** is “Canon NB 15FB (xxxxxx)”, where xxxxxx is the 6-digit MAC address of the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- If you change the **Name**, use 31 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters or less. Note that the following single-byte characters cannot be used: @, *, :, =.

7 If a zone has been setup on the network, enter the name of zone where the printer belongs.

If no zones have been setup, then leave the asterisk "*" entry (default zone) as it is.

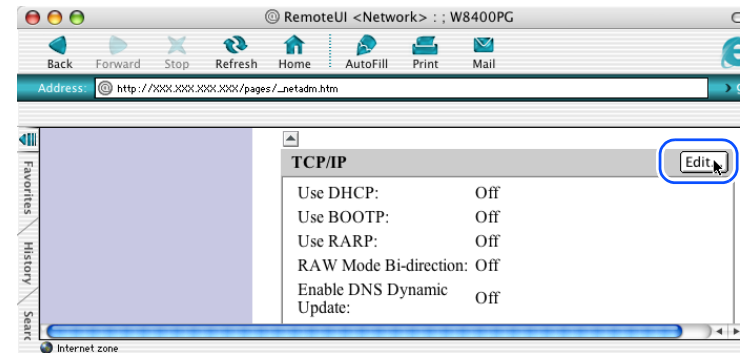
Important

- Make sure you enter the correct zone name in single-byte characters. If the zone name you enter is different from the zone setting, the Macintosh computer will not recognize the printer. For zone names, consult your network administrator.

8 Click the **OK** button.

If you are using AppleTalk only, go to [Step 13](#).

9 If you are using the Zeroconf function to connect to the printer, click the **Edit** button to the right of **TCP/IP**.



The **Edit Apple Talk Protocol Settings** page opens.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

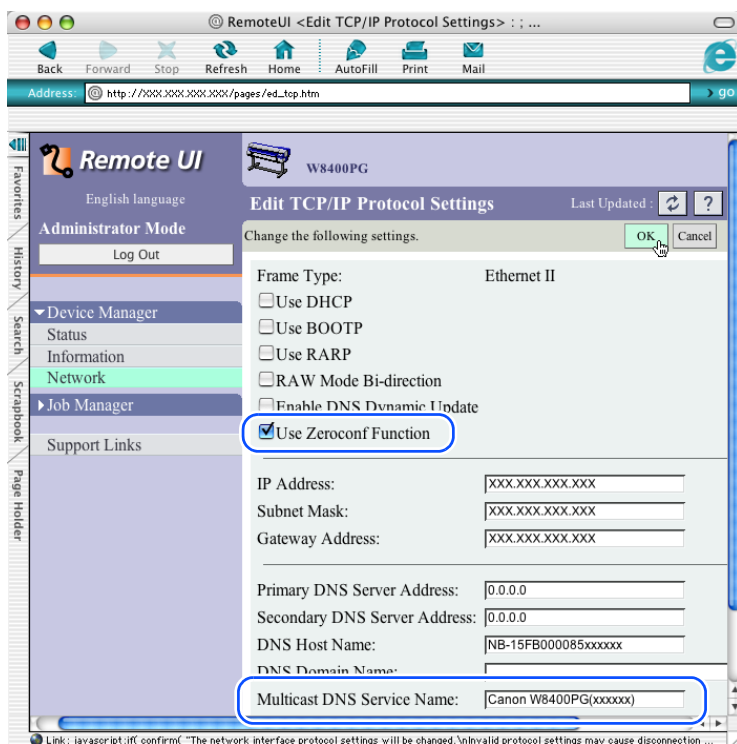
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

10 Click the **Use Zeroconf Function** check box on.



11 Enter the name of the printer on the network into the **Multicast DNS Service Name** box.

Enter the printer name displayed in Chooser (Mac OS 8.6/9.x) or the name displayed in Print Center (Mac OS X).

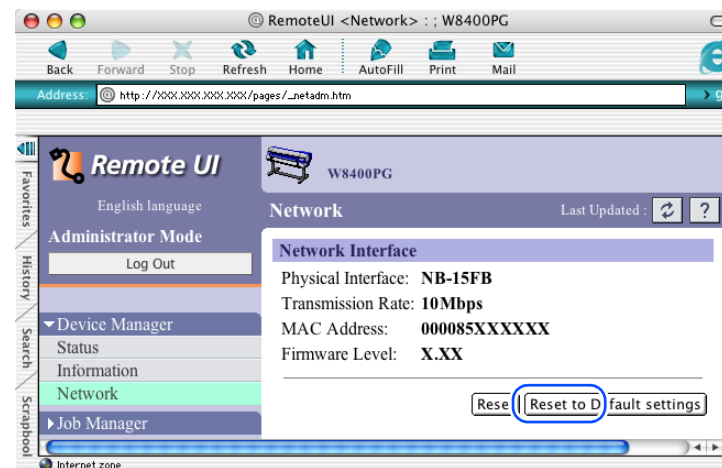


Note

- You can change the Multicast DNS Service name with up to 63 characters (including hyphens, spaces).

12 Click the **OK** button.

13 When you return to the **Network** screen of **Device Manager**, click the **Reset** button.



The printer network interface restarts and the settings are enabled.

This completes the protocol settings for the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

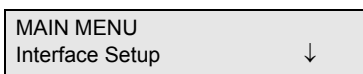
■ Configuring the Printer Using the Printer Operation Panel

You can use the printer operation panel to configure the AppleTalk protocol.

1 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Interface Setup** then press [▼].



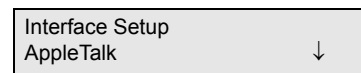
3 Use [◀] or [▶] to select **AppleTalk** then press [▼].



4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **On**, then press **OK** button.



5 Press the **Online** button.



6 Press the **OK** button.

If you want to abort the setting, press **Stop/Eject** button.



After **Storing** appears on the display, the printer is restarted.

When completed, the printer returns to **Online** or **Offline** mode.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Install the Printer Driver

After completing the printer protocol settings, install the printer driver on every Macintosh that will be used for printing and configure the print destination settings.

■ Installing the Printer Driver

Printer drivers compatible with the printer must be installed in order to print. Installing the Printer Driver. (→ Quick Start Guide)

■ Selecting a Printer

● For Mac OS 8.6/9.x

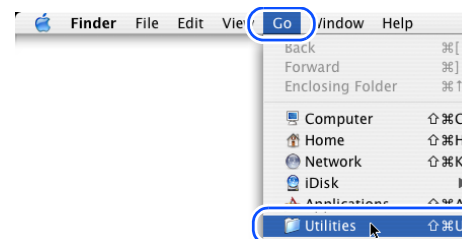
Select the printer using the Chooser to complete the settings. Set the **Destination** to **AppleTalk**, **IP Print**, or **IP Print (Auto)**. (→ Quick Start Guide)

● For Mac OS X

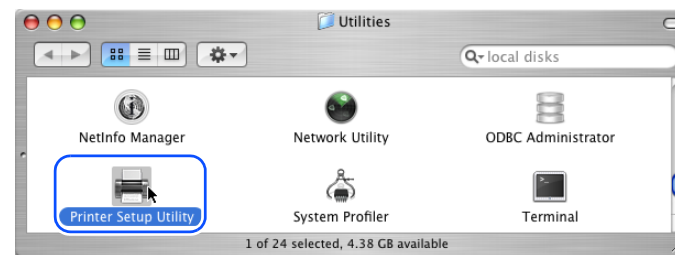
For Mac OS X, open the printer settings utility (print center) and then add the printer using **Add** to configure the printer. The connection can be set to **AppleTalk**, **Canon IP (GARO)**, or the Zeroconf function.

1 Make sure that the printer is on.

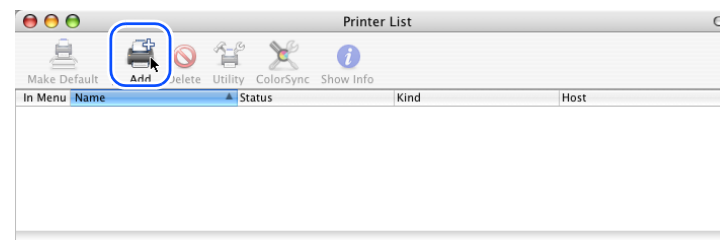
2 After the Macintosh has restarted, open Finder and select **Utilities** or **Applications** from the **Go** menu.



3 Open the **Utilities** folder then open **Printer Setup Utility**.



4 If the name of the printer is not in the **Printer List**, click the **Add** icon.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

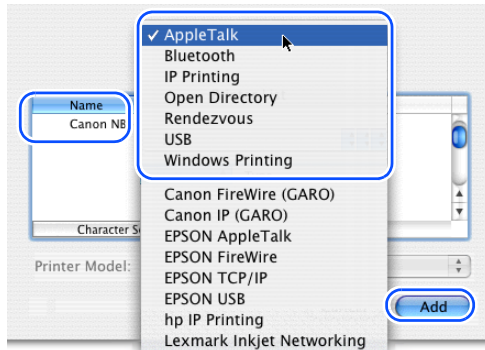
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 5** From the connection destination menu, select **AppleTalk**, **Canon IP (GARO)**, or **Zeroconf** for the network connection, select the name of the printer from the displayed list, then click the **Add** button.



This completes the printer selection.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

NetWare Settings (Windows)

The chapter describes the configuration procedures for using a printer connected to a NetWare network.

Procedures Required for a NetWare Network

The following is a summary of the procedures required to setup the printer for use on a NetWare network.

The following procedure should be performed by the network system administrator.

1 [Installing the network interface board](#) → Quick Start Guide

First, install the optional network interface board.

2 [Connecting the LAN Cable](#) → P.5-5

Connect the LAN port of the printer to the hub using a network cable.

3 [Setting the Printer Frame Type](#) → P.5-34

Set the printer frame type. Use the following software to configure the printer so that it can communicate with the computer you are using.

- GARO Device Setup Utility (Canon software application provided with the printer.)
- Printer Operation Panel

4 [Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#) → P.5-37

Configure the NetWare print service. You can configure the settings from a computer using the following software.

- NWADMIN or PCONSOLE (Novell software applications provided with NetWare)

5 [Setting NetWare Protocol](#) → P.5-40

Setup the printer protocols. Setup the printer protocols using a web browser on a computer on the network.

- Web Browser (Remote UI)

6 [Configuring the Computer for NetWare](#) → P.5-44

Perform these settings on every computer that will use the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Setting the Printer Frame Type

The printer frame type must be setup so that the computer you are using and the printer can communicate before you can setup the printer protocol. Configure the settings using the following software.

- GARO Device Setup Utility (→ [P.5-34](#))
- Printer Operation Panel (→ [P.5-35](#))

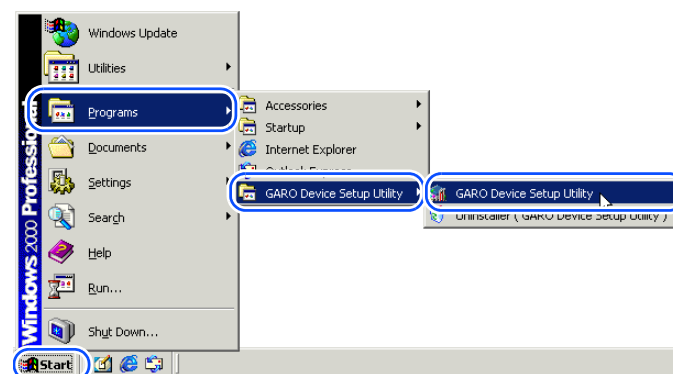
Important

- To use the GARO Device Setup Utility, the GARO Device Setup Utility needs to be installed on the computer you are using. Install the GARO Device Setup Utility for the administrator on the computer you are using. (→ [P.5-34](#))
- Before setting the printer frame type, confirm that the printer is switched on and connected to the network.

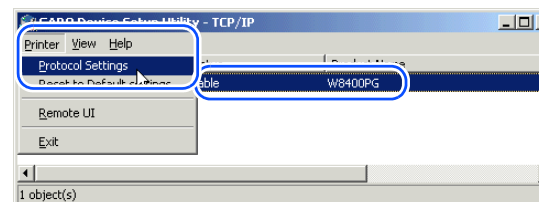
■ Setting the frame type with GARO Device Setup Utility

If you are using a Windows computer, use the “GARO Device Setup Utility” (the software utility provided with the printer) to configure the printer network settings.

- 1** Select **Programs / GARO Device Setup Utility / GARO Device Setup Utility** from the **Start** menu.



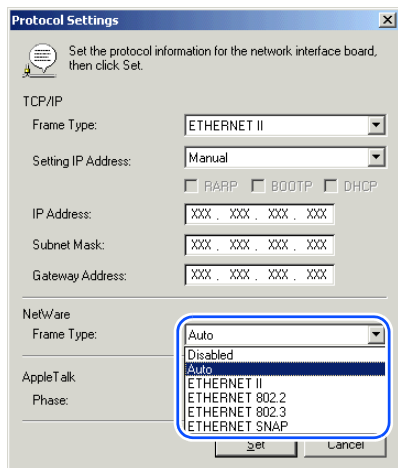
- 2** Select from the name of the printer you want to setup from the list, then select **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

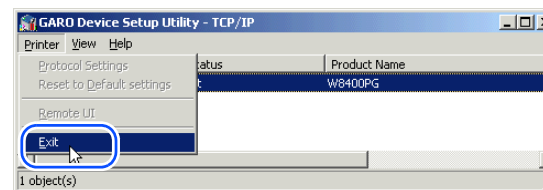
Contents

Index

3 Set **NetWare Frame Type** to the frame type you are using, set **TCP/IP Frame Type** to **ETHERNET II**, enter the **IP Address** assigned to the printer, the Subnet Mask and Gateway Address, then click the **Set** button.



5 When you have finished configuring the settings, select **Exit** from the **Printer** menu.



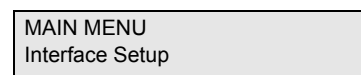
■ **Configuring the Printer Using the Printer Operation Panel**

The NetWare network information can be configured using the printer operation panel.

1 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Interface Setup** then press [▼].



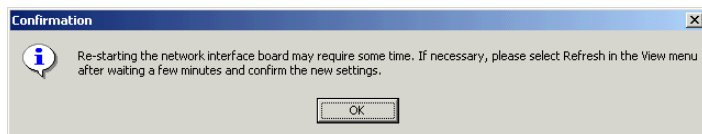
3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **NetWare**, then press [▼].



Note

- The IP address needs to be configured here so that you can configure the printer protocol settings using a web browser (Remote UI).

4 Click the **OK** button when the confirmation message is displayed.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Netware**, then press [▼].

```
NetWare
NetWare      ↓
```

- 5** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **On**, then press **OK**.

```
NetWare
On
```

After the equals mark (=) appears, the display returns to the NetWare menu.

- 6** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Frame Type**, then press [▼].

```
NetWare
Frame Type   ↓
```

- 7** Press [◀] or [▶] to select the frame type you are using, then press **OK** button.

The available frame type selections are **Auto Detect**, **Ethernet 2**, **Ethernet 802.2**, **Ethernet 802.3** and **Ethernet SNAP**.

```
Frame Type
Ethernet 802.3
```

After the equals mark (=) appears, the display returns to the NetWare menu.

- 8** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Print Service**, then press [▼].

```
NetWare
Print Service ↓
```

- 9** Press [◀] or [▶] to select the print service then press [▼].

The available selections for Print Service are **BindaryPserver**, **Rprinter**, **NDSPserver**, and **Nprinter**.

```
Print Service
RPrinter
```

After the equals mark (=) appears, the display returns to the NetWare menu.

- 10** Press the **Online** button.

```
NetWare
Print Service ↓
```

- 11** Press the **OK** button.

If you want to abort the setting, press **Stop/Eject** button for one second or more.

```
Store Setting
Ok?
```

After **Storing** appears on the display, the printer is restarted.

When completed, the printer returns to **Online** or **Offline** mode.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Setting Up a NetWare Print Service

To print using a NetWare network, print services such as print servers, queues, etc., need to be setup. The print service settings can be made from the computer you are using with the following software. Use the software that is easiest for you.

- NWADMIN or PCONSOLE (Novell software applications provided with NetWare)

Important

- If you configure the print service settings using NWADMIN, Novell Client (the Novell NetWare client) must be installed as the client software application.
- This section describes an example of the configuration procedure using NetWare print service. The configuration procedure may change depending on the environment you are using.

■ Types of Print Services

Before performing the print service settings, be sure to read the description below then select the printer service type.

Note

- With NetWare 5.1J/6.0, NDPS can also be used as the print service. If using NDPS, use the Novell printer gateway, which is bundled with NetWare. This manual does not explain how to setup NDPS, so refer to the NetWare manual.

- NDS (Novell Directory Service) and Bindery
Both NDS and bindery are supported. Select whichever mode is compatible with your network environment.
- Queue Server Mode and Remote Printer Mode
Both Queue Server Mode and Remote Printer Mode are supported.
- Queue Server Mode
If you are using queue server mode, all print server functions are supported, so there is no need for additional print server hardware or software. In NDS queue server mode (NDS PServer), printing is performed using the NDS print server. In bindery queue server mode (Binary PServer), printing is performed using the bindery print server. Further, in queue server mode, a NetWare user license is required for each network interface used.
- Remote Printer Mode
If using remote printer mode, the printer is controlled by the NetWare print server. Consequently, a NetWare print server is required. In NDS remote printer mode (NPrinter), printing is performed using the NDS print server, and in bindery remote printer mode (RPrinter), printing is performed using the bindery print server.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Setting Up the Print Server With NWADMIN, PCONSOLE

- If You Are Using NDS Queue Server Mode or Remote Printer Mode

1 Log into NetWare as the System Administrator, or as a user with equivalent access rights, then start NWADMIN.

2 Execute the Quick Setup.

- ▼ Select **Print Services Quick Setup** from the **Tools** menu.
- ▼ For the **Print Server Name**, enter the desired name. If you are using an existing name, press the button on the right and select from the list.
- ▼ Enter the desired name in printer **Name**.
- ▼ If you are using queue server mode, select **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. If you are using remote printer mode, Select **Parallel** in **Type**, press the **Communications...** button, and then set the **Ports** to **LPT1**, and set **Manual Load** to **Connection Type**.
- ▼ For the print queue **Name** enter the desired name.
- ▼ Enter the volume object (i.e., the object that represents the physical volume on the network) in which to create the queue in **Volume**. Press the button on the right to select from a list.

- ▼ Perform any other settings as required, and then click the **OK** button.



Note

- The name of the print server is required when configuring the printer protocol settings so be sure to note down the printer name.
- If you are performing a quick setup, the printer is allocated printer number **0**. If you are using queue server mode, do not change the printer number from **0**.

3 Set the password.

- ▼ Select the print server created in [Step 2](#), then right-click **Details**.
- ▼ Click the **Change Password** button to open the password entry screen, then enter the desired password.
- ▼ Click the **OK** button to close the password entry screen.
- ▼ Click the **OK** or **Cancel** button to close the **Details** screen.

4 Follow the procedure below to start the print server if you are using Remote Printer Mode.

- ▼ To use the NetWare file server as the print server, enter "LOAD PSERVER.NLM" on the file server then press the **Enter** key.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index



Note

- The step to use the NetWare file server as the print server is not required if you intend to use Queue Server Mode.

This completes the NetWare print service settings. Next, setup the printer protocols. (→ [P.5-40](#))

- If You Are Using the Bindery Queue Server Mode or Remote Printer Mode

- 1** Log into NetWare as the Supervisor, then start PCONSOLE.
- 2** Switch to the Bindery Mode.
- 3** If the print server has not been created, use the following procedure to create the print server.
 - ▼ From **Available Options** select **Quick Setup** then press the **Enter** key.
 - ▼ Enter the name of the print server to create, the name of the new printer, and name of the queue.



Note

- The name of the print server is needed when you configure the printer protocol settings, so be sure to note down the printer name.

4 Set the printer type.

- ▼ If using queue server mode, select **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. If you are using remote printer mode, set **Printer Type** to **Parallel**, and then set **Position** to **Manual Load**.
- ▼ Press the **ESC** key.
- ▼ When the confirmation message appears, select **Yes** then press the **Enter** key.

5 Set the password.

- ▼ From **Available Options** select **Print Servers**, and then press the **Enter** key.
- ▼ Select the print server created in [Step 2](#), and then press the **Enter** key.
- ▼ Select **Password**, and then press the **Enter** key. When the password entry screen opens, enter the desired password, and then press the **Enter** key.

6 Press **ESC** several times to display the confirmation to close PCONSOLE, then select **Yes** to close PCONSOLE.

This completes the NetWare print service settings. Next, configure the printer protocols. (→ [P.5-40](#))

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Setting NetWare Protocol

The printer protocol settings can be configured from a computer using a web browser (Remote UI). First set the printer IP address. (→ P.5-7)

■ Configuring the Protocol Using a Web Browser (Remote UI)

Important

- You can use Netscape Navigator/Communicator 6.0 or later, or Internet Explorer 5.01 or later for the web browser.
- You cannot connect to the printer via a proxy server. In an environment that uses a proxy server, add the printer IP address to **Exceptions** (addresses that do not use a proxy) in the web browser proxy server settings. (These settings vary depending on the network environment.)
- Enable the JavaScript and Cookies settings in the web browser.
- If multiple remote UIs are run at the same time, the last setting to be made will be used. It is recommended that you only run one remote UI at a time.

Note

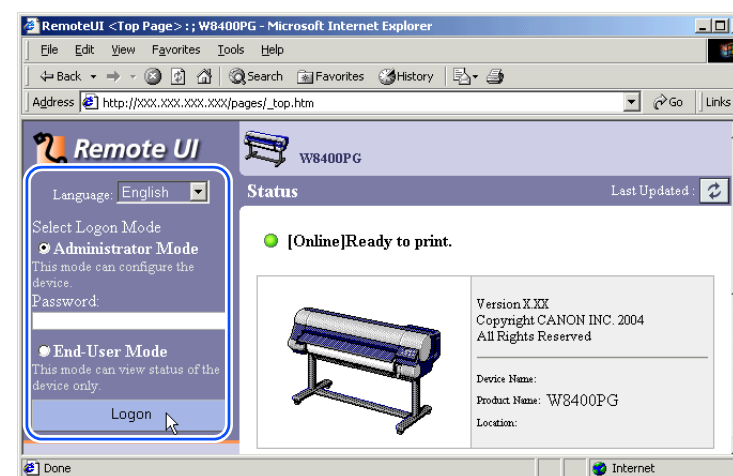
- When the Remote UI is started using the printer name, make sure that the DNS settings for the DNS environment and board have been set up correctly.
- If Remote UI is started and the print history is displayed as RPrinter/NPrinter, the **document name** and **user** information cannot be obtained. Consequently, the **document name** will only be displayed as “unknown”, and the **user** will only be displayed as “RPRINTER/NPRINTER”.

- 1 Start the Web Browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** or **Address** box, then press the **Enter** key.

`http:// <Printer IP Address or name> /`

Sample: `http://XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX/`

- 2 Select **Administrator Mode** and then click the **Logon** button.



Remote UI starts.

Note

- If a password has been setup on the printer, enter the password and then press the **Logon** button. If a password has not been setup, you do not need to enter a password.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

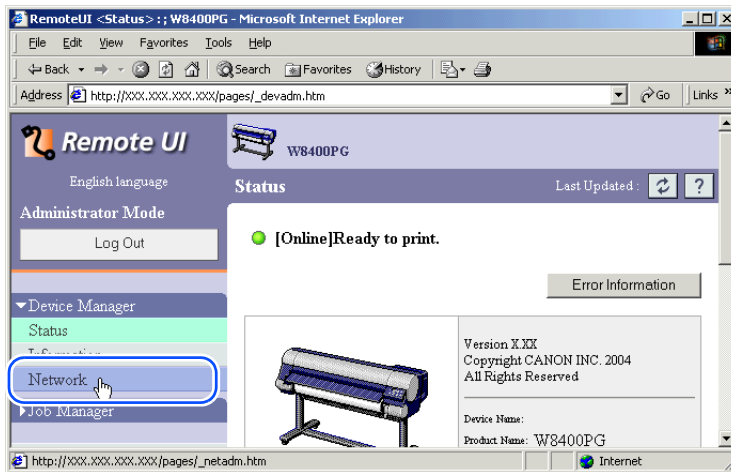
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

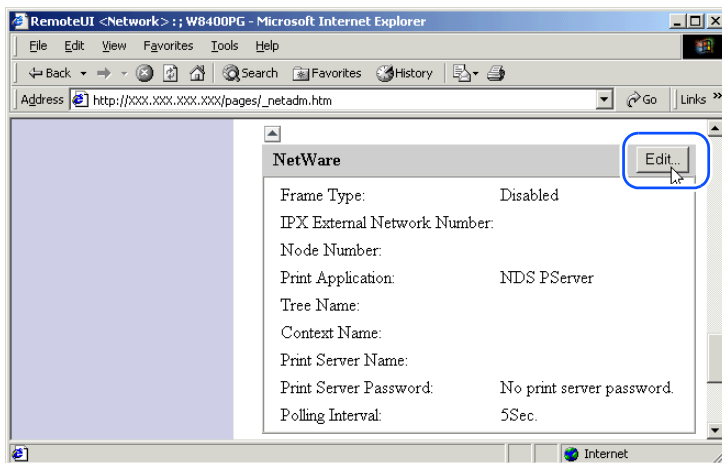
Index

- 3** Select **Network** from the **Device Manager** menu on the left.



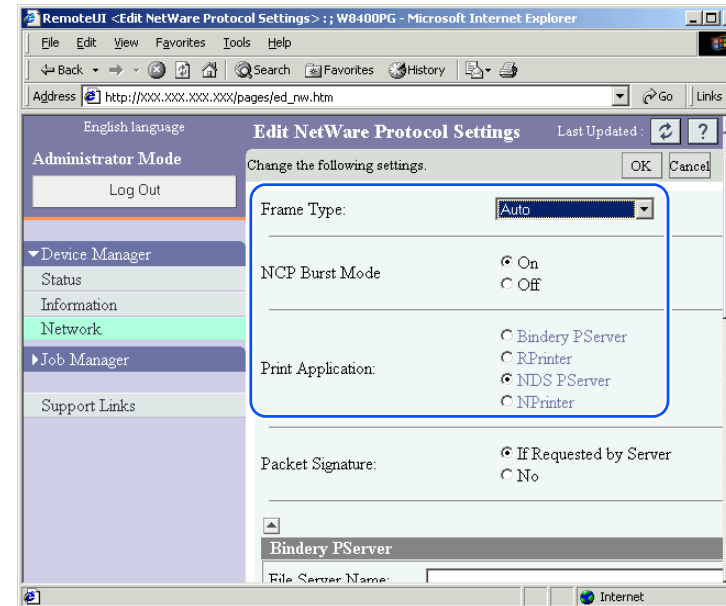
The **Network** page appears.

- 4** Click the **Edit** button to the right of **NetWare**.



The **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page appears.

- 5** Check the **Frame Type** box and make sure the setting is correct for your NetWare network.



- 6** If you intend to use burst mode, set **NCP Burst Mode** to **On**.



Note

- Burst mode is used in queue server mode to transfer data rapidly at very high speed during printing.
- Normally, leave this setting on.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

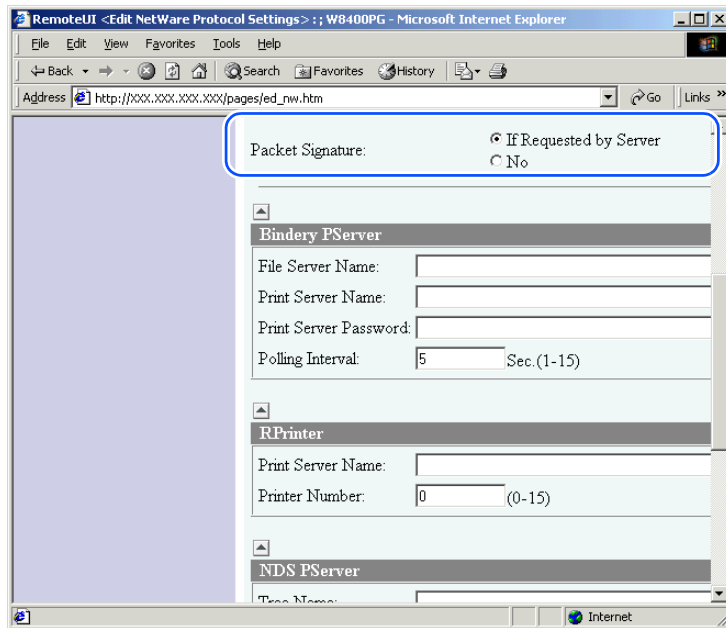
7 Set **Print Application** to the service to use.



Note

- Only one of the services selected here will be enabled. Multiple services cannot be enabled at the same time.

8 When using packet signing, set **Packet Signature to If Requested by Server**.



9 Perform the following settings as required for the selected service.

- **Bindery PServer Selected: Queue Server Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)**
 - ▼ Enter the file server name into **File Server Name**.
 - ▼ For **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)”. (→ P.5-37)
 - ▼ For **Print Server Password**, enter the print server password created in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)”. (→ P.5-37)
 - ▼ Set the **Polling Interval**. Set the interval at which to check the printer NetWare print queue.
- **RPrinter Selected: Remote Printer Mode (using a Bindery Print Server)**
 - ▼ For **Print Server Name**, enter the advertised name of the print server created in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)”. (→ P.5-37)
 - ▼ For **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number that you entered in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)”. (→ P.5-37)

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

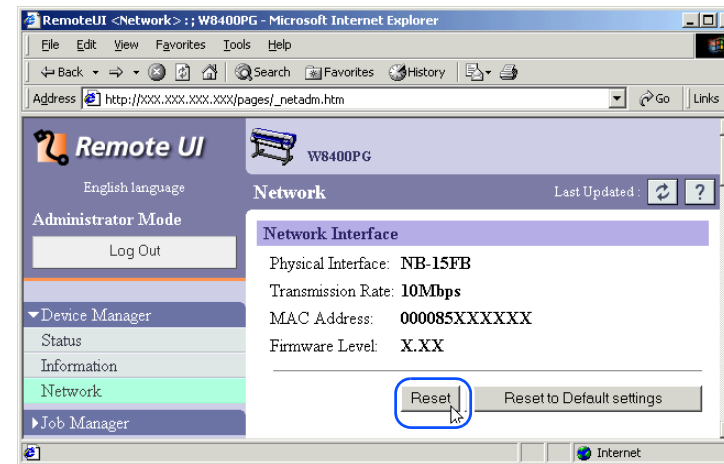
Contents

Index

- NDS PServer Selected: Queue Server Mode (Using an NDS Print Server)
 - ▼ Enter the **Tree Name** and **Context Name** for the tree and context name of the print server. Enter a context name of up to 255 characters.
 - ▼ For **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)”. (→ P.5-37)
 - ▼ For **Print Server Password**, enter the print server password created in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)”. (→ P.5-37)
 - ▼ Set the **Polling Interval**. Set the interval at which to check the printer NetWare print queue.
- NPrinter Selected: Remote Printer Mode (using an NDS Print Server)
 - ▼ For **Print Server Name**, enter the advertised name of the print server created in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)” (→ P.5-37). The advertised name is set to the same name as the normal printer server name.
 - ▼ For **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number that you entered in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)”. (→ P.5-37)

10 Click the **OK** button.

11 When you return to **Network** under **Device Manager**, press the **Reset** button.



The printer network interface restarts and the settings are enabled.

This completes the NetWare protocol settings.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Configuring the Computer for NetWare

Perform these settings on each computer after you have selected the NetWare print service and protocol.

■ Connecting to a NetWare Network

Install the NetWare client software on all computers that will perform printing, and the log onto either the NetWare server or the tree. Refer to the NetWare manual or the OS manual for the connection methods.

■ Installing the Printer Driver

To perform printing, the printer driver must be installed. Install the driver according to directions from your network administrator.

When you install the printer driver, be sure to select **Network printer** and select the print queue that you created with the NetWare print service settings.

■ Setting the Printer Port

Select **Settings** and then **Printers** from the **Start** menu, and then select the printer icon. Next, select **Properties** from the **File** menu. Select the **Advanced** sheet or the **Ports** sheet, and then set the print queue that created the print destination port using the NetWare print service settings. (→ [P.5-37](#))



Note

- This procedure is not required if you set the connection destination of the printer during the installation of the printer driver.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Printing with UNIX

Using LPD to Print

This section describes printing with LPD.

1 Log on to a workstation as root.

2 Set up the spooling system.

● Settings Example Using Solaris 9:

- ▼ Start the admintool utility.
- ▼ Select **Browse / Printers**.
- ▼ Select **Edit / Add / Access to Printer**.
- ▼ Enter the **Printer Name** and **Print Server** name according to the naming conventions.
- ▼ Press the **OK** button.

● Setting Example Using Red Hat Linux:

- ▼ Start the Printer Configuration utility on the control panel.
- ▼ Select **Add / Other UNIX (lpd) queue / OK**.
- ▼ Enter the desired printer name, printer IP address or name, and “lp” in **Printer Name**, **Remote Host**, and **Remote Queue**.

▼ If you are using a filter, select the filter.

If there is no filter for the printer, you can temporarily select any filter, shut down the Printer Configuration Utility, and then change the postscript.cfg file in the spool directory so it matches your printer. For details, refer to the Ghostscript manual.



Note

- The admintool utility is bundled with the OS. For details of use, refer to the relevant OS manual.
- The above configuration procedures were examples. The actual configuration procedure may vary depending on your environment.
- This completes the printing settings.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Using FTP to Print

- 1** Start the MS-DOS prompt or command prompt.

If you are using UNIX, open the console screen.

- 2** Execute the following commands.

```
ftp <Printer IP Address>
```

- 3** Enter any user name.

Just press the **Enter** key without entering a password.

You can now perform the following procedure.

To print a file:

```
put <filename to print>
```



Note

- Print the file in binary mode.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Initializing the Network Settings

Follow the procedure below to use the Web browser (Remote UI) to restore all the network settings to the factory default settings.



Note

- In addition to using the Web browser to restore the default settings, you can also use GARO Device Setup Utility or the printer operation panel to restore the default network settings.

- 1** Start the Web Browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** or **Address** box, then press the **Enter** key.

`http:// <Printer IP Address or name> /`

Sample: `http://XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX/`

- 2** Select **Administrator Mode** and then click the **Logon** button.

When Remote UI is started with the network card set to the factory default settings, the English screen will be displayed. Set **Language** to **Japanese**, select **Administrator Mode**, and then press the **Logon** button.

Remote UI starts.



Note

- If a password has been setup on the printer, enter the password and then press the **OK** button. If a password has not been setup, you do not need to enter a password.

- 3** From the **Device Manager** menu on the left, select **Network**.

- 4** Click the **Reset to Default Settings** button.

- 5** Verify the message then click the **OK** button.
All network information is restored to the default settings.



Note

- When you initialize the network settings, the printer IP address setting is changed to the factory default value of (0.0.0.0), so the remote UI screen is not displayed again in the browser. Set it through GARO Device Setup Utility or printer operation panel if you set the network settings.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

List of Network Settings

If you are using a web browser (Remote UI), you can change the network interface settings. The settings that can be changed are described below.

■ General Settings

Item	Content	Initial Value
Device Name	Device Name (Range: 0 to 32 chars.)	Blank
Location	Device location (Range: 0 to 32 chars.)	Blank
Administrator	Name of Administrator for the device (Range: 0 to 32 chars.)	Blank
Phone	Telephone number of the Administrator (Range: 0 to 32 chars.)	Blank
Comment (E-mail)	Administrator Comments (Range: 0 to 32 chars.)	Blank
Administrator Password	Device password (Range: 0 to 15 chars.)	Blank

■ TCP/IP Settings

Item	Content	Initial Value
Set the Address Using DHCP	Determines whether DHCP is used to configure the IP address	Off
Set the Address Using BOOTP	Determines whether BOOTP is used to configure the IP address	Off
Set the Address Using RARP	Determines whether RARP is used to configure the IP address	Off
RAW Mode Bi-directional Communication Function	Determines whether bi-directional communication is used for RAW mode.	Off
Performs Dynamic Update of DNS	Determines Whether DNS Server Registration Update is Automatic.	Off
Using the Zeroconf Function	Determines whether Zeroconf is used.	On
IP Address	The IP address of the printer	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask	The subnet mask of the printer	0.0.0.0
Gateway Address	The gateway address of the printer.	0.0.0.0
Primary DNS Server Address	IP address of the primary DNS server	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server Address	IP address of the secondary DNS server.	0.0.0.0

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Item	Content	Initial Value
DNS Host Name	Printer Host Name (Range: 1 to 63 chars.)	NB-15FB xxxxxxxxx xxx
DNS Domain Name	Printer Domain Name (Range: 0 to 64 chars.)	Blank
Multicast DNS Service Name	Printer Multicast DNS Server Name (Range: 1 to 63 chars.)	Canon W8400P G(xxxxxx)

■ AppleTalk Settings

Item	Content	Initial Value
Phase Type	Phase type in use (determines whether AppleTalk is used.)	Off
Name	The names of the printers displayed in the Chooser or printer utility (Printer Center) (Name length: 1 to 31 chars.)	Canon NB-15FB (xxxxxx)
Zone	The name of the printer zone (1 to 31 chars.)	*

■ NetWare Settings

Item	Content	Initial Value
Frame Type	The frame type used by NetWare.	Off
NCP Burst Mode	Determines whether NCP burst mode is used. (Normally, leave this setting on.)	On
Print Service	The print service to use. (Only one print service can be selected and enabled.)	NDS PServer
Packet Signature	Determines whether or not to use packet signatures (Normally leave set to If Requested by Server)	If Requested by Server
Bindery PServer		
File Server Name	Name of the NetWare file server of the NetWare print server. (Range: 0 to 47 chars.)	Blank
Print Server Name	The name of the NetWare print server in use. (Range: 0 to 47 chars.)	Blank
Print Server Password	The password required by the print server setting. (0 to 20 chars.)	Blank
Polling Interval	The time interval between job confirmations. (Range: 1 to 15 sec.)	5

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Item	Content	Initial Value
RPrinter		
Print Server Name	The name of the NetWare print server in use. (Range: 0 to 47 chars.)	Blank
Printer Number	The number used for the printer connection to the NetWare print server. (Range: 0 to 15)	0
NDS PServer		
Tree Name	The name of the NDS tree of the NetWare print server. (Range: 0 to 32 chars.)	Blank
Context Name	The name of the context of the NetWare Print server. (Range: 0 to 255 chars.)	Blank
Print Server Name	The name of the NetWare print server in use. (Range: 0 to 64 chars.)	Blank
Print Server Password	The password required by the print server setting. (0 to 20 chars.)	Blank
Polling Interval	The time interval between job confirmations. (Range: 1 to 255 sec.)	5
NPrinter		
Print Server Name	The name of the NetWare print server in use. (Range: 0 to 64 chars.)	Blank
Printer Number	The number used for the printer connection to the NetWare print server. (Range: 0 to 254)	0

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Software Applications Used to Configure Network Settings

Use the following listed software to perform the network settings.

Type of Setting	GARO Device Setup Utility	Web Browser (Remote UI)	ARP/PING command	Printer Operation Panel
Setting the Printer IP Address (→ P.5-7)	○	○	○	○
Configuring the TCP/IP Protocol Settings (→ P.5-15)	△ ^{*1}	○	×	△ ^{*1}
Configuring the AppleTalk Protocol (→ P.5-25)	△ ^{*2}	○	×	△ ^{*2}
Setting Up NetWare Print Service (→ P.5-37)	×	○	×	×
Setting NetWare Protocol (→ P.5-40)	△ ^{*3}	○	×	△ ^{*3}

*1. Only the following can be set: 1 IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, DHCP, BOOTP, and RARP.

*2. Only the following can be set: phase.

*3. Only the following can be set: frame type.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Chapter 6 Troubleshooting

You can print the items that have been checked.

Message Is Displayed	6-2
Operation Panel Message List	6-3
Media Messages	6-4
Ink Messages	6-11
Other Messages	6-14
When You Cannot Print	6-19
Printing Does Not Start	6-19
Printing Halts During Print Job	6-22
Cannot Print on a Network	6-23
Unexpected Printing Results	6-28
Print quality trouble	6-29
Abnormal Content	6-32
Other Problems	6-35
Removing Media Jams	6-37
Removing a Roll Media Jam	6-37
Removing a Cut Sheet Jam	6-40
Updating the Firmware	6-43
Obtaining the Firmware Update	6-43
Confirming the Firmware Version	6-43
Reinstalling the USB or IEEE1394 Driver	6-44
Uninstalling the Software	6-45
Uninstalling the Printer Driver	6-45
Uninstalling GARO Status Monitor	6-46
Uninstalling the GARO Device Setup Utility	6-46

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

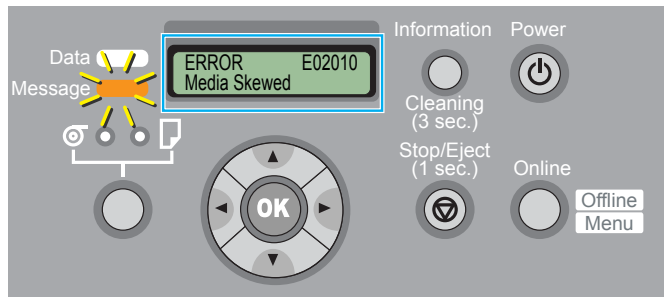
Contents

Index

Message Is Displayed

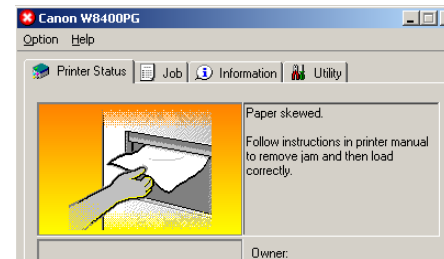
When the printer requires attention, messages are displayed on the operation panel and in the GARO Status Monitor (Windows) or GARO Printmonitor (Macintosh).

- Operation panel



Refer to the following pages for more information about what to do when you see messages displayed.

- GARO Status Monitor (Windows)



Read the displayed message and perform the required procedure.

Note

- The printer status cannot be displayed with a USB connection to Mac OS X.
- If the GARO Status Monitor is not installed on Windows, look at the message on the printer operation panel.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Operation Panel Message List

Media Messages
Load Roll Media
Remove RollMedia
End of Roll
RIIMed.Shortage Replace RIIMed
Load Cut Sheet
Remove Cut Sheet
Eject Cut Sheet
Incorrect Media
Med.SizeNoMatch
Illegal Med Pos
NoBorderlessData
No borderless
Size undetected
Media Skewed
Media Too Large
Media Too Small
Media Jam
Cut Failed
Drying..
Feed Limit..
Cut by Stop key

Ink Messages
Check Ink Level
Rep. Ink Tank
No Bk/PC/C/PM/M/Y Ink Tank
Check Bk/PC/C/PM/M/Y Ink Tank
Not Enough Ink
Ink level ?
Remove Ink Tank
Chk Bk Ink Type
MTCart Full Soon
Replace MT-Cart.
No MT-Cartridge
Check MT-Cart.

Other Messages
Close UpperCover / Close RightCover / Close CRG Cover
Reset Lever
Check Head Hght L/M/H → L/M/H
Turn Power Off!!
No Printhead
Printhead Error!
Check Printhead
Scale Read Error
Mist Full Soon
Mist Count Error
Cut.Move Timeout
CutUnitFuseBlown
Adj. Failed
Incorrect Value
ERROR nnnnnn (n = Numbers)

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

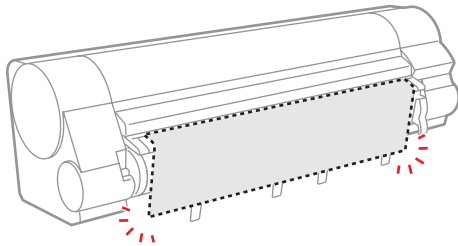
Contents

Index

Media Messages

Load Roll Media

Cause 1: The printer is waiting for you to load the roll media.



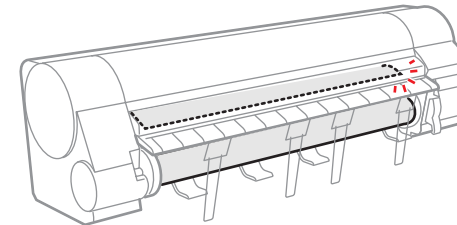
Solution 1: Load roll media of the type and size specified to the printer using the next step. (→ [P.2-28](#))

1. Load roll media of the specified size and type.
2. Select the media type.
3. Select length if the media remaining detection feature for roll media is ON.
4. Press the **OK** button.

Solution 2: Press and hold the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second to stop printing.

Remove RollMedia

Cause 1: The printer is waiting for you to remove the ejected roll media.



Solution 1: Perform the procedure described below to remove the roll.

1. Open the top cover.
2. Lift the release lever, and remove the roll media.
3. Lower the release lever.
4. Close the top cover.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

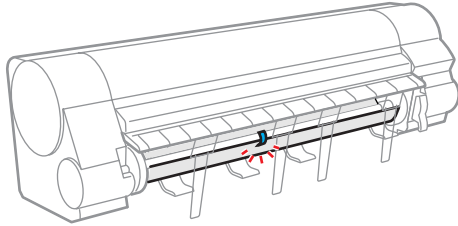
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

End of Roll

Cause 1: The roll media has run out.

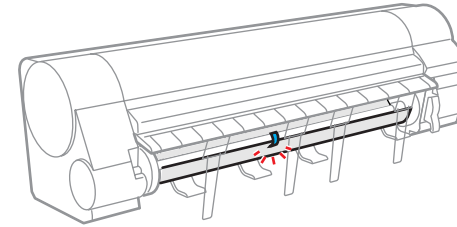


Solution 1: Do the procedure below to load the same size and type of roll media in use. (→ [P.2-28](#))

1. Load size and type of roll in use.
2. Select the media type.
3. Select length if the media remaining detection feature for roll media is ON.
4. Press the **OK** button.

RIIMed.Shortage Replace RIIMed

Cause 1: Data received is to print a size longer than the remaining roll media.



Solution 1: Load new roll media to the printer using the following procedure. (→ [P.2-28](#))

1. Load a new roll media of the same size and type of roll in use.
2. Select the media type.
3. Select length if the media remaining detection feature for roll media is ON.
4. Press the **OK** button.

Solution 2: Press and hold the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second to stop printing.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

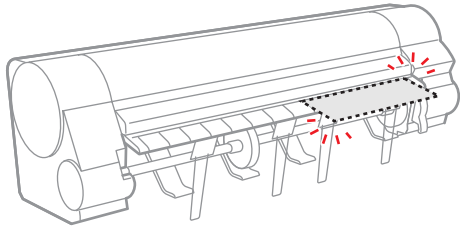
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Load Cut Sheet

Cause 1: The printer is waiting for the roll media to be loaded.



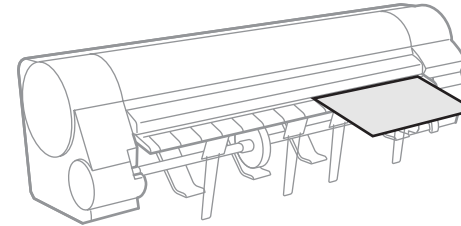
Solution 1: Load cut sheets of the type and size specified to the printer using the next step. (→ [P.2-38](#))

1. Load cut sheets of the specified size and type.
2. Select the media type.
3. Press the **OK** button.

Solution 2: Press and hold the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second to stop printing.

Remove Cut Sheet

Cause 1: The printer is waiting for you to remove the ejected sheets.



Solution 1: Perform the procedure described below to remove the sheets. (→ [P.2-42](#))

1. Open the top cover.
2. Lift the release lever, and remove the cut sheets.
3. Lower the release lever.
4. Close the top cover.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

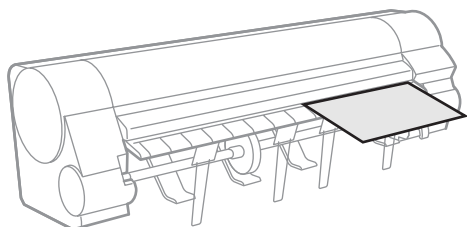
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Eject Cut Sheet

Cause 1: The printer received print data for the roll media while a cut sheet was loaded.



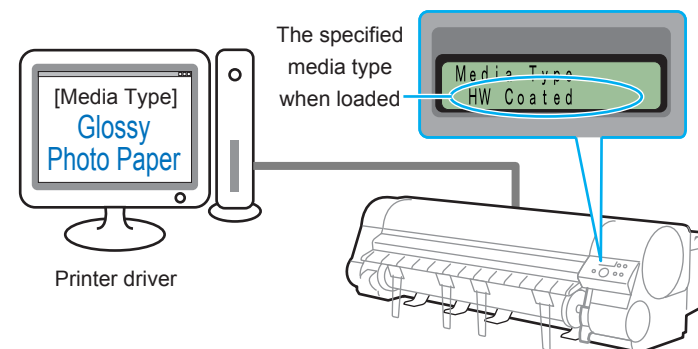
Solution 1: Perform the procedure described below to remove the sheets. (→ [P.2-42](#))

1. Open the top cover.
2. Lift the release lever, and remove the cut sheets.
3. Lower the release lever.
4. Close the top cover.
5. Load the roll.

Solution 2: Press and hold the [▲] or [▼] button for at least 1 second to stop printing.

Incorrect Media

Cause 1: The media type specified by the printer does not match the set value for the media in the media feed source.



Solution 1: Perform the procedure below to correct the Media Type setting on the printer.

1. Confirm the type of media loaded for the print job.
2. Use the printer operation panel to set the media type. (→ [P.2-34](#))

Solution 2: Perform the procedure below to correct the Media Type setting on the printer.

1. Press and hold the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second to stop printing.
2. Use the printer driver to set the media type so the value matches the loaded media type, then re-start the print job.

Med.SizeNoMatch

Cause 1: The width of the loaded roll media does not permit borderless printing.

Solution 1: Load roll media with a width that permits borderless printing. (→ [P.2-28](#))

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Illegal Med Pos

Cause 1: The position of the loaded media is incorrect.

Solution 1: Load 10", 14", 16", JIS B2, or ARCH24 roll paper.

Solution 2: Re-set the roll paper correctly on the roll holder.
(→ [P.2-28](#))

Cause 2: Data for a sheet size that does not permit borderless printing has been received.

Solution 1: Perform the procedure below to set a paper width that permits borderless printing.

1. Press and hold the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second to stop printing.
2. Change the **Roll Width** to a size that permits borderless printing using the printer driver, and then restart the print job.

NoBorderlessData

Cause 1: Data that does not permit borderless printing has been received.

Solution 1: Press the **Online** button to continue printing with borders.

Solution 2: Perform the procedure below to correct the Media Type setting on the printer.

1. Press and hold the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second to stop printing.
2. Use the printer driver to confirm that the dimensions of the print job match the enlargement settings, then re-start the print job.

No borderless

Cause 1: The printer received data that cannot be used for borderless printing.

Solution 1: Use the following procedure to correct the **Media Type** setting on the printer.

1. Press and hold the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second to stop printing.
2. Check the dimensions of the print data and the enlargement/reduction settings in the printer driver, then reprint the job.

Cause 2: The misalignment detection function is off.

Solution 1: Set the accuracy **Skew Check Lv.** in the media type you are printing on to **Standard** or **Loose**, and then reload the paper.

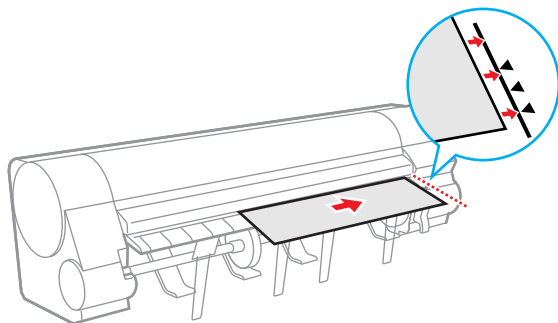
Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Size undetected

Cause 1: The media has shifted out of the correct load position, or the media is curled.



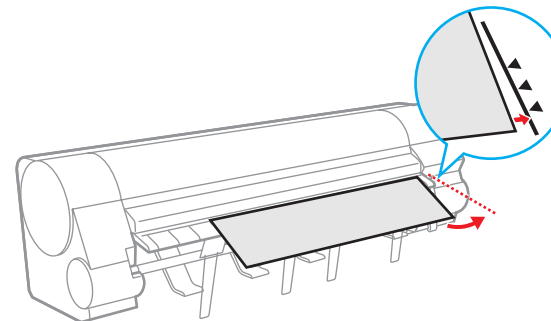
Solution 1: Set the media correctly. (→ [P.2-28](#), [P.2-38](#))

Cause 2: The printer interior is dusty or dirty.

Solution 1: Open the top cover and clean inside the printer. (→ [P.4-11](#))

Media Skewed

Cause 1: The loaded media is skewed.



Solution 1: If using roll media, perform the procedure described below to reload the roll media. (→ [P.2-28](#))

1. Open the top cover.
2. Press the release lever to the rear to open.
3. Align the right edge of the roll media so that it is parallel to the right paper alignment line, then pull the release lever to the front to close.
4. Close the top cover.
5. Select the Media Type and press the **OK** button.

Solution 2: Perform the procedure below if you are using cut sheets. (→ [P.2-38](#))

1. Open the top cover.
2. Press the release lever to the rear to open.
3. Align the right edge of the cut sheet with the right side, align the leading edge of the sheet inside the printer, then pull the release lever toward you to close.
4. Close the top cover.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Media Too Large

Cause 1: The loaded media is larger than any media size allowed for loading in the printer.

Solution 1: Set the correct size media then try again.
(→ [P.2-28](#), [P.2-38](#))

Media Too Small

Cause 1: The loaded media is smaller than any media size allowed for loading in the printer.

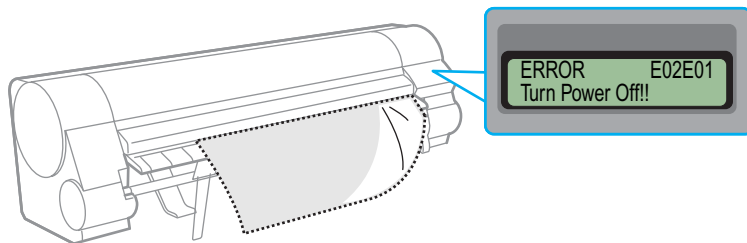
Solution 1: Set the correct size media then try again.
(→ [P.2-28](#), [P.2-38](#))

Cause 2: Media size smaller than the required size was set for printing the print pattern or the nozzle check pattern.

Solution 1: Load A3 size media or larger for printing.

Media Jam

Cause 1: Media has jammed in the printer.



Solution 1: Perform the procedure described below to remove the jammed sheet. (→ [P.6-37](#))

1. Switch the printer off.
2. Remove the jammed sheet.
3. Turn ON the power supply.

Cut Failed

Cause 1: Leading edge of the roll media not detected after cutting.

- Solution 1: Perform the procedure described below to remove the jammed sheet. (→ [P.2-35](#))
1. Open the top cover.
 2. Use a cutter to cut the roll media manually, and then remove the sheet.
 3. Lift the release lever.
 4. Reload the roll media, and then lower the release lever.
 5. Close the top cover.

Drying..

Cause 1: The printer is waiting for the ink to dry on the printout.

Solution 1: Wait until the printed sheet ejects automatically.

Feed Limit..

Cause 1: You pressed the [▲] button on the operation panel to feed more media than allowed.

Solution 1: Remove your finger from the [▲] button to stop the paper feed.

Cut by Stop key

Cause 1: The loaded media cannot be cut automatically.

Solution 1: The printer stops after the print job ends to protect the printing surface. Support the printout with your hand to prevent it from falling into the output stacker, and then press the **Stop/Eject** button to cut the printout.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

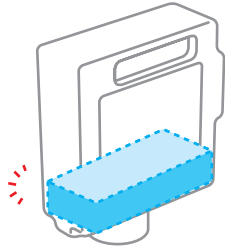
Contents

Index

Ink Messages

Check Ink Level

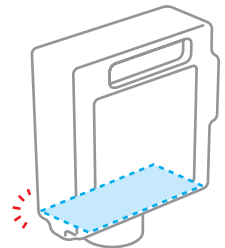
Cause 1: Ink in ink tank is running low.



Solution 1: Obtain a new ink tank. If a long print job is in progress, or if you need to print a job of many sheets, you should replace the ink tank with a new one.

Rep. Ink Tank

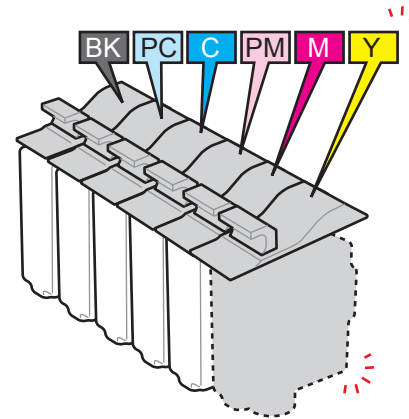
Cause 1: Ink has run out.



Solution 1: Open the right back cover and replace the ink tank color that is displayed flashing on the printer operation panel with a new ink tank. (→ [P.4-2](#))

No Bk/PC/C/PM/M/Y Ink Tank

Cause 1: The ink tank of the displayed color is not installed.



Solution 1: Install correctly the ink tank named in the message. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Cause 2: A problem has occurred with the ink tank indicated on the display.

Solution 1: Replace with a new ink tank. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

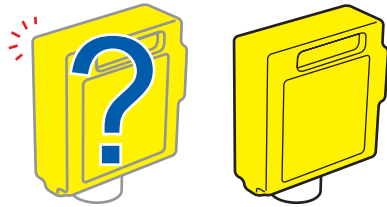
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Check Bk/PC/C/PM/M/Y Ink Tank

Cause 1: The ink tank indicated by the color on the display cannot be used with this printer, or an empty tank was installed.



Solution 1: Install correctly the ink tank of the color named in the message. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Important

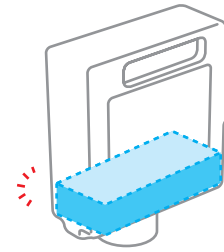
- The ink may mix if you install an incorrect ink tank. If the color is incorrect as a result of installing the wrong ink tank, or if the images are very poor quality, and the Bk tank was mistakenly installed, perform the **ChangeBkInkType** operation (→ [P.4-48](#)). If you mistakenly installed any other ink cartridge, perform the **Move Printer** operation, and then install new ink tanks. (→ [P.4-33](#))

Cause 2: A problem has occurred with the ink tank indicated on the display.

Solution 1: Replace with a new ink tank. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Not Enough Ink

Cause 1: You cannot execute Head Cleaning B, print, or use any other function that uses ink because the remaining ink level is low.



Solution 1: Replace the ink tank where the ink level is low. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Ink level ?

Cause 1: The ink level detection function is turned OFF.

Solution 1: Every time printing is performed, this message is displayed and the printer goes offline. Press the **Online** button to continue printing.

Solution 2: To retrieve the ink level display, replace with the ink tanks specified for use with this printer.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Remove Ink Tank

Cause 1: While the **Move Printer** message is displayed, the right back cover is closed without removing the ink tanks.

Solution 1: Remove the ink tank.

Chk Bk Ink Type

Cause 1: The type of black ink is unsuitable for the loaded paper.

Solution 1: Check whether the black ink setting in the printer driver is correct.

Solution 2: Check whether media that cannot be used with the current black ink type has been specified in the printer driver. (→ [P.2-2](#))

MTCart Full Soon

Cause 1: Maintenance cartridge is full.

Solution 1: The current print job can continue. Obtain a new Maintenance cartridge.

Replace MT-Cart.

Cause 1: Maintenance cartridge is full.

Solution 1: Replace the maintenance cartridge after stopping the print job. (→ [P.4-14](#))

No MT-Cartridge

Cause 1: A maintenance cartridge is not installed.

Solution 1: Install a maintenance cartridge. (→ [P.4-14](#))

Check MT-Cart.

Cause 1: The maintenance cartridge installed is either used (full) or is a maintenance cartridge that cannot be used with this printer.

Solution 1: Install a new maintenance cartridge intended for use with this printer. (→ [P.4-14](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

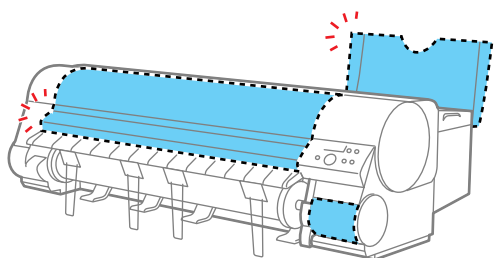
Contents

Index

Other Messages

Close UpperCover / Close RightCover / Close CRG Cover

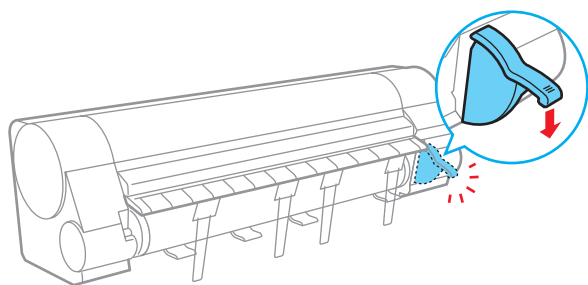
Cause 1: The cover that is displayed is open.



Solution1 Close the cover named in display.

Reset Lever

Cause 1: The release lever is up.



Solution 1: Lower the release lever.

Check Head Hght L/M/H → L/M/H

Cause 1: The current height of the printhead (displayed at the left end of the bottom display line) is not the appropriate height (displayed at the right end of the bottom display line) for printing on the type of media loaded for the print job.

Solution 1: Confirm the height (H/M/L) named at the right end of the bottom display line, and then do the procedure below to adjust the height of the printhead.

1. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
2. Press and hold the [◀] or [▶] button for at least 1 second to move the carriage to the center.
3. Open the top cover.
4. Set the printhead height adjustment lever to the correct position for the media.
5. Close the top cover.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

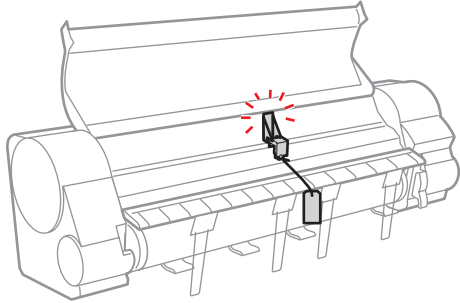
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

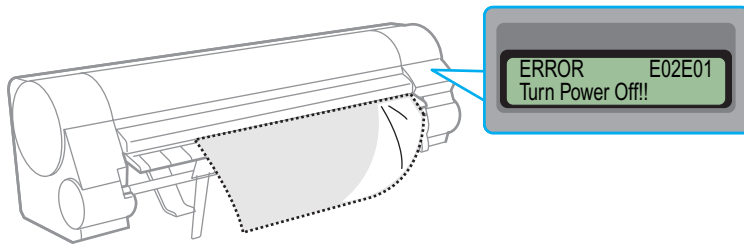
Turn Power Off!!

Cause 1: The tape inside the top cover or the belt stopper have not been removed.



Solution 1: Turn OFF the printer, open the top cover, remove the tape and belt stopper, and then press the Power button. (→ Quick Start Guide)

Cause 2: Media has jammed in the printer.



Solution 1: Turn OFF the printer and remove the jammed sheet, reset the media, and then turn ON the printer again. (→ [P.6-37](#))

Cause 3: The printer has malfunctioned.

Solution 1: Turn OFF the printer, wait for 3 seconds min., and then turn ON the printer again.

Solution 2: If the message appears again after doing the procedure above, read the content of the message and write down the first line, turn OFF the printer, and then contact a Canon service center.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

No Printhead

Cause1 The printhead is not installed.

Solution 1: Install the printhead. (→ [P.4-22](#))

Printhead Error!

Cause1 The printhead has malfunctioned.

Solution 1: Turn OFF the printer, wait for 3 seconds min., and then turn ON the printer again.

Solution 2: If the message appears again after doing the procedure above, read the content of the message and write down the first line, turn OFF the printer, and then contact a Canon service center.

Check Printhead

Cause1 The printhead installed cannot be used with this printer.

Solution 1: Install the printhead for this printer.
(→ [P.4-22](#))

Cause 2: Printhead abnormal.

Solution 1: Open the top cover. If the carriage is out, replace the printhead. (→ [P.4-21](#))

Solution 2: If the carriage is not installed, close the top cover, press the **Online** button, select **Replace P.head**, and then replace the printhead.
(→ [P.4-21](#))

Cause 3: If you see this message when the print job starts, the condition of the printhead is poor and cannot eject ink properly.

Solution 1: Press the Stop/Eject button to stop the print job, perform Head Cleaning B, then start the print job again. (→ [P.4-39](#))
If this does not solve the problem, replace the printhead. (→ [P.4-22](#))

Solution 2: Although you can perform the print job if you press the Online button, the print quality may become poor.

Cause 4: Ink is not filled in the printhead properly.

Solution 1: Remove all ink tanks and reinsert them properly. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Scale Read Error

Cause 1: The carriage has malfunctioned.

Solution 1: Open the top cover and make sure a foreign object has not fallen into the printer.

Solution 2: Turn OFF the printer, wait for 3 seconds min., and then turn ON the printer again.

Solution 3: If the message appears again after doing the procedure above, read the content of the message and write down the first line, turn OFF the printer, and then contact a Canon service center.

Mist Full Soon

Cause 1: The printer ink mist processing has become full. (Just before the following “Mist Count Error” is displayed.)

Solution 1: The current print job can continue. If performing banner printing or borderless printing, the print job may stop while incomplete, so contact your Canon customer service center.

Mist Count Error

Cause 1: Printer ink mist processing limit has been exceeded.

Solution 1: Write the message displayed on the top line of the printer display on a memo, and then turn OFF the power supply, and consult your Canon customer service center.

Cut.Move Timeout

Cause 1: The optional cutter unit (Round cutter) is not moving.

Solution 1: Open the top cover, and remove the foreign object from the optional cutter.

Cause 2: The optional cutter unit is broken.

Solution 1: Write the message displayed on the top line of the printer display on a memo, and then turn OFF the power supply, and consult your Canon customer service center.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

CutUnitFuseBlown

Cause 1: The optional cutter unit (Round cutter) is not operating.

Solution 1: Turn the printer off, remove the connector cover from the optional cutter unit, and check that the connector is firmly connected.

Cause 2: The optional cutter unit is broken.

Solution 1: Write the message displayed on the top line of the printer display on a memo, and then turn OFF the power supply, and consult your Canon customer service center.

Adj. Failed

Cause 1: Printhead nozzles are clogged.

Solution 1: Reload the media and then print the nozzle check pattern to check the condition of the nozzles. (→ [P.4-37](#)) If the printhead is not operating properly, perform **Head Cleaning**. (→ [P.4-39](#))

Cause 2: The high-transparency film for which the printhead or amount of line feed cannot be adjusted is loaded. (→ [P.4-41](#), [P.4-43](#))

Solution 1: When you adjust the printhead (**Auto Head Adj.**), you should use the media of the type (other than film) that you use most frequently. (→ [P.4-41](#))

Solution 2: To adjust the amount of line feed (**Adjust Band**), perform the procedure for “Adjusting Line Feed Manually”. (→ [P.4-44](#))

Incorrect Value

Cause 1: The IP address, subnet mask setting, or the default gateway setting is not correct.

Solution 1: Set the correct settings for the IP address, subnet mask and default gateway. For more details about the values of the printer network information settings, contact your system administrator. (→ [P.5-5](#))

ERROR nnnnnn (n = Numbers)

Cause 1: Error in the print data.

Solution 1: If the job does not print correctly, check the settings then restart the print job.

Solution 2: Turn OFF the printer, wait for 3 seconds min., and then turn ON the printer again.

Solution 3: If the message appears again after doing the procedure above, write down the error number displayed on the top line, turn OFF the printer, and then contact your Canon customer service center.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

When You Cannot Print

Check the following items when the printer does not operate and will not print.

Printing Does Not Start
No error message is displayed.
Error message is displayed.
Ink initialization operation starts unexpectedly.

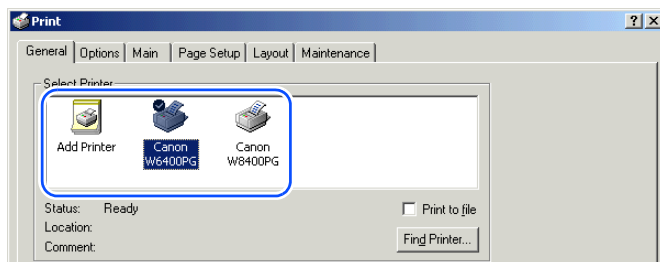
Printing Halts During Print Job
Error message is displayed.
Blank media is ejected from the printer.

Cannot Print on a Network
Cannot print for a TCP/IP network.
Cannot print from the AppleTalk network.
Cannot print from the NetWare network.
On Mac OS 8.6, the printer is not recognized even if IP Print (Auto) is selected

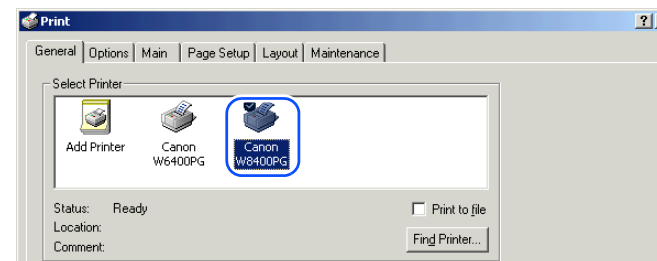
Printing Does Not Start

No error message is displayed.

Cause 1: Printer is not selected as the destination for the print job.



Solution 1: For Windows, select the **Name** of the **Select Printer** in the **Print** dialog box and then try to print again.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

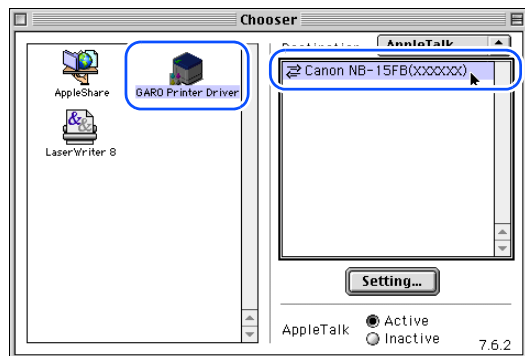
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

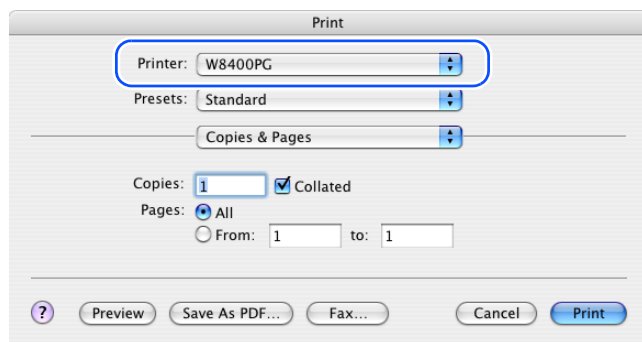
Contents

Index

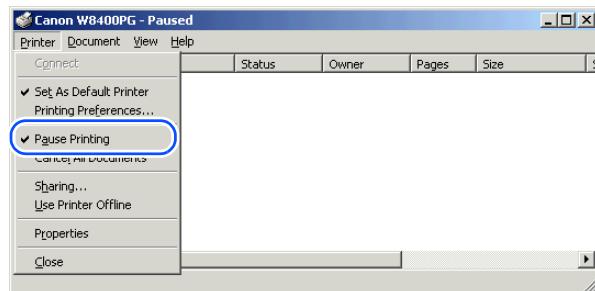
Solution 2: If you are using Mac OS 8/9, make sure that the correct name of the printer is selected with the **Chooser**, and then try again.



Solution 3: For Mac OS X, select the name of the printer in the **Print** dialog box and then try to print again.

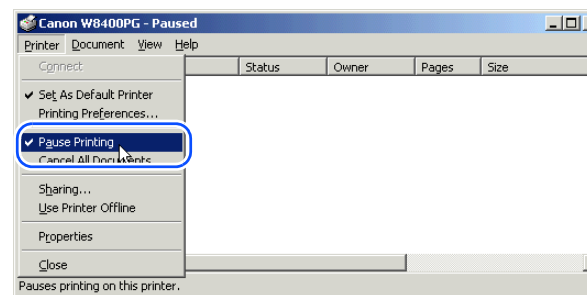


Cause 2: Print queue has halted.



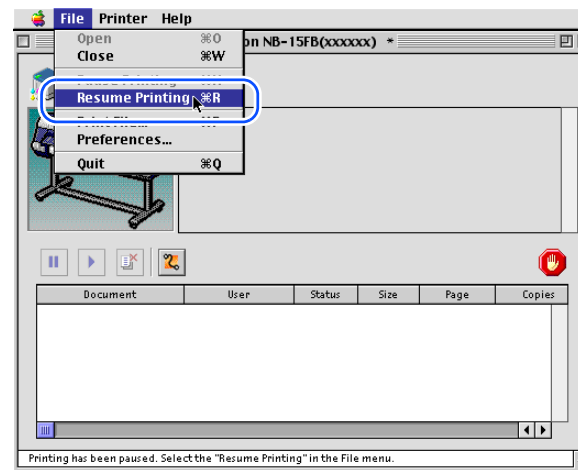
Solution 1: For Windows:

1. In the **Printers** folder, double-click the icon for the printer.
2. From the **Printer** menu select **Pause Printing** to release this setting.



Solution 2: For Mac OS 8/9

1. Open GARO Printmonitor.
2. From the **File** menu select **Resume Printing** to release the print pause.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

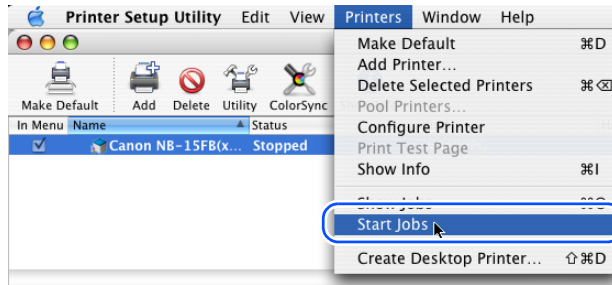
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Solution 3: For Mac OS X:

1. Open the **Printer Setup Utility**.
2. From the **Printers** menu select **Start Job** to release the print pause.

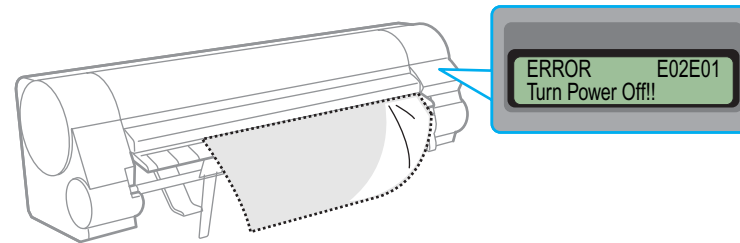


Cause 3: With Mac OS 8/9, the printer is shared via USB.

Solution 1: Connect the printer directly to the computer to be used for printing through its USB or IEEE1394 port. If you want to share the printer, do the print job from a Windows computer.

Error message is displayed.

Cause1 Media has jammed in the printer.



Solution1 Remove the jammed sheet. (→ P.6-37)

Cause 2: Printer is offline.

Solution 1: After correcting the problem in response to the error message, press the **Online** button to set the printer online.

Solution 2: If the operation panel display reads **Offline**, press the **Online** button to set the printer online.

Cause 3: An error message is displayed during printing.

Solution 1: When an error message appears in the printer operation panel or the Windows display, read the message in the GARO Status Monitor, or in the GARO Printmonitor for Macintosh. Then correct the problem. (→ P.6-2)

Cause 4: No print media loaded.

Solution 1: Replenish the print media in the specified media supply source.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Cause 5: The Media Type in the media source selection is not selected.

Solution 1: Use the printer operation panel to select the correct setting for the media type. (→ [P.2-34](#))

Solution 2: If the Media Type selection is incorrect, cancel the print job in the computer side, open the printer driver and select the correct setting for the “print media loaded”. (→ [P.1-44](#), [P.2-4](#))

Cause 6: No ink.

Solution 1: When the ink tank replacement message appears, replace the ink tank for the indicated color. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Ink initialization operation starts unexpectedly.

Cause 1: When the printer was switched off previously, this force cancelled a cleaning operation.

Solution 1: Wait for the ink initialization operation to finish. Ink filling may require up to 10 minutes to complete.

Printing Halts During Print Job

Error message is displayed.

Cause 1: An error message is displayed during printing.

Solution 1: Read the message displayed in the GARO Status Monitor or GARO Printmonitor, and correct the problem indicated by the error message. (→ [P.6-2](#))

Cause 2: Roll media ran out during the print job and the tape on the trailing edge of the media sheet is preventing the rest of the sheet from feeding.

Solution 1: Follow the procedure for removing a media jam. Remove the used roll and replace it with a new one. (→ [P.6-37](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Blank media is ejected from the printer.

Cause 1: A blank page is ejected from the previous print job.

Solution 1: The print job starts after the blank page is ejected.

Cause 2: The leading edge of the roll media is cut to an even length.

Solution 1: When the roll media was loaded, a plain cut sheet was ejected as part of the normal procedure to align the roll media correctly. The printer returns to standby as soon as the preparation is completed.

Cause 3: Printhead nozzles are jammed.

Solution 1: Print a nozzle check pattern to confirm the condition of the printhead. If a nozzle is blocked, do the printhead cleaning procedure. (→ [P.4-39](#))

Cause 4: No ink.

Solution 1: Check the ink tanks and replace any empty ink tanks.(→ [P.4-2](#))

Cause 5: The printer is broken.

Solution 1: Contact your Canon customer service center.

Cannot Print on a Network

Cannot print for a TCP/IP network.

Cause 1: The printer LAN port and cable are not connected correctly.

Solution 1: Confirm that the connection of the cable that connects the printer to the network is secure, then press the Power button to cycle the printer off and on again. (→ [P.5-5](#))

Cause 2: The printer cannot recognize automatically the LAN communication method.

Solution 1: Use the printer operation panel to select **Interface Setup** → **Ethernet Driver** then set each item for the communication method that is being used on the LAN. (→ [P.5-5](#))

Cause 3: The TCP/IP network is not set correctly.

Solution 1: Confirm that the IP Address is set correctly. (→ [P.5-7](#))

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

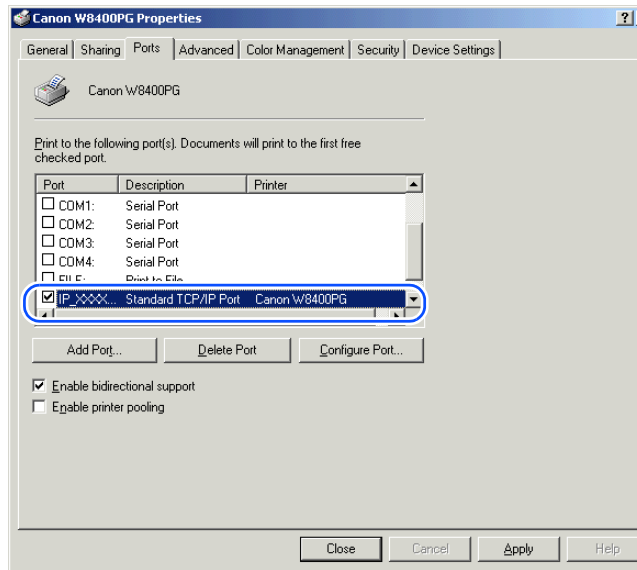
Contents

Index

Cause 4: The settings for the computer used for printing are not set correctly.

Solution 1: Check the following points:

1. Correct printer driver installed?
The printer driver must be installed on every computer that will be printing from Windows.
2. Is the output destination port set correctly for every computer that will be used for printing?
Do **Control Panel** → **Printers** and check the output destination.



Cause 5: The print file name is too long.

Solution 1: Normally, LPR (for “printing with Microsoft TCP/IP” on Windows NT) sends the job name based on the name of the software application and the name of the file to the printer. If the name of the job is more than 255 characters, however, LPR cannot send the job. In such a case, shorten the name of the file.

Cannot print from the AppleTalk network.

Cause 1: The printer LAN port and cable are not connected correctly.

Solution 1: Confirm that the connection of the cable that connects the printer to the network is secure, then press the Power button to cycle the printer off and on again. (→ P.5-20)

Cause 2: The printer cannot recognize automatically the LAN communication method.

Solution 1: Use the printer operation panel to select **Interface Setup** → **Ethernet Driver** then set each item for the communication method that is being used on the LAN. (→ P.5-20)

Cause 3: The AppleTalk protocol has not been enabled for the printer.

Solution 1: Follow the procedure below to use Remote UI to enable the AppleTalk protocol.

1. Open Remote UI and log in as an Administrator.
2. On the **Device Manager** menu, click **Network**.
3. Click the **Edit** button under AppleTalk.
4. Under **Phase Type** select **Phase 2**, then under **Zone** enter the Zone where the printer is located (if zones have not been set up on the network, select “*(**No Zones Available**)”, and then click the **OK** button.
5. Return to the Network page of Remote UI and click the **Reset** button.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

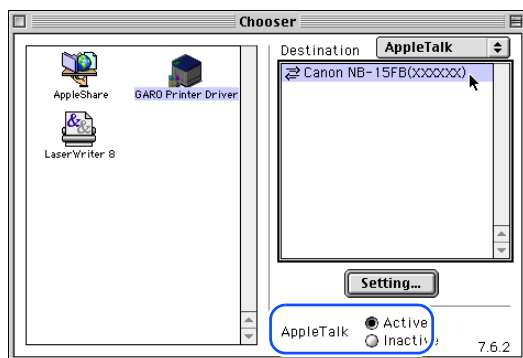
Cause 4: The computer and printer are not on the same network.

Solution 1: If the number of routers are exceeded with the Zeroconf function, the computer cannot connect to the printer if it is on a different network. Connect the computer and printer to the same network. For more about the network settings, please contact the network manager.

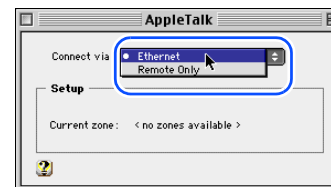
Cause 5: The settings for the computer used for printing are not set correctly.

Solution 1: For Mac OS 8.6/9.x

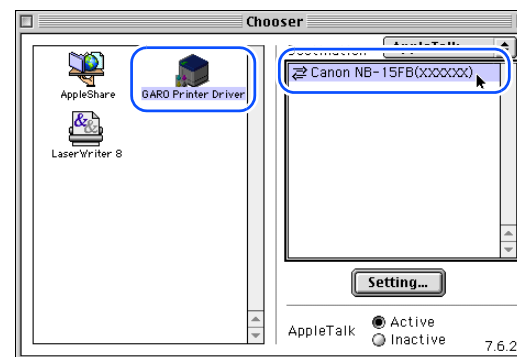
1. Open **Chooser** from the Apple menu.
2. Under **AppleTalk** make sure that **Active** is selected.



3. Under **AppleTalk** in the **Control Panel** of the Apple menu, make sure that the printer is selected for connection to the correct port for the **Connective Via**.



4. In the **Chooser** make sure that the GARO Printer Driver is installed.
5. In the **Chooser**, select **GARO Printer Driver**, and under **Connective Via** select **AppleTalk**, then select again the name of this printer in the printer list.



Solution 2: For Mac OS X:

1. Open **Network** for the **System Preferences**.
2. Under **Show**, select the name of the LAN port where the printer is connected.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

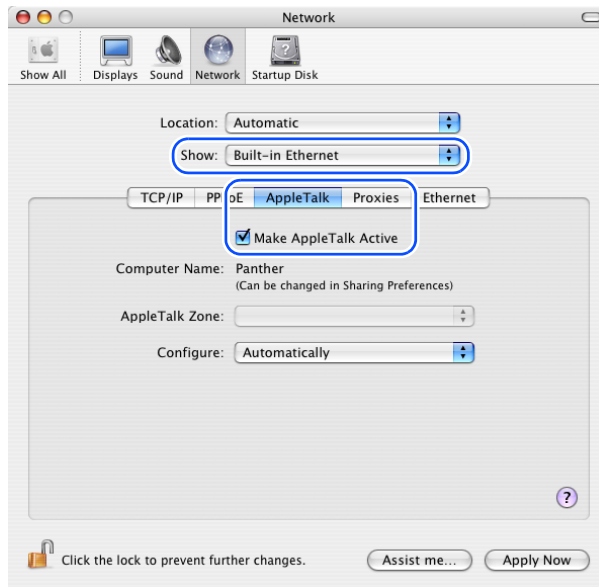
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

3. Open the **AppleTalk** panel and make sure that **Make AppleTalk Active** is selected with a checkmark.



4. Open **Printer Setup Utility** and make sure that the name of this printer is displayed in the printer list. If the name is not displayed, click the **Add** button to add the name of the printer.
5. If the name of the printer does not display after clicking the **Add** button, use the provided User Software CD-ROM to reinstall the printer driver for the printer.

Cannot print from the NetWare network.

Cause 1: The printer LAN port and cable are not connected correctly.

Solution 1: Confirm that the connection of the cable that connects the printer to the network is secure, then press the Power button to cycle the printer off and on again. (→ P.5-33)

Cause 2: The printer cannot recognize automatically the LAN communication method.

Solution 1: Use the printer operation panel to select **Interface Setup**→**Ethernet Driver** then set each item for the communication method that is being used on the LAN. (→ P.5-33)

Cause 3: The NetWare network is not set correctly.

Solution 1: Check the following points:

1. Make sure that the NetWare file server is running.
2. Is there enough disk space available on the NetWare file server? You may not be able to do large print jobs if there is not enough free space available.
3. Start NWADMIN or PCONSOLE and confirm (1) that the print service is set correctly, and (2) that the print queue has been enabled for use. (→ P.5-38)
4. Make sure that the printer network settings are correct. Especially, confirm that a frame type is enabled for the **Frame Type** setting. (→ P.5-20, P.5-34)

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Cause 4: The settings for the computer used for printing are not set correctly.

Solution 1: Check the following points:

1. Correct printer driver installed? The printer driver must be installed on every computer that will be printing. (→ P.5-31)
2. Is the output destination port set correctly for every computer that will be used for printing? Do **Control Panel** → **Printers** and check the output destination.

Cause 5: A print job data stream cannot be sent from the NetWare server to a printer in another subnet.

Solution 1: When data is sent from NetWare to the printer, the data is sent in the NCP path mode, but in some network environments data sent to a printer on another subnet is lost. If this problem occurs, switch off the NCP bus mode under the printer protocol settings and try again.

Cause 6: When using the queue server mode, the **Printer Type** setting appears set for **Parallel**.

Solution 1: Select **Other/Unknown** for the **Printer Type** setting.

On Mac OS 8.6, the printer is not recognized even if IP Print (Auto) is selected

Cause 1: On Mac OS 8.6, communication using TCP/IP may not be possible if the network router cannot be identified.

Solution 1: Select **Registering IP Addresses...** from **Connect via** in **Chooser** and register the printer IP address. Select **IP Print** from **Connect via** in **Chooser** and select the name of the printer that you registered the IP address of.

Solution 2: Set **Connect via** in **Chooser** to **AppleTalk** and then select the printer name.

Solution 3: If you want to use the IP Print (Auto) function, use Mac OS 9.0.4 or later.

Solution 4: Make sure the printer and Macintosh are on the same subnet, and then allocate a static IP address.

Solution 5: If there is a DHCP server on the network, make sure that the printer and Macintosh are on the same subnet, and then allocate the IP address from the DHCP server.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Unexpected Printing Results

If the results you see in the print job are not what you expect, check the items described below.

Print quality trouble	Abnormal Content	Other Problems
Printing is faint	Broken lines are visible	Ink consumption is exceedingly high
Ink smeared	Random, bizarre characters are printing	The message MTCart Full Soon does not disappear after you replace the maintenance cartridge with a new one
Edges smeared with ink	Length for the media feed method is not correct	Media is not cutting straight
Back sides of printed sheets are dirty	Only monochrome is printing	The printer does not turn on
Black or white streaks visible	Color tones uneven	The roll media will not feed into the paper feed slot
Horizontal lines appear in images printed on Synthetic Paper	Image color borders printing thick	Roll media cannot be loaded.
When printing on Glossy Photo Paper or Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, you may see differences between light and shaded areas on ripple surfaces of the media.	The edges of the image are blurred	
	The overall print result is tinged red or blue	

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Print quality trouble

Printing is faint

Cause 1: Printing on the wrong side of the sheet.

Solution 1: Check the front and back side of the media. If you print on the other side of the media, you will not achieve the correct results in printing.

Cause 2: If you frequently change the type of Bk ink, the Bk ink may become patchy.

Solution 1: Execute **Head Cleaning B.** (→ [P.4-39](#))

Cause 3: Printhead nozzles are jammed.

Solution 1: Print a nozzle check pattern to confirm the condition of the printhead. If a printhead nozzle is blocked, do the printhead cleaning procedure. (→ [P.4-37](#), [P.4-39](#))

Solution 2: If only yellow appears smeared, you may be able to correct this by selecting on the operation panel **Med. Detail Set.**→**Correct Smear**→**On.** (→ [P.1-21](#))

Cause 4: A printout is in the output stacker.

Solution 1: The capacity of the output stacker is limited to one printout. Start the next print job only after you have removed the previous printout from the output stacker.

Cause 5: The ink port needle is stuck and the ink has clogged.

Solution 1: Leave the printer with the ink tanks installed for more than 24 hours and then execute **Head Cleaning B.** (→ [P.4-39](#))

Cause 6: A piece of jammed sheet remains under the top cover.

Solution 1: Follow the procedure below to remove paper scraps from under the top cover.

1. Press the **Online** button to display **Offline**.
2. Press and hold [◀] for at least 1 sec. to move the carriage to the center.
3. Open the top cover.
4. Remove all the paper scraps under the top cover.

Cause 7: The ink was not dry enough for cutting during borderless printing.

Solution 1: Use the operation panel to lengthen the settings for **Drying_Time** in the **Med.Detail Set.**

Cause 8: You may be using the wrong type of black ink tank.

Solution 1: Use a new black ink tank, and then perform the **ChangeBkInkType** procedure again. (→ [P.4-48](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Ink smeared

Cause 1: The selected **Media Type** does not match the media loaded in the media supply source.

Solution 1: Check the paper feed source named in the message. If the paper is not the same as that specified for the job, pause the print job temporarily, load the correct paper, and then print again. (→ [P.2-28](#), [P.2-38](#))

Cause 2: The printhead height adjustment lever is at the down position.

Solution 1: Return the printhead height adjustment lever to the standard position. (→ [P.2-43](#))

Cause 3: You are printing on thick paper or paper that buckles easily.

Solution 1: Set the head height adjustment lever to the high position. (→ [P.2-43](#))

Cause 4: The paper was loaded incorrectly, causing the paper to crease.

Solution 1: Lift the release lever and align the paper position again.

Edges smeared with ink

Cause 1: The platen has become dirty after a full bleed print job or printing a small media size.

Solution 1: Clean the part of the platen under the top cover. (→ [P.4-11](#))

Cause 2: The specified **Media Type** does not match the loaded media type.

Solution 1: Check the paper feed source named in the message. If the paper types do not match, pause the print job temporarily, load the correct paper, and then print again. (→ [P.2-28](#), [P.2-38](#))

Cause 3: Print media is curled or creased.

Solution 1: Smooth out the curls and creases on the paper, and then reload the media.

Cause 4: A line is printed at the cutting position because the cutting dust reduction function is turned on.

Solution 1: If the cutting dust reduction function is not needed, use the operation panel to turn OFF this feature for the print media in use.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Back sides of printed sheets are dirty

Cause 1: A print job using large size media was executed after a print job on small size media.

Solution 1: Clean the part of the platen under the top cover.
(→ [P.4-11](#))

Cause 2: The platen was not cleaned after a full bleed print job.

Solution 1: Clean the part of the platen under the top cover.
(→ [P.4-11](#))

Cause 3: Do the print job with the media width detection function switched off.

Solution 1: Clean the part of the platen under the top cover.
(→ [P.4-11](#))

Black or white streaks visible

Cause 1: Printhead is out of alignment.

Solution 1: Use the operation panel to adjust the amount of feed for the print media in use. (→ [P.4-43](#))

Cause 2: Printing is not proceeding smoothly due to an interruption in the flow of data from the computer.

Solution 1: Close other applications that are open and cancel other jobs that are executing.

Cause 3: The **Feed Priority** item is set for **Print Length**.

Solution 1: For the **Feed Priority** item, select **Band Joint** the adjust the amount of feed. (→ [P.4-43](#))

Horizontal lines appear in images printed on Synthetic Paper

Cause 1: **Standard** is selected for **Print Quality**.

Solution 1: In the printer driver, select **High** or **Highest** for **Print Quality**.

When printing on Glossy Photo Paper or Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, you may see differences between light and shaded areas on ripple surfaces of the media.

Cause 1: You may not be able to achieve a sufficient image in some print patterns with the printhead in the middle (standard) position.

Solution 1: Lower the printhead height adjustment lever to the low position. However, never print on media that wrinkles easily such as Coated Paper or Plain Paper with the printhead height adjustment lever in the low position. This could damage the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Abnormal Content

Broken lines are visible

Cause 1: Printhead is out of alignment.

Solution 1: Use the printer operation panel to adjust the printhead position. (→ [P.4-41](#))

Cause 2: If you change the type of Bk ink, the printhead position may lose alignment.

Solution 1: Perform printhead adjustment.

Random, bizarre characters are printing

Cause 1: Data from the print job data stream has been lost.

Solution 1: Switch the printer and computer off, then switch them on again and start the print job again.

Cause 2: Another printer driver was selected for the print job.

Solution 1: Select the correct printer driver for the printer and try again. (→ [P.1-31](#))

Cause 3: Font selected for printing not supported.

Solution 1: Make sure that the software application you are using has the correct type of fonts and that they have been installed correctly. (→ Software Application Instructions)

Length for the media feed method is not correct

Cause 1: **Band Joint** is selected.

Solution 1: If you want to match size the media feed direction correctly, select **Print Length** for the **Feed Priority** item, then enter the setting for the **Adjust Length**. The amount of media feed can be adjusted in 0.02% increments.

Only monochrome is printing

Cause 1: The printer driver's **Color Mode** is set to **Monochrome (Photo)**, **Monochrome**, or **Black Only**.

Solution 1: On the Main tab of the printer driver, select **Color** for the **Color Mode** and try again. (→ Printer Driver Online Help)

Cause 2: Color ink nozzles are jammed.

Solution 1: Print a nozzle check pattern to confirm the condition of the printhead. If a printhead nozzle is blocked, do the printhead cleaning procedure. (→ [P.4-37](#), [P.4-39](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Color tones uneven

Cause 1: The printer driver is not performing color adjustment.

Solution 1: Use the printer driver to adjust the colors with the settings on the **Color Settings** of the **Color Mode** dialog box.(→ Printer Driver Online Help)

Cause 2: Colors in the printout do not match the colors on the screen.

Solution 1: Perform monitor color correction. (→ Monitor Instructions)

Solution 2: The color management software settings are incorrect. (→ Software Application Instructions)

Cause 3: Color ink nozzles are jammed.

Solution 1: Print a nozzle check pattern to confirm the condition of the printhead. If a printhead nozzle is blocked, do the printhead cleaning procedure. (→ P.4-37, P.4-39)

Cause 4: A color ink tank is inserted in the wrong slot.

Solution 1: On the printer operation panel, execute **Move Printer**, remove the ink tank from the printer, then insert the correct color ink tank. (→ Quick Start Guide)

Solution 2: After doing the above procedure, execute **Nozzle Check** If each color is not printing correctly, on the printer operation panel execute **Head Cleaning B**. (→ P.4-37, P.4-39)

Cause 5: Yellow ink is smearing.

Solution 1: You may be able to correct the smearing of the yellow ink, select **Med. Detail Set.** → **Correct Smear** → **On** the operation panel of the printer. (→ P.1-21)

Image color borders printing thick

Cause 1: Ink is clogged in a nozzle.

Solution 1: On the **Layout** sheet of the printer driver, under **Special Settings** set **SSC Adjustment** to **Level 1**, then execute the print job again. If printing at **Level 1** does not solve the problem, select **Level 2** and do the print again. However, please remember that using this feature can cause changes in the color hues over the entire image so you should check the hues as you are printing.

The edges of the image are blurred

Cause 1: The suction fan is set to strong

Solution 1: Reduce the strength of the suction fan. Note that this will not be suitable for printing high density images.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

The overall print result is tinged red or blue

Cause 1: Unsuitable color balance.

Solution 1: Use the procedure described below to return the **Adjust Printer** and **Color Adj.** to the factory set values (2).

1. Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
2. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the [▼] button.
3. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Color Adj.**, and then press the [▼] button.
4. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Return Defaults**, and then press the [▼] button.
5. Press the [◀] or [▶] button to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Solution 2: If the color balance is not restored despite performing the procedure described above, restore the set values for each color using **Color Adj.** in the **Adjust Printer** menu.

1. Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
2. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the [▼] button.
3. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Color Adj.**, and then press the [▼] button.
4. Press [◀] or [▶] to select the ink color to be adjusted, and then press the [▼] button.

5. If the color selected using the [◀] and [▶] buttons is too thin, select “1”, and if the ink is too thick, select “3”, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Repeat **Step 4** and **5** for each color to be adjusted.



Note

- If thick colors need to be adjusted, adjust the Y, M, C, and K inks.
- If thin colors need to be adjusted, adjust the PM and PC inks.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Other Problems

Ink consumption is exceedingly high

Cause 1: Printing many color images over an entire printing area.

Solution 1: Printing photographs or other images that require a lot of color fill consumes large amounts of ink. This is not unusual.

Cause 2: Executing **Head Cleaning B** very often.

Solution 1: **Head Cleaning B** consumes a large amount of ink (this is not unusual). After the printer has been moved, or after the printer has been stored and not used for a long period (excluding other problems with the printhead), you should execute **Head Cleaning B**.

Cause 3: The printer consumes ink for the initial ink tank filling.

Solution 1: The first time the printer used after it is set up or moved to a new location, the ink level display may drop to as low as 80% as a result of filling the printhead and ink tanks with ink (this is not abnormal).

The message **MTCart Full Soon** does not disappear after you replace the maintenance cartridge with a new one

Cause 1: The printer has not yet recognized the new maintenance cartridge.

Solution 1: Replace the maintenance cartridge and press the **Information** button.

Solution 2: After replacing a new maintenance cartridge the message disappears upon executing a print or cleaning operation.

Media is not cutting straight

Cause 1: The media is wrinkled at the cutting position.

Solution 1: Flatten the media at the cutting position.

The printer does not turn on

Cause 1: The power cord was unplugged with the printer power on.

Solution 1: Wait three minutes with the power cord unplugged, then plug in the power cord again and switch the printer on.

The roll media will not feed into the paper feed slot

Cause 1: The roll media is curled.

Solution 1: Insert the paper into the paper feed slot at an angle starting with the left corner or right corner, then feed the paper through and straighten it out.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Roll media cannot be loaded.

Cause 1: You are trying to load a Tracing Paper roll or Translucent Matte Film with the roll media remaining detection function enabled.

Solution 1: First, switch off the roll media remaining detection function, then load the roll paper.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

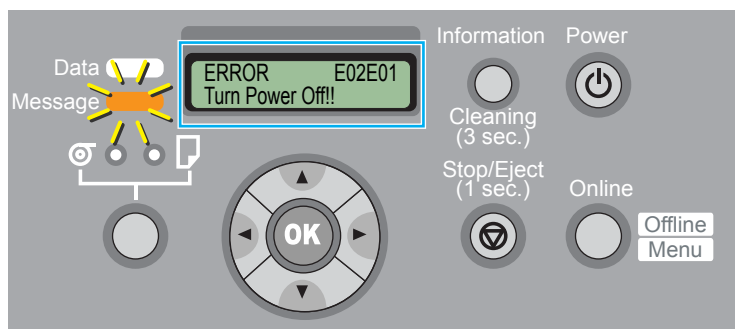
Contents

Index

Removing Media Jams

The printer stops and a **Media Jam** or **Turn Power Off!!** message appears on the printer display as soon as a jam occurs. When a jam occurs, follow the next procedure to check the locations where jams occur and remove the jammed sheets.

● Operation panel



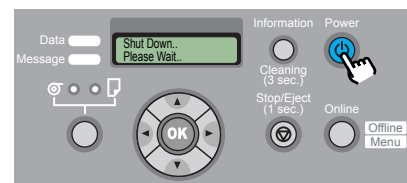
● GARO Status Monitor (Windows)



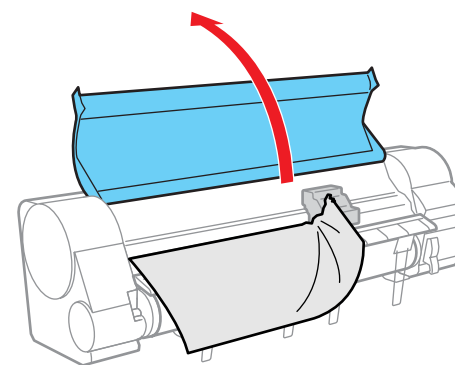
Removing a Roll Media Jam

Follow the procedure below to remove a roll media jam.

- 1 Press and hold the **Power** button for over 1 second or more until the Online lamp goes off, release the button, then switch the printer off.



- 2 Open the top cover.



Important

- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

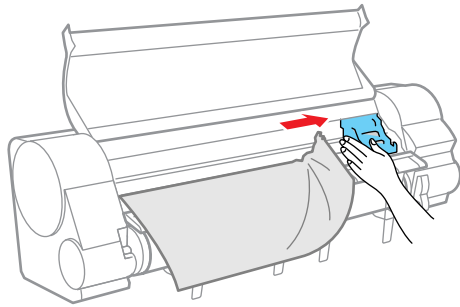
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

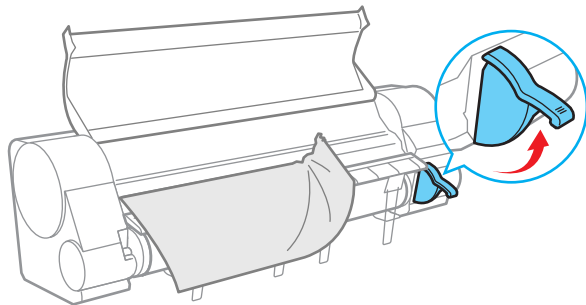
Index

- 3** Move the carriage manually when it is out of its normally parked position.

Move it to the right or left edge of the carriage rail before attempting to remove the media.

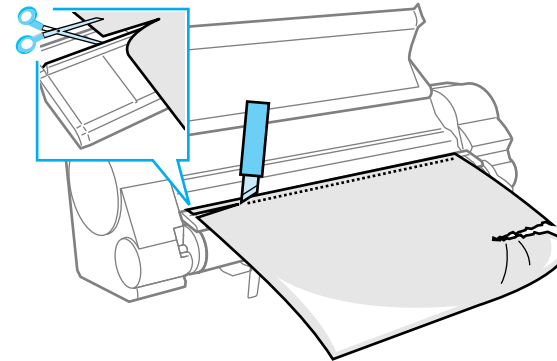


- 4** Lift the release lever.



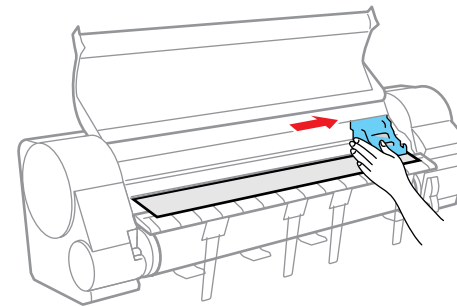
- 5** Hold the left and right corners of the jammed media and pull the sheet forward, then above the cutter groove (a), then cut at the edge of the printed area or where the media is wrinkled.

Use a pair of scissors if the media is difficult to cut with a cutter.



- 6** Move the carriage manually when it is out of its normally parked position.

Push the carriage to the right until it stops.



Important

- Be sure to push the carriage to the right. If you push it to the left, the printer will display a carriage error after the printer is switched on.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

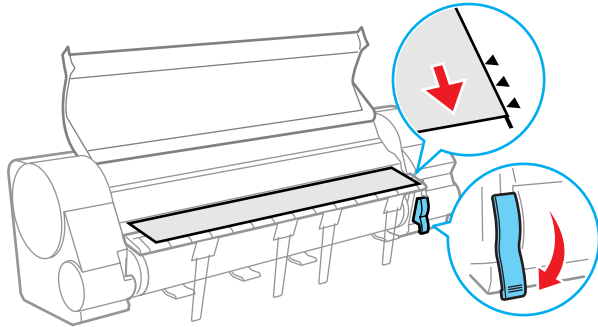
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

- 7** Grasp the center of the roll media edges and gently pull out the roll media until it is over the ejection guide. Next, align the right edge of the roll media with the right of the paper alignment line (b), and lower the release lever.



- 9** If the printer is OFF, press the **Power** button to turn ON the printer.



The media starts to feed, and the printer is ready to use after feeding is finished.

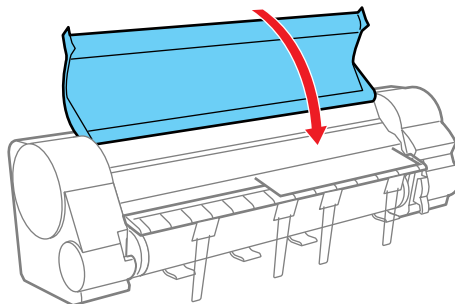
Note

- If you need to correct the alignment of the leading edge, press the **Online** button to display **Offline**, press the [▼] button to feed the media, then select **Force Cutting** on the **MAIN MENU** to cut the leading edge. (→ P.7-3)
- If replacing the roll media and changing the paper type, set the new paper type using the menu. (→ P.2-34)

Important

- Do not pull strongly on the roll media when you align it with the paper alignment line. The roll media may not feed out straight in some cases.
- If you pull too much of the roll media out, more of the leading sheet than is needed will be cut.

- 8** Close the top cover.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

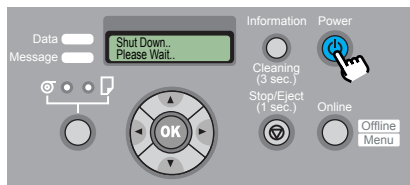
Contents

Index

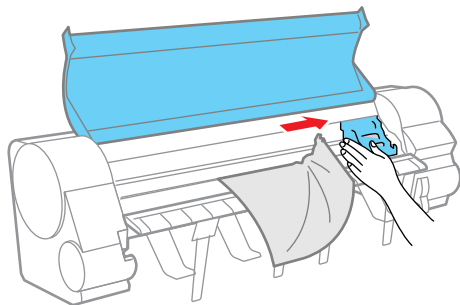
Removing a Cut Sheet Jam

Follow the procedure below to remove a cut sheet jam that occurs during printing.

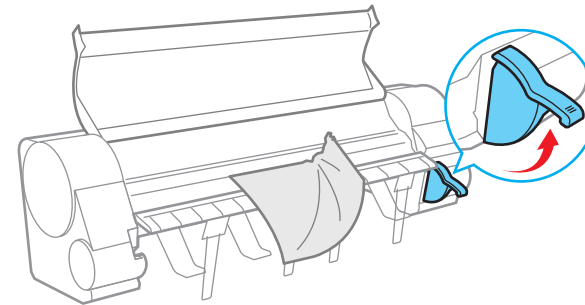
- 1 Press and hold the **Power** button for over 1 second or more until the Online lamp goes off, release the button, then switch the printer off.



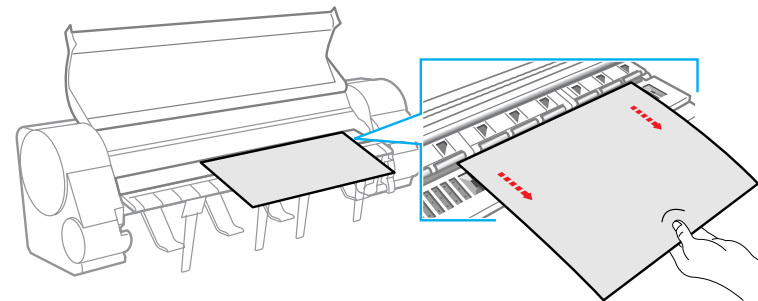
- 2 Open the top cover. If the carriage is not parked, move the carriage to the left edge or right edge.



- 3 Lift the release lever.



- 4 If the sheet is visible, pull the jammed sheet forward gently.



Important

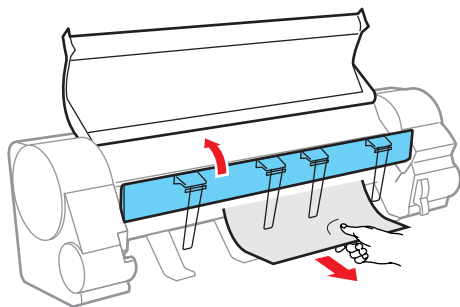
- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

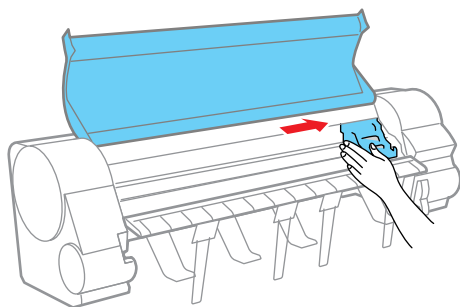
Index

- 5** If the paper is not visible, open the ejection guide and remove the roll holder. Next, remove the jammed paper from the bottom.



Inspect the interior to make sure there are no paper scraps remaining, and then close the ejection guide.

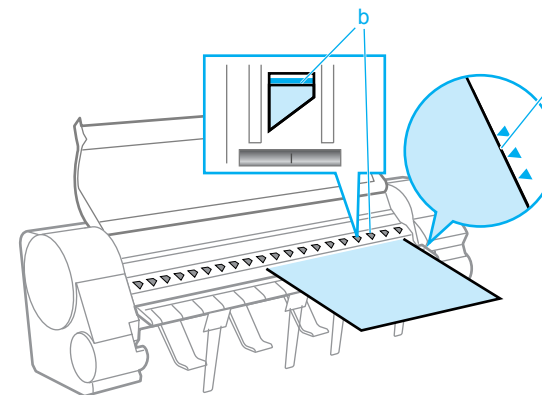
- 6** If the carriage is at the left edge, move the carriage to the right edge by hand.
Push the carriage to the right until it stops.



- 7** If the printer is OFF, press the **Power** button to turn ON the printer.



- 8** With the print side of the new sheet facing up, holding the sheet square between the paperweight, making sure that the stack is aligned with the line (a) on the right and aligned with the line (b) at the back.



Important

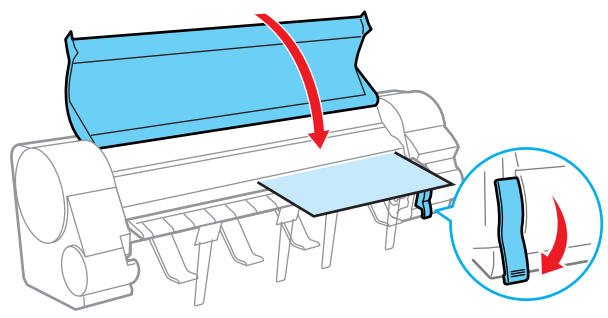
- Make sure you push the carriage to the right. If you push it to the left, the printer will display a carriage error when the printer is switched on.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

9 Lower the release lever, and then close the top cover.



Cut sheet preparation begins. When preparation is finished, the printer is ready to print.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Updating the Firmware

By updating the firmware for this printer, you can add on new functions and improvements for existing functions.

Obtaining the Firmware Update

Contact a Canon service center, or the dealer where you purchased the printer, for details about how to obtain the most recent version of the firmware update.

Confirming the Firmware Version

Do the procedure below to confirm the current version of the printer firmware before doing a firmware update. If the version of the firmware in use is older than the downloaded version, do the firmware update.



Note

- If the version number of the printer being used is the same as or newer than the firmware update in hand, then you do not need to update the firmware.

- 1** If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

After a few seconds **Online** is displayed in the operation panel and the Online lamp lights.

- 2** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Information** then press [▼].

MAIN MENU Information	↓
--------------------------	---

- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **S/C: XX.XX.XX**.

Version S/C: xx.xx.xx

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Reinstalling the USB or IEEE1394 Driver

If you try to install the USB or IEEE1394 driver with the USB or IEEE1394 cable already connected to the printer, the driver may not be installed correctly.

In such a case, follow the procedure below to install the printer driver after reinstalling the USB or IEEE1394 driver.

- 1** Right click the **My Computer** icon then select **Properties**.
- 2** On the **Hardware** sheet, click **Device Manager**. Next, in the **Device Manager** window click the **Other Devices** icon then click the **Properties** button.
- 3** Click the **Driver** tab then click the **Update Driver...** button. When the **Upgrade Device Driver Wizard** opens, follow the instructions on the screen to complete the installation.
- 4** When the Wizard prompts you to select how to search for the driver source files, select only CD-ROM drive. Set the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive then follow the instructions on the screen to install the interface driver.

5 Next, when the **Add New Hardware Wizard** opens, follow the instructions on the screen.

6 Select only **Specify a location** then click the **Browse** button.

7 Select the printer driver folder.

- Windows Me/Windows 98
 - ▼ Open the CD-ROM, open the appropriate language folder, then **Drivers / WinMe_9X / Driver / OK**.
- Windows Server 2003/Windows XP/Windows 2000
 - ▼ Open the CD-ROM, open the appropriate language folder, then **Drivers / WinXP_2K / Driver / OK**.

8 Confirm that the correct folder has been selected for **Specify a location** then install the driver.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Uninstalling the Software

Follow the procedure below to uninstall the printer driver and utilities from computer.

Important

- If you uninstall the software from Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, or Windows NT 4.0, you must log in as a member of the Administrators group before the uninstallation.

Uninstalling the Printer Driver

Follow the procedures below to uninstall the printer drivers.

■ Windows

Important

- If you uninstall the software from Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, or Windows NT 4.0, you must log in as a member of the Administrators group before the uninstallation.

- 1** On the desktop, click the **Start** button, point to **Programs**, then click **imagePROGRAF GARO Printer Driver Uninstaller** from **Canon Printer Uninstaller**.

The **Delete Printer** window opens.

- 2** Click the printer in the list you wish to delete, and then click the **Delete** button.
Confirmation message appears.
- 3** Click the **Yes** button.
- 4** Make sure that the printer is deleted from the list, then click the **Exit** button in the **Delete Printer** window.

■ Macintosh

- 1** Mount the provided “User Software” CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
- 2** Open the OS folder on the “User Software” CD-ROM.
For OS 8.6 or OS 9.x, in the **OS 89** folder, open **GARO Installer for 8/9**.
For OS X, in the **OS X** folder, open **GARO Installer for X**.
- 3** From the menu on the upper left side, select **Uninstall**, then click the **Uninstall** button.
- 4** Follow the messages on the screen to delete the GARO Printer Driver.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Uninstalling GARO Status Monitor

Follow the procedure below to uninstall GARO Status Monitor from a Windows system.

- 1** On the desktop click the **Start** button, point to **Programs**, click **GARO Status Monitor**, then select **Uninstaller (GARO Status Monitor)**.
- 2** When the selection screen appears, select **Delete** then click the **Next** button.
GARO Status Monitor is deleted.
- 3** Obey the instructions on the screen to delete the GARO Status Monitor.

Uninstalling the GARO Device Setup Utility

Follow this procedure to uninstall the GARO Device Setup Utility installed with Windows.

- 1** Click the **Start** button then select **Programs / GARO Device Setup Utility / Uninstaller (GARO Device Setup Utility)**.
- 2** When the selection screen appears, select **Delete** then click the **Next** button.
- 3** Obey the instructions on the screen to delete the GARO Device Setup Utility.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Chapter 7 Operating the Function Menu

You can print the items that have been checked.

Checking the Printer Function Menu	7-2
Cutter Functions	7-3
When You Need to Cut Media	7-3
Replacing the Cutter	7-3
Media Functions	7-4
Changing the Media Type Settings	7-4
Printing Cleanly to the Manuscript Edges	7-5
Ink Functions	7-6
Replacing an Ink Tank During a Print Job	7-6
Changing the Black Ink Type	7-7
Print Quality Functions	7-8
Determining if the Printhead is Blocked	7-8
When the Printhead Nozzles Are Clogged	7-8
Correcting Image Offset	7-9
Correcting Horizontal Banding in Images	7-9
Printing to an Accurate Length	7-10
Printer Information Functions	7-11
Checking the Print Job History	7-11
Checking the Printer Settings Information	7-11
Checking the Media Type Settings Information	7-12
Checking the Printer Functions Menu	7-12

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

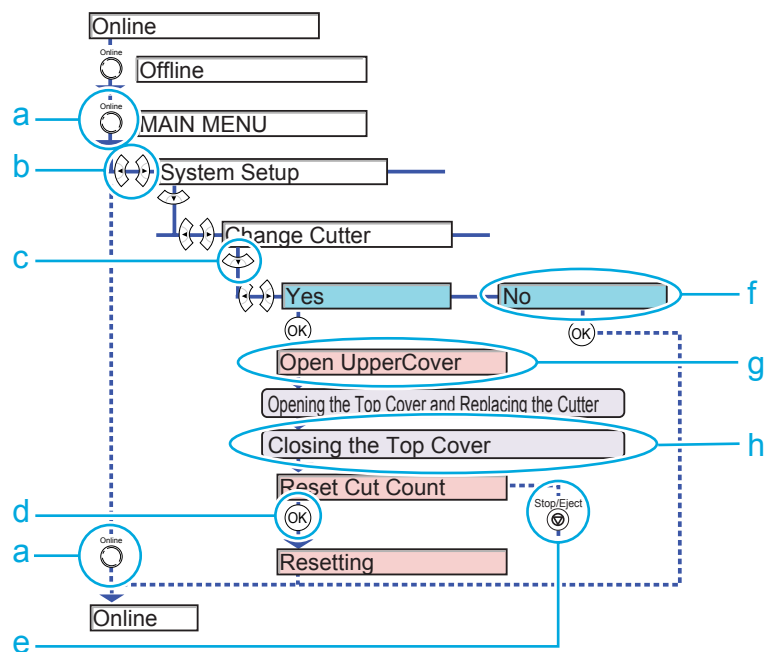
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Checking the Printer Function Menu

This chapter explains the operation method and the example of the message of the printer display about the function often used on the printer menu according to the purpose. The message for the required operations and displayed on the printer display is shown in figure.



	This describes the operation that pushes an Online button once. If you press the Online button while operating the menu, the proceeding operation, which is not set due to not pressing the OK button, will be canceled and returned to Online mode (or Offline for loading the media).
	This described the operation that selects the menu with pressing [◀] or [▶] button.
	This described the advanced operation to the following menu with pressing [▼] button once. If you want to return to the main menu, you can use [▲] button.
	This described the operation that executes displayed set value/item with pressing OK button.
	This describes the operation that cancels execution with pressing Stop/Eject button.
	This described setting value of the menu item.
	This describes the indicated message which is shown through the operation.
	This described the procedure that should be done excluding the menu operation not using operation panel.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

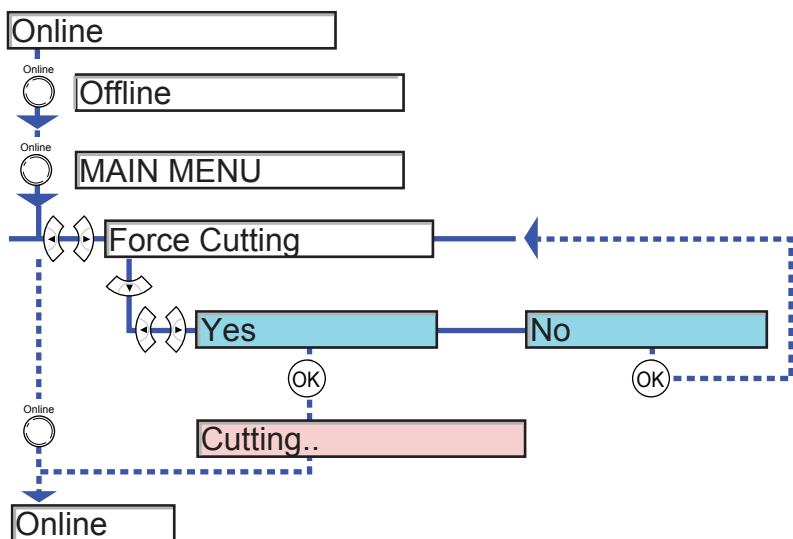
Index

Cutter Functions

The following cutter operations are provided in the printer function menus.

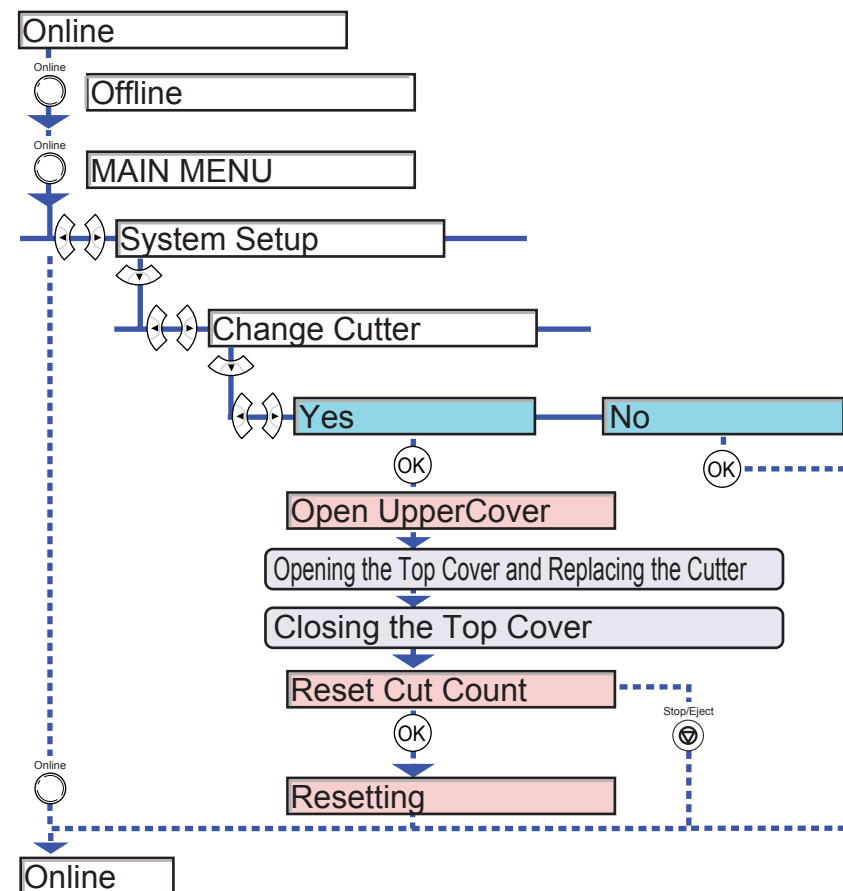
When You Need to Cut Media

Execute **Force Cutting** on the operation panel when you need to use the printer cutter to cut the media cleanly.



Replacing the Cutter

Execute **Change Cutter** on the operation panel when you need to replace the cutter. The count for the number of sheets cut is reset after the cutter has been replaced.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Media Functions

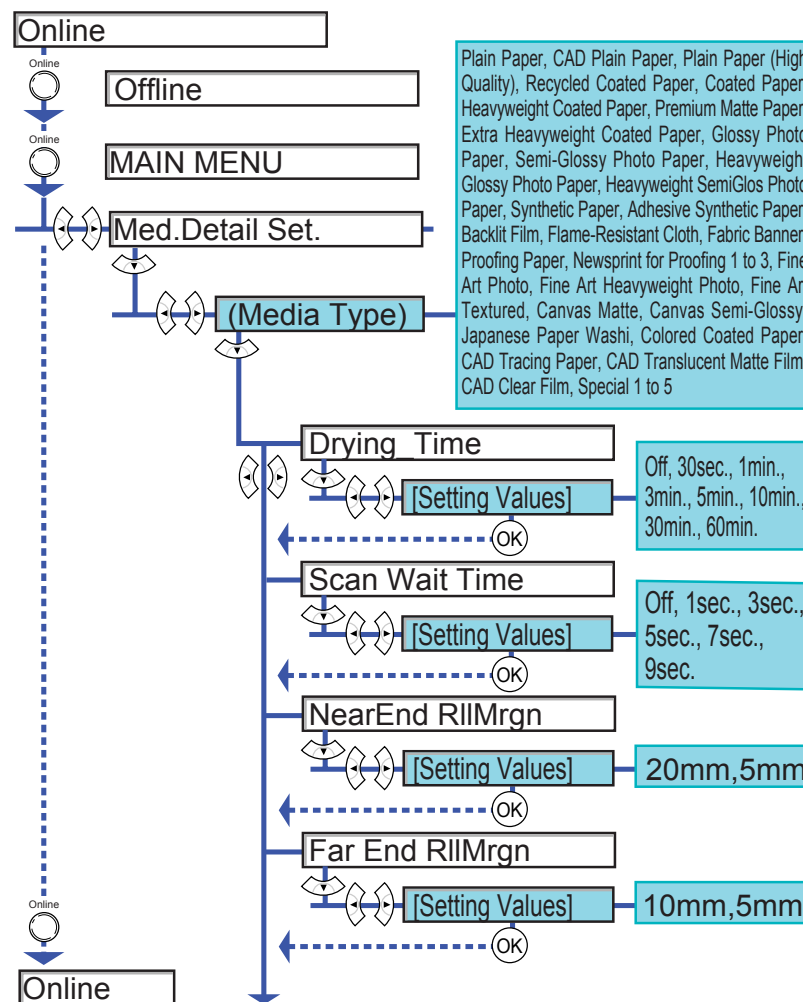
The following media settings are provided in the printer function menus.

Changing the Media Type Settings

You can change the settings for each media type to match the print results and finish that you want.

 **Note**

- You can return to the previous menu with pressing **OK** button.
- **Online** is displayed if you press the **OK** button.



Continued Next Page

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

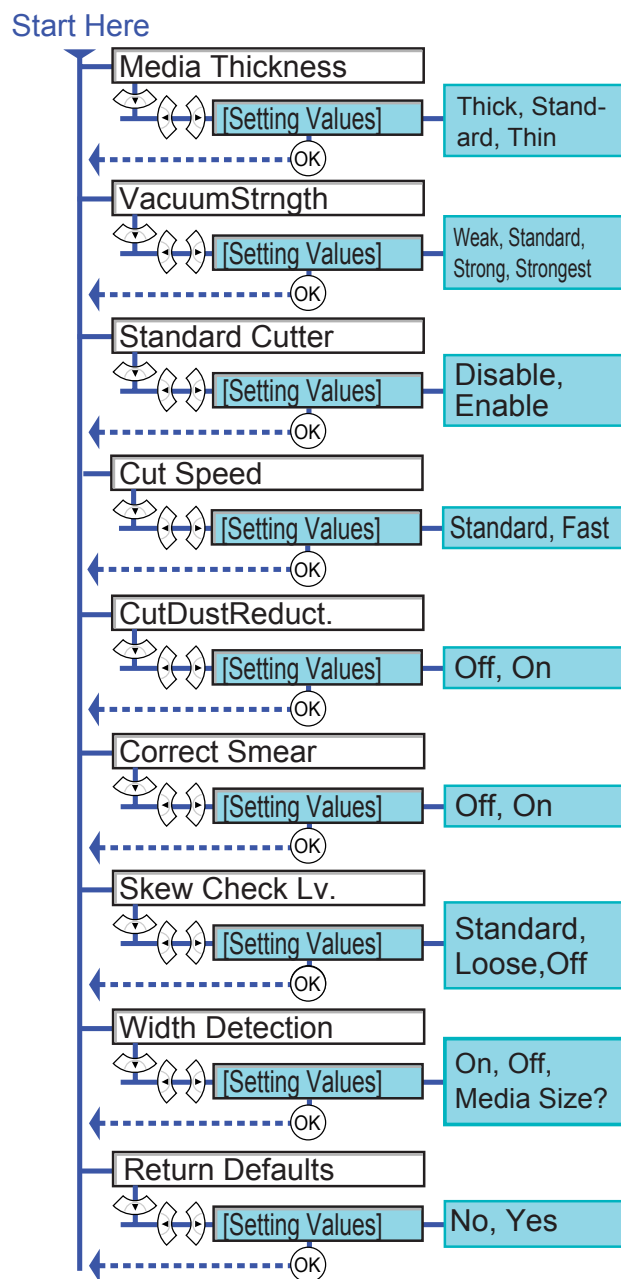
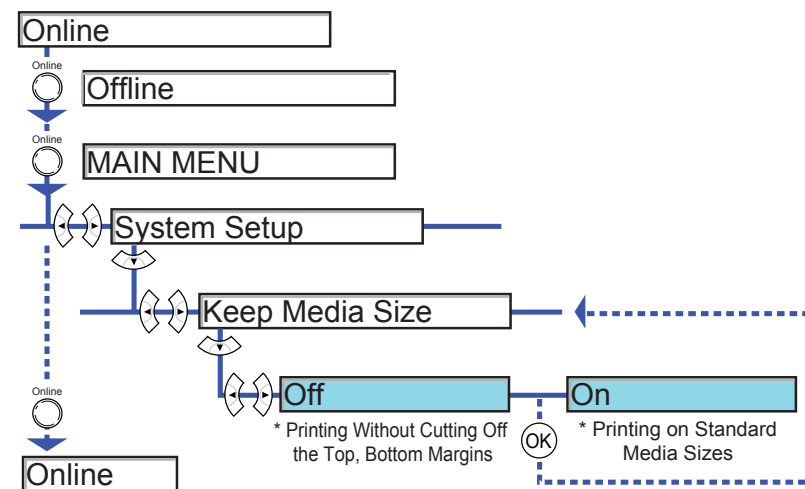
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Printing Cleanly to the Manuscript Edges

When printing on standard sizes, the images at the top, bottom, left, and right margins may occasionally be cut, but if **Keep Media Size** is turned on, then the image will be printed within the recommended area, with a 5-mm border at all edges. However, the length of the printout will increase by size of the top and bottom margins.



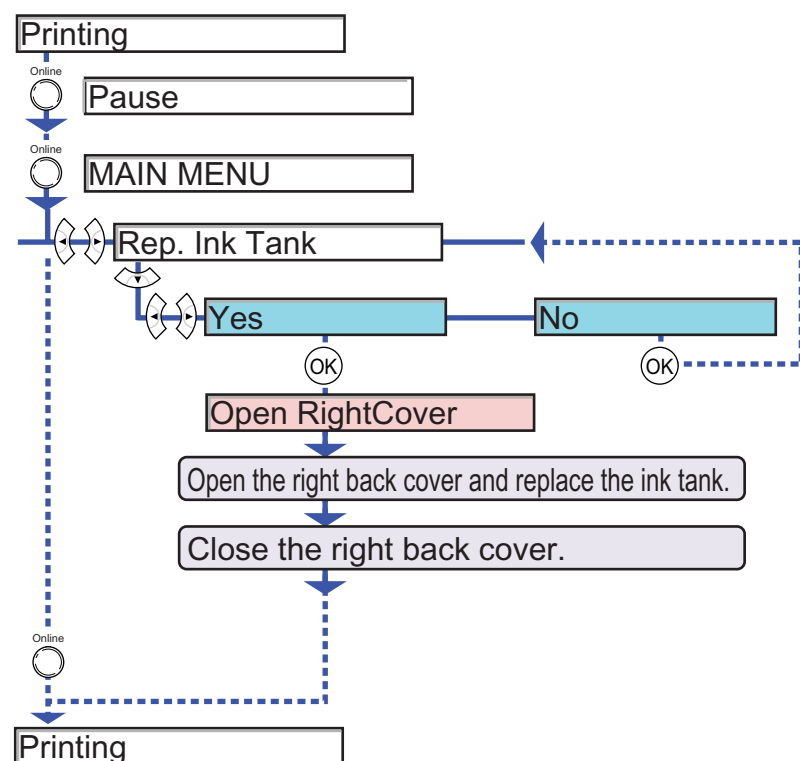
Online

Ink Functions

The following ink operations are provided in the printer function menus.

Replacing an Ink Tank During a Print Job

Execute **Rep. Ink Tank** on the operation panel when you need to replace an ink tank during a print job.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

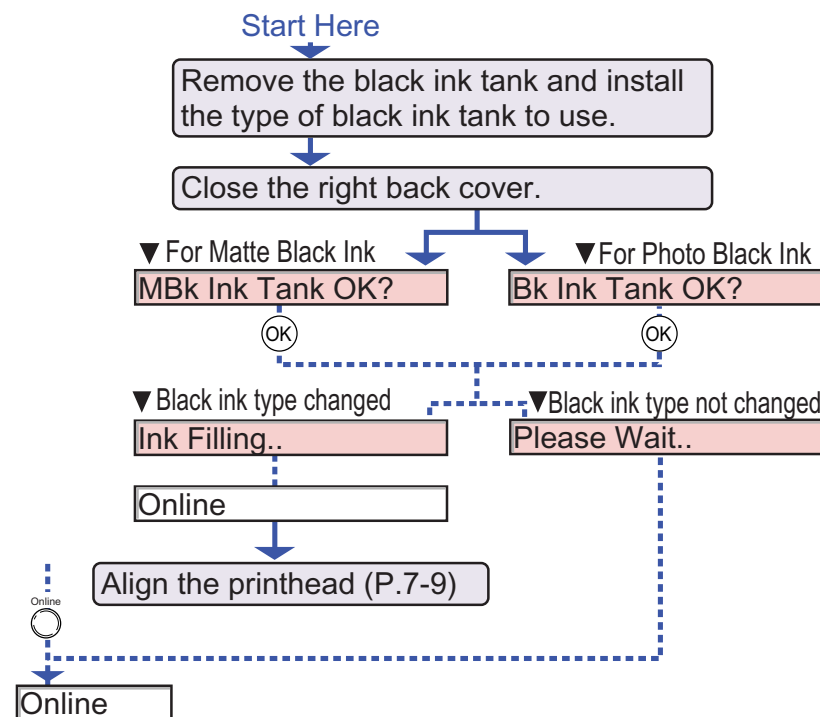
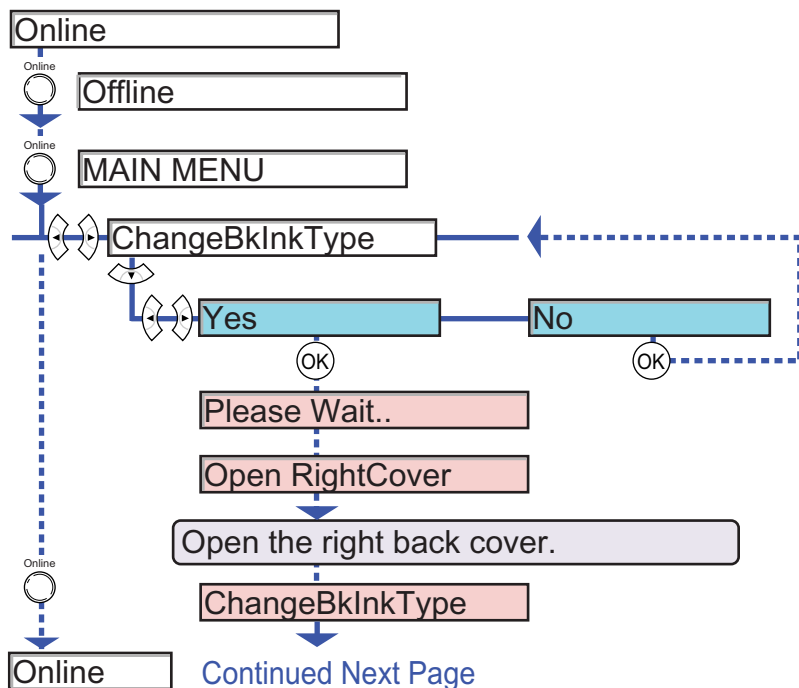
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Changing the Black Ink Type

Two types of black ink can be used with the printer: Photo Black Ink (Bk) and Matte Black Ink (MBk). To change the type of black ink, execute **ChangeBkInkType** using the operation panel, and then install the type of black ink you want to use.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

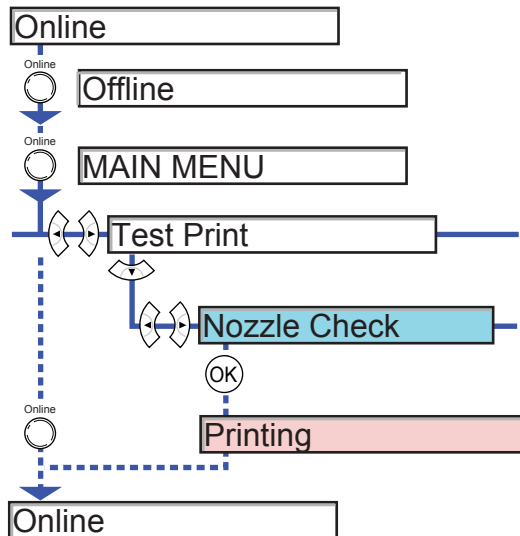
Index

Print Quality Functions

You can use the printer function menus to confirm the print quality settings and change the settings to recover poor printing results.

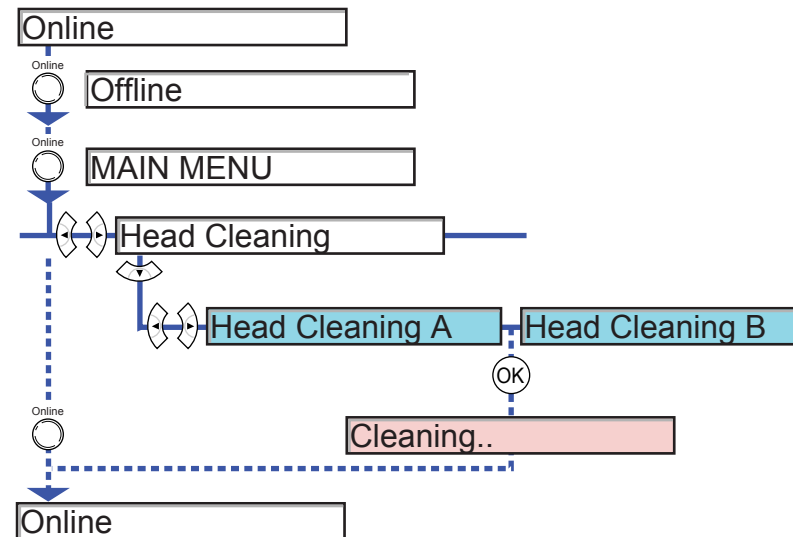
Determining if the Printhead is Blocked

You can print a **Nozzle Check** to check the condition of the printheads.



When the Printhead Nozzles Are Clogged

If the **Nozzle Check** reveals that the printheads are blocked, you can execute **Head Cleaning** to clear the blockage and recover operation of the printer. **Head Cleaning A** is for normal, everyday printhead cleaning and **Head Cleaning B** is used for thorough head cleaning. **Head Cleaning B** consumes a large amount of ink, so use **Head Cleaning A** unless **Head Cleaning B** is required.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

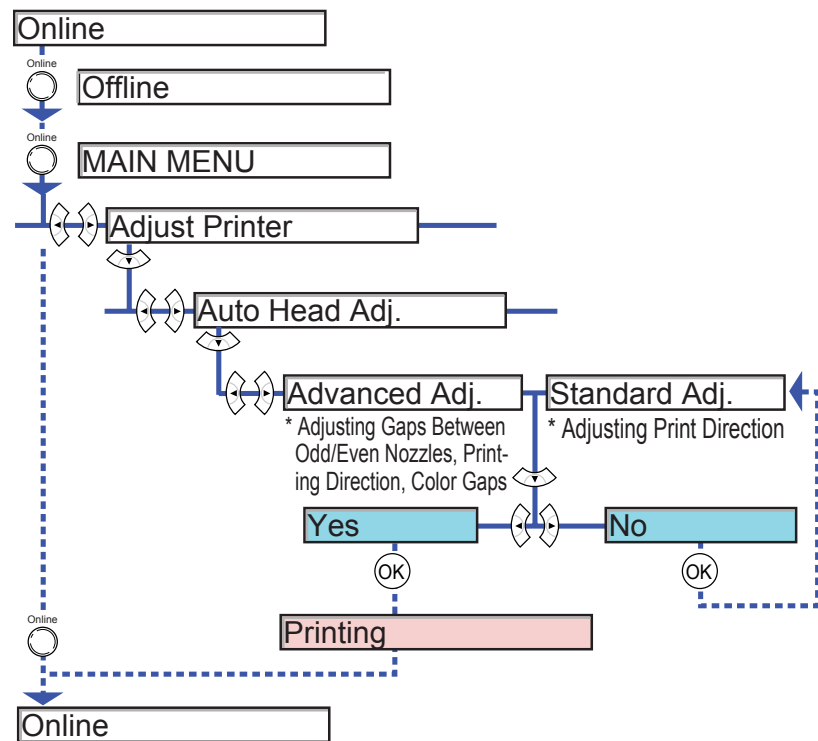
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Correcting Image Offset

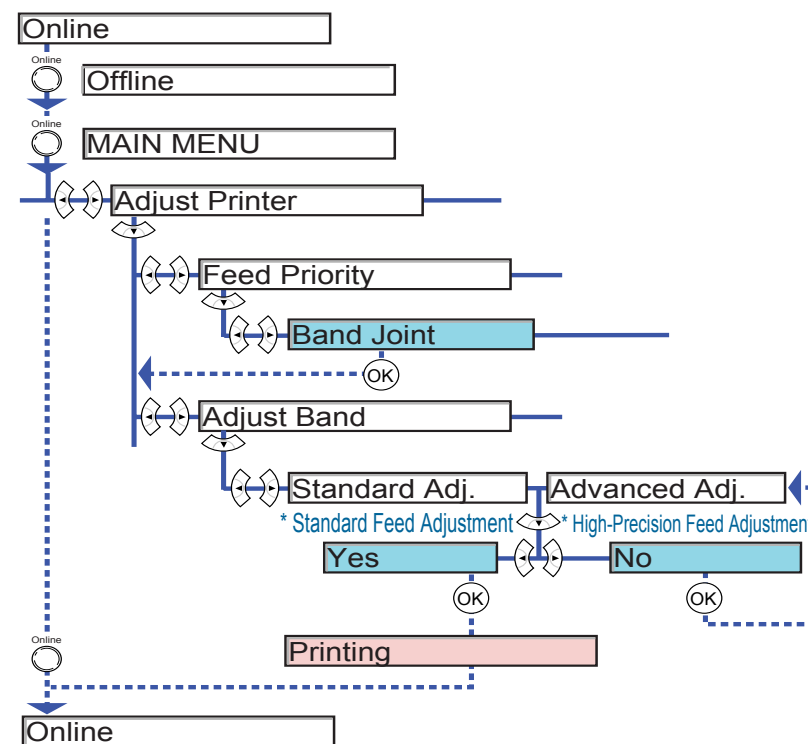
If vertical lines are bent, or when colors are faded and uneven, execute **Auto Head Adj.** to correct the position of the printhead. The printer prints a printhead adjustment pattern and read the pattern as it prints to correct the position of the printhead automatically.



Correcting Horizontal Banding in Images

Execute **Adjust Band** to adjust the amount of media feed and correct undesirable horizontal banding in printouts. The printer prints a media feed adjustment pattern and scans it as it prints to correct the amount of media feed automatically.

Execute **Adjust Band**, after **Feed Priority** is set to **Band Joint**, if you want to adjust the amount of media feed.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

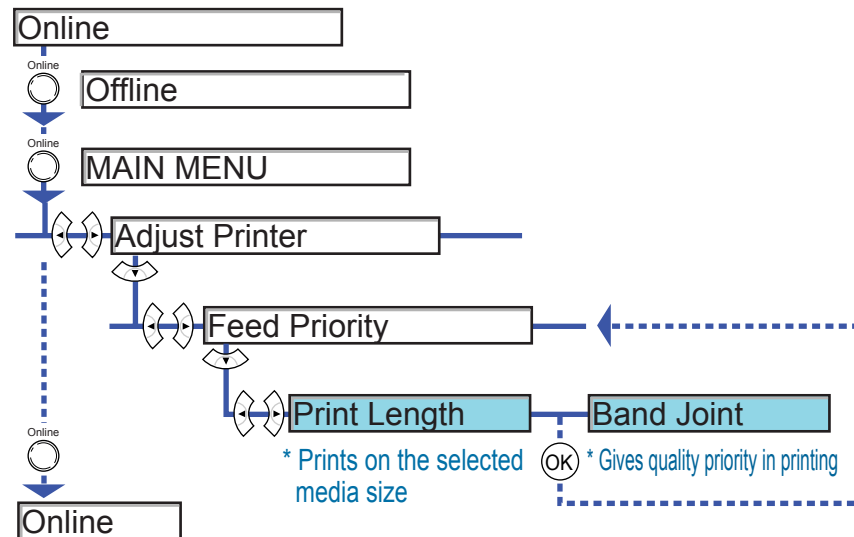
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Printing to an Accurate Length

Execute **Feed Priority** → **Print Length** to set the print job priority to length when the length of the printout is important. This setting, however, may cause horizontal banding to appear in the prints. To set the priority to print quality, set the **Band Joint**.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

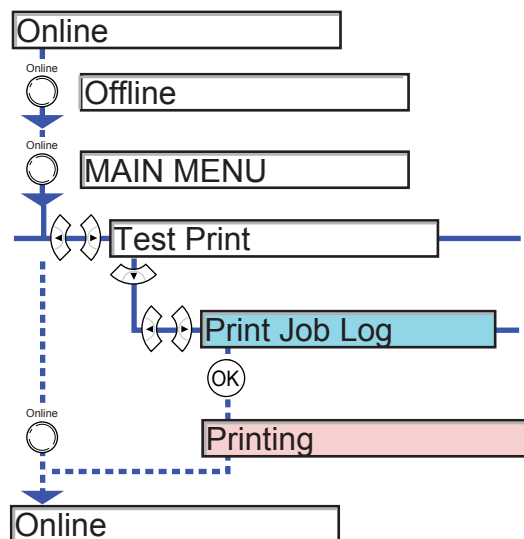
Index

Printer Information Functions

You can use the printer function menus to print information about print jobs and printer settings for verification.

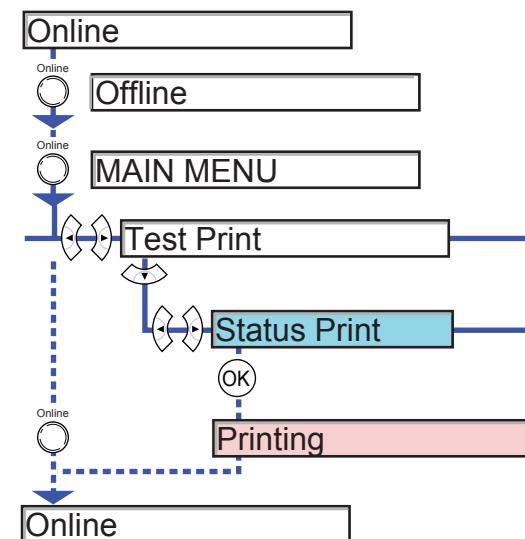
Checking the Print Job History

Execute **Print Job Log** to print information about print jobs so you can confirm how much ink was used for the jobs and other important information.



Checking the Printer Settings Information

Execute **Status Print** to print basic information about the printer and the settings of each function for verification.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

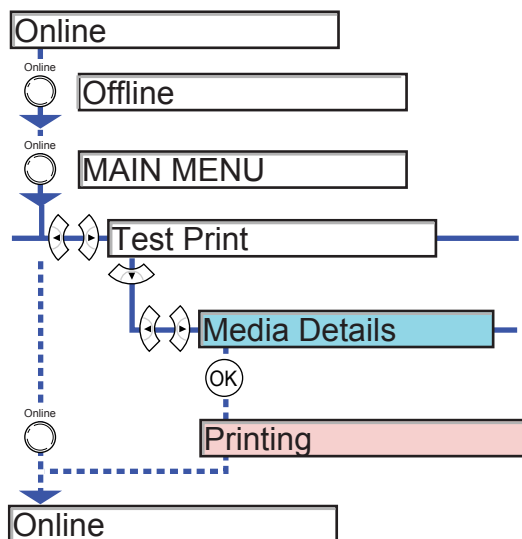
Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

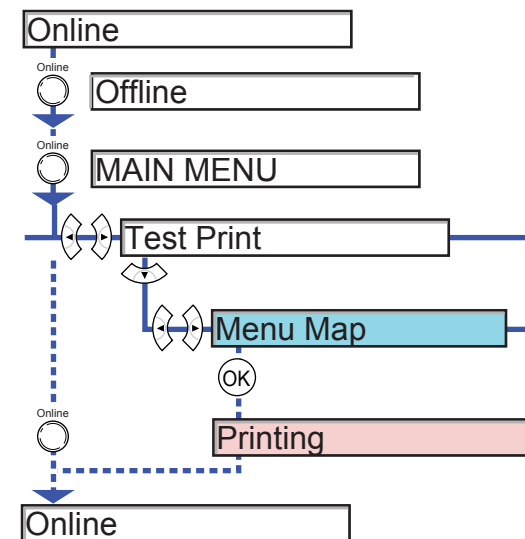
Checking the Media Type Settings Information

Execute **Media Details** to print the settings for each media type for verification.



Checking the Printer Functions Menu

Execute **Menu Map** to view the menu items and structure of the printer function menus.



Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the Function Menu

Contents

Index

Contents

How to Use This Guide	ii
How to Use the Top Page	ii
How to Use the Chapter Contents Pages.....	iii

Chapter 1 Basic Use

Printer Part Names	1-2
Printer Main Unit.....	1-2
Switching the Printer On and Off	1-7
Switching the Printer On.....	1-7
Switching the Printer Off.....	1-8
Online and Offline.....	1-9
What's On the Operation Panel?	1-11
Viewing the Display	1-11
Using the Operation Panel Buttons	1-12
Reading Operation Panel Lamps	1-14
Function Menus	1-15
How to Perform Menu Settings.....	1-17
Menu Settings Summary Tables	1-19
Printer Driver	1-31
What the Printer Driver Can Do.....	1-31
Main Sheet	1-34
Page Setup Sheet	1-36
Layout Sheet	1-37
Maintenance Sheet.....	1-37
Printing	1-38
Printing From Windows	1-38
Printing from a Macintosh.....	1-40

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Canceling a Print Job	1-44
Canceling a Print Job from Windows.....	1-44
Canceling a Print Job from Macintosh.....	1-45
Options	1-50
Consumables	1-52
Specifications	1-55
Basic Environmental Performance	1-58

Chapter 2 Using Various Media

Media You Can Use	2-2
The Suitable Black Ink for Media.....	2-2
Paper Type.....	2-4
Media Size.....	2-20
Media Type Sizes and Print Area.....	2-22
Handling Paper and Other Print Media.....	2-27
Printing with Rolls Media	2-28
Loading Roll Media.....	2-28
Removing a Roll	2-35
Printing with Cut Sheets	2-38
Loading Cut Sheets.....	2-38
Removing a Cut Sheet	2-42
Change the height of the printhead	2-43
Changing Printhead Height	2-43
Aligning the Printhead	2-45
Changing Printhead Height Again	2-45
Using the Media Take-up Unit	2-46
Settings for Using the Media Take-up Unit.....	2-47
Attaching Roll Media.....	2-47
Removing Media that Has Finished Printing	2-53
Settings to Not Use the Media Take-up Unit.....	2-56

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Chapter 3 Printing by Objective

Printing from Windows	3-2
Before You Begin	3-2
Enlarging and Reducing the Original.....	3-6
Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders (Borderless Printing)	3-13
Rotating the Page 90 Degrees for Printing (Conserve Paper)	3-23
Printing Several Pages on One Sheet (Page Layout)	3-24
Printing Posters (Page Layout).....	3-27
Using Watermarks	3-29
Vertical and Horizontal Banner Printing (Long Prints)	3-31
Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)	3-39
Custom Print Quality.....	3-40
Fine Adjusting Color for Printing.....	3-43
About Size Options.....	3-53
When the Printout Quality Is Not Clean.....	3-57
Software Provided for Windows	3-57
Printing from a Macintosh	3-60
Before You Begin	3-60
Enlarging and Reducing the Original.....	3-66
Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders (Borderless Printing)	3-78
Rotating the Page 90 Degrees for Printing (Conserve Paper)	3-87
Printing Several Pages on One Sheet (Page Layout)	3-90
Printing Posters (Page Layout).....	3-93
Vertical and Horizontal Banner Printing (Long Prints).....	3-95
Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)	3-101
Custom Print Quality.....	3-104
Fine Adjusting Color for Printing.....	3-108
Custom Sizes (User Print Settings).....	3-122
When the Printout Quality Is Not Clean.....	3-126
Software Provided for Macintosh.....	3-127

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Chapter 4 Maintenance

Replacing Ink Tanks	4-2
How to Confirm Ink Levels.....	4-2
When to Replace an Ink Tank	4-3
Ink Tank Handling Precautions.....	4-4
Replacing an Ink Tank.....	4-5
Cautions About Using Refilled Ink Tanks for This Printer	4-8
Switching Off Ink Level Detection.....	4-8
Executing a Print Job.....	4-9
Cleaning the Printer	4-10
Cleaning the Exterior Covers.....	4-10
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover	4-11
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge	4-14
Checking Spacing Remaining in the Maintenance Cartridge	4-14
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge.....	4-15
Maintenance Cartridge Handling Precautions	4-16
Maintenance Cartridge Replacement Procedure	4-16
Replacing the Printhead	4-21
Printhead Handling Precautions.....	4-21
How to Replace the Printhead.....	4-22
Replacing the Cutter Blade	4-27
Replacing Standard Cutter Blades (Flat Cutters)	4-27
Replacing Optional Cutter Blades (Round Cutters).....	4-30
Moving the Printer	4-33
Confirming the Print Condition	4-37
Cleaning the Printhead	4-39
Types of Printhead Cleaning	4-39
Printhead Cleaning Procedure	4-39
Aligning the Printhead	4-41
Aligning Printhead Procedure.....	4-41

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Adjusting the Amount of Media Feed	4-43
Media Feed Adjustment Procedure	4-43
Adjusting Media Feed Manually	4-44
Reducing the Amount of Cutting Dust	4-46
Changing the Black Ink Type	4-48

Chapter 5 Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Before Using the Printer	5-2
System Requirements	5-2
The Network Environment.....	5-3
TCP/IP Network Settings (Windows, Macintosh, UNIX)	5-5
Procedures Required for a TCP/IP Network.....	5-5
Connecting the LAN Cable.....	5-5
Setting the Printer IP Address	5-7
Configuring TCP/IP Protocol Settings	5-15
Configuring the Printer for Sharing.....	5-18
Macintosh Network Settings	5-20
Procedures Required for a Macintosh Network.....	5-20
Configuring a Macintosh.....	5-21
Configuring the AppleTalk Protocol	5-25
Install the Printer Driver.....	5-31
NetWare Settings (Windows)	5-33
Procedures Required for a NetWare Network.....	5-33
Setting the Printer Frame Type	5-34
Setting Up a NetWare Print Service	5-37
Setting NetWare Protocol.....	5-40
Configuring the Computer for NetWare.....	5-44
Printing with UNIX	5-45
Using LPD to Print.....	5-45
Using FTP to Print.....	5-46

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Initializing the Network Settings	5-47
List of Network Settings	5-48
Software Applications Used to Configure Network Settings	5-51

Chapter 6 Troubleshooting

Message Is Displayed	6-2
Operation Panel Message List	6-3
Media Messages	6-4
Ink Messages	6-11
Other Messages	6-14
When You Cannot Print	6-19
Printing Does Not Start.....	6-19
Printing Halts During Print Job	6-22
Cannot Print on a Network	6-23
Unexpected Printing Results	6-28
Print quality trouble.....	6-29
Abnormal Content.....	6-32
Other Problems	6-35
Removing Media Jams	6-37
Removing a Roll Media Jam.....	6-37
Removing a Cut Sheet Jam.....	6-40
Updating the Firmware	6-43
Obtaining the Firmware Update.....	6-43
Confirming the Firmware Version	6-43
Reinstalling the USB or IEEE1394 Driver	6-44
Uninstalling the Software	6-45
Uninstalling the Printer Driver.....	6-45
Uninstalling GARO Status Monitor	6-46
Uninstalling the GARO Device Setup Utility	6-46

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Chapter 7 Operating the Function Menu

Checking the Printer Function Menu	7-2
Cutter Functions	7-3
When You Need to Cut Media.....	7-3
Replacing the Cutter.....	7-3
Media Functions	7-4
Changing the Media Type Settings	7-4
Printing Cleanly to the Manuscript Edges.....	7-5
Ink Functions	7-6
Replacing an Ink Tank During a Print Job.....	7-6
Changing the Black Ink Type.....	7-7
Print Quality Functions	7-8
Determining if the Printhead is Blocked.....	7-8
When the Printhead Nozzles Are Clogged.....	7-8
Correcting Image Offset	7-9
Correcting Horizontal Banding in Images	7-9
Printing to an Accurate Length	7-10
Printer Information Functions	7-11
Checking the Print Job History	7-11
Checking the Printer Settings Information.....	7-11
Checking the Media Type Settings Information.....	7-12
Checking the Printer Functions Menu	7-12
Contents	C-1
Index	I-1

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Index

Numerics

- ◀ button 1-13
- ▶ button 1-13
- ▲ button 1-13
- ▼ button 1-13

A

- Accessory Pocket 1-3
- Adhesive Synthetic Paper 2-11
- Adjust Band 4-43
- Adjust the Printhead Position 4-41
- Adjusting Color 3-43, 3-108
- Adjusting the Amount of Media Feed 4-43
- Administrator Mode 5-16, 5-26, 5-40
- Aligning the Printhead 4-41
- AppleTalk 1-41, 5-2, 5-4, 5-21, 6-24
- AppleTalk Phase 5-9
- AppleTalk Settings 5-49
- ARP/PING command 5-7, 5-10, 5-51
- Auto Head Adj. 7-9

B

- Back Light Film 2-12
- Background Print Job 1-45
- Basic Environmental Performance 1-58
- Bindery 5-37
- Black Ink 2-2, 4-48, 7-7
- Borderless Printing 3-13, 3-78
 - Basic Procedure 3-14, 3-79
 - Fit Roll Paper Width 3-17, 3-84

- Print Image with Actual Size 3-20
 - Settings Required 3-13, 3-78
- Borderless printing ink groove 4-13

C

- CAD clear film 2-19
- CAD Plain Paper 2-5
- CAD Tracing Paper 2-18
- CAD Translucent Matte Film 2-18
- Canceling a Print Job
 - Macintosh 1-45
 - Windows 1-44
- Canon imagePROGRAF HDI Driver 3-59
- Canon imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop
 - 3-59, 3-127
- Canon imagePROGRAF Printer Driver 2005 ... 3-57, 3-127
- Canvas Matte 2-16
- Canvas Semi-Glossy 2-16
- Carriage 1-5, 4-29, 4-31, 6-38
 - Part Names 1-5
- Carriage Shaft 1-4
- Chooser 1-40
- Cleaning the Exterior Covers 4-10
- Cleaning the Printer 4-10
- Cleaning the Printhead 4-39
- Coated Paper 2-7
- Color Matching 3-47, 3-114
- Color Mode 3-44, 3-109
- Colored Coated Paper 2-17
- Confirming the Print Condition 4-37

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Conserve Paper	3-23, 3-39, 3-83, 3-87, 3-89, 3-101
Consumables	1-52
Cookie	5-15, 5-25, 5-40
Custom Paper Size	3-97, 3-124, 3-125
Custom Sizes	3-53, 3-122
Cut Sheet	2-21
Jam	6-40
Cut Sheet Lamp	1-14
Cut Sheet Sizes	1-52
Cutter	7-3
Replacing	7-3
Cutter Blade	1-5, 1-54, 4-27, 4-28, 4-30, 4-31
Cutter dust reduction function	4-46
Cutter Grooves	1-2
Cutter position adjustment dial	4-29

D

Data Lamp	1-14
Default G/W	5-14
Device Manager	5-16, 5-26, 5-29, 5-41
Device Status Extension	3-58
Digital Photo Print Pro	3-59
Display	1-11
Display Series	3-56, 3-125
DSE	5-19

E

Ejection Guide	1-2
Enhance Text with Photos	3-43, 3-107
Enlarging or Reducing Printing	3-6, 3-66
Fit Roll Paper Width	3-9, 3-70
Fit the Size of the Media	3-7, 3-66
Selecting the Magnification Rate	3-11, 3-74

Ethernet	5-22, 5-23, 5-24
Expansion Board Slots	1-3
Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	2-8

F

Fabric Banner	2-13
Feed Adjustment	7-9
Fine Art Heavyweight Photo	2-15
Fine Art Photo	2-14
Fine Art Textured	2-15
Flame-Resistant cloth	2-12
Foreground Print Job	1-48
Functions Menu	7-12
Flow Summaries	1-15
How to Perform Menu Settings	1-17
Summary Tables	1-19

G

GARO Device Setup Utility	3-58, 5-7, 5-34, 5-51
Installing	5-7
Uninstalling	6-46
GARO Printer Driver	1-40
GARO Printmonitor	3-127
GARO Status Monitor	1-44, 3-57
Uninstalling	6-46
Gateway Address	5-12
General Settings	5-48
Glossy Photo Paper	2-9

H

Halftones	3-43, 3-107
HDI Driver	3-59
Head Cleaning	7-8
Heavy Coated Paper	2-7

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper2-10
 Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper2-10
 Height of the Printhead2-43
 Holder Stopper1-2
 Horizontal Banner 3-31, 3-95
 How to Replace the Printhead4-22

I

IEEE1394(FireWire) interface1-51
 IEEE1394 Expansion Board1-51
 IIS5-19
 imagePROGRAF Media Configuration Tool ... 3-59, 3-128
 imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop . 3-59, 3-127
 Information button1-13
 Initializing the Network Settings5-47
 Ink Level Detection4-8
 Ink Levels4-2
 Ink Tank1-6, 1-53, 4-2, 4-7, 4-34
 Replacing an Ink Tank4-5
 Ink Tank Cover1-6, 4-6
 Ink Tank Handling Precautions4-4
 Intake ducts4-23
 IP Address5-7, 5-11, 5-13

J

Japanese Paper Washi2-17
 JavaScript5-15, 5-25, 5-40

L

Lamp1-14
 LAN board1-51, 5-5
 LAN Cable5-5
 Layout Sheet1-37
 Loading Cut Sheets2-39

Long Prints3-31, 3-95
 LPR Port3-58

M

MAC Address5-10, 5-11
 Mac OS 8.6/9.x1-40, 1-45, 5-21, 5-23
 Mac OS X1-41, 1-47, 5-22, 5-24
 Macintosh5-4, 5-21, 6-45
 MAIN MENU1-16, 1-19
 Main Sheet1-34
 Maintenance Cartridge1-3, 1-53
 Maintenance Cartridge Replacement Procedure4-16
 Maintenance Sheet1-37
 Managing a Printer5-15
 Matching Mode3-51, 3-118
 Matching the Width of the Roll3-31, 3-95
 Matte Black (MBk) Ink2-2, 4-48
 Media Configuration Tool3-59, 3-128
 Media Detailed Settings3-57, 3-126
 Media Display Series3-125
 Media Jam6-37
 Media Size2-20, 3-55, 3-56, 3-124, 3-125
 Media Type Settings2-41, 7-4
 Media Type Settings Information7-12
 Menu Map7-12
 Message6-2
 Message Lamp1-14
 Moving Handles1-3
 Moving the Printer4-33
 Multicast DNS5-29, 5-49

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

N	
Name	5-27
NCP path mode	6-27
NDS	5-37
NetSpot Console	3-58
NetWare	5-37, 6-26
NetWare Frame Type	5-35
NetWare Print Service	5-37
NetWare Settings	5-49
Printer Operation Panel	5-35
Network Environment	5-3
Network Settings	5-48
Newsprint for Proofing	2-14
Novell Directory Service	5-37
Nozzle Check	4-37, 7-8
NWADMIN	5-38
O	
OK button	1-13
Online button	1-12
Online Lamp	1-14
Operation Panel	1-2, 1-11
Operation Panel Button	1-12
Options	1-50
OS	5-2
Output stacker	1-2
Oversize	3-56
P	
Page Border	3-26, 3-92
Page Layout	3-24, 3-27, 3-90, 3-91, 3-93
Page Setup Sheet	1-36
PageComposer	3-5
Paper Feed Slot	1-2
Paper Source button	1-13
Paper Tray	4-13
Paperweight	1-4
PCONSOLE	5-38
Phase Type	5-27
Photo Black Ink (Bk)	2-2, 4-48
ping	5-12
Plain Paper	2-5
Plain Paper (High Quality)	2-6
Platen	1-4, 4-13
Poster Artist	3-58
Power button	1-7, 1-8, 1-12
Power Supply Connector	1-3
Premium Matte Paper	2-8
Preview	
Print Preview	3-5, 3-65
Settings Preview	3-4, 3-63
Print Centered	3-12, 3-77
Print Job History	7-11
Print Media	1-52, 2-2
Media Jam	6-37
Print Operations	
Macintosh	1-43
Windows	1-38
Print Plug-In for Photoshop	3-59, 3-127
Print Quality	3-40, 3-104, 3-106
Print trouble	6-28
Print Type	3-2, 3-60
Printe	
Printer Part Name	1-2
Printer	
Specifications	1-55

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Printer Driver	1-31, 1-38, 1-40, 5-31, 5-44
Printer Driver 2005	3-57, 3-127
Printer Function Priorities	1-15
Printer Operation Panel	5-7, 5-25, 5-51
Printer Profile Settings	3-121
Printer Protocol Setting	5-25
Printer Server	5-18
Printer Setup Utility	1-41
Printhead	1-5, 1-54, 4-21, 4-24
Handling Precautions	4-21
Printhead Cleaning	
Procedure	4-39
Printhead Fixer Cover	1-5, 4-23
Printhead Fixer Lever	1-5, 4-23
Printhead Height Adjustment Lever	1-5
Printing Poster	3-27, 3-93
Printing Several Pages on One Sheet	3-24, 3-90
Printing to an Accurate Length	7-10
Printing without Top and Bottom Margins	3-39, 3-83, 3-101
Profiles	3-62
Proofing Paper	2-13
Proxy Server	5-15, 5-25, 5-40

Q

Queue Server Mode	5-37
-------------------------	------

R

Recycled Coated Paper	2-6
Release Lever	1-2, 6-38, 6-40
Remote Printer Mode	5-37
Remote UI	3-58, 3-127, 5-15, 5-25, 5-40, 5-47, 5-51
Replace an ink tank	7-6
Resolution	3-42, 3-107

Resume Printing	1-46
Right Back Cover	1-2, 1-6, 4-7, 4-49
Roll Holder	1-2
Roll Holder Sets	1-51
Roll Holder Slot	1-2
Roll Media	2-20
Jam	6-37
Roll Media Lamp	1-14
Roll Media Sizes	1-52
Rotating the Page 90 Degrees	3-23, 3-87, 3-89

S

Selecting a Printer	1-40
Semi-Glossy Photo Paper	2-9
Setting Network Information	
GARO Device Setup Utility	5-8
Printer Operation Panel	5-30
Setting the Printer Port	5-44
Setup Menu	5-7
Shaft Cleaner	1-5, 4-19
Shared Printer	5-18
Size Options	3-33, 3-53, 3-122
Software	5-51, 6-45
Space Remaining in the Maintenance Cartridge	4-14
Spool Prevention Stay	1-2
Stand	1-3
Status Print	5-10, 7-11
Stop button	1-44, 1-46, 1-48
Stop/Eject button	1-13
Stopper	1-3
Submenu	1-16, 1-30
Subnet Mask	5-12, 5-13
Switch the Printer Off	1-8

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Switch the Printer On1-7
 Synthetic Paper2-11

T

TCP/IP 5-2, 5-3, 5-23, 6-23
 TCP/IP Settings5-48
 Printer Operation Panel5-12
 Top cover 1-2, 1-5, 4-12, 4-23, 4-28, 4-31, 6-37, 6-40
 Cleaning Inside4-11
 Part Names 1-4
 Top cover handles4-13
 Top Cover Roller 1-4, 4-13
 Type 1-52, 2-4

U

Uninstalling the Printer Driver6-45
 USB Port 1-3
 User Print Settings 3-33, 3-122
 Using Watermarks3-29

V

Vertical Banner 3-31, 3-95

W

Web browser 5-15, 5-25, 5-47, 5-51
 When to Replace an Ink Tank4-3
 When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge4-15
 Windows 1-38, 5-3, 6-45
 Windows 20005-18
 Windows NT5-18
 Windows XP5-18

Z

Zeroconf5-23
 Zeroconf Function 5-21, 5-29, 5-48
 Zone5-28

Chapter 1
 Basic Use

Chapter 2
 Using Various Media

Chapter 3
 Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
 Maintenance

Chapter 5
 Using the Printer
 in a Network
 Environment

Chapter 6
 Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
 Operating the
 Function Menu

Contents

Index

FCC Regulations

Canon Large Format Printer, Model K90048

IEEE1394 Expansion Board EB-04, Model K90050

Canon Network Interface Board NB-15FB, Model K90051

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Use of shielded cable is required to comply with Class B limits in Subpart B of Part 15 of FCC Rules.

Do not make any changes or modifications to the equipment unless otherwise specified in the manual. If such changes or modifications should be made, you could be required to stop operation of the equipment.

Canon U.S.A. Inc.

One Canon Plaza, Lake Success, NY 11042, U.S.A.

Tel No. 516-328-5600

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

Canadian Radio Interference Regulations

This digital apparatus does not exceed the Class B limits for radio noise emissions from digital apparatus as set out in the interference-causing equipment standard entitled “Digital Apparatus”, ICES-003 of the Industry and Science Canada.

Cet appareil numérique respecte les limites de bruits radioélectriques applicables aux appareils numérique de Classe B prescrites dans la norme sur le matériel brouiller:

“Appareils Numériques”, NMB-003 édictée par l’Industrie et Sciences Canada.

International ENERGY STAR® Program

As an ENERGY STAR® Partner, Canon Inc. has determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR® guidelines for energy efficiency. The international ENERGY STAR® Office Equipment Program is a global program that promotes energy saving through the use of computers and other office equipment. The program backs the development and dissemination of products with functions that effectively reduce energy consumption.

It is an open system in which businesses can participate voluntarily. The targeted products are office equipment such as computers, monitors, printers, facsimiles, and copiers. Their standards and logos are uniform among participating nations.



Trademarks

Canon, the Canon logo, imagePROGRAF, imagePROGRAF logo, NetSpot, Font Gallery, and Font Composer are trademarks of Canon Inc.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows NT® and MS-DOS® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Apple, AppleTalk, EtherTalk, LocalTalk, and Macintosh are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc. in the United States.

NetWare and Novell are registered trademarks of Novell, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

NDS, NDPS, NLM and Novell Client are trademarks of Novell, Inc. in the United States.

Other brand and product names may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Chapter 1
Basic Use

Chapter 2
Using Various Media

Chapter 3
Printing by Objective

Chapter 4
Maintenance

Chapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

各安全規格マーク / 宣言文に関するご注意

各安全規格マーク / 宣言文は、それぞれ該当する国 / 地域の電圧 / 周波数にのみ有効です。

Caution for each safety standard mark and declaration

Each safety standard mark and declaration is valid only for the voltage and frequency of the respective country or territory where it applies.

Attention pour le chaque marque et déclaration de norme de sécurité

Chaque marque et déclaration de norme de sécurité est valable pour la tension et fréquence du pays ou territoire respectif où elle est applicable.

Attenzione a ciascuna norma, marchio e dichiarazione di sicurezza

Ciascuna norma, marchio e dichiarazione di sicurezza è valida solamente per il voltaggio e frequenza del rispettivo paese o territorio nel quale viene applicata.

**EU WEEE 指令マークに関するご注意**

このマークは EU WEEE 指令 (2002/96/EC) に基づく分別回収対象製品であることを示し、EU 域内においてのみ有効である。

**Caution for the WEEE symbol**

This symbol indicates separate collection for electrical and electronic equipment required under the WEEE Directive (Directive 2002/96/EC) and is effective only within the European Union.

**Attention pour le symbole WEEE**

Ce symbole indique la collecte séparé des équipements électriques et électroniques requises par la Directive WEEE (Directive 2002/96/EC) et n'est applicable qu'au sein de l'Union européenne.

**Attenzione al simbolo WEEE**

Il presente simbolo indica la raccolta differenziata per gli apparecchi elettrici ed elettronici, prescritta dalla Direttiva WEEE (Direttiva 2002/96/EC) ed è valida solamente entro l'Unione Europea.

Achtung für jede Sicherheitskennzeichnung und -erklärung

Jede Sicherheitskennzeichnung und -erklärung gilt nur für die Spannung und Frequenz des jeweiligen Landes oder Gebiets, in dem sie gültig ist.

Atención con cada marca y declaración de la norma de seguridad

Cada marca y declaración de la norma de seguridad es válida sólo para el voltaje y la frecuencia del país y territorio en la que sea aplicable.

注意各安全標準の标志和说明

各安全標準的标志和说明仅对各个国家或地区适用的电压和频率有效。

조심 각 안전규격 심볼 그리고 강령에 관한 주의

각각의 안전 기준 마크 그리고 강령은 적용되는 해당 국가 또는 지역의 전압 그리고 주파수에만 유효합니다.

**Achtung für das WEEE-Symbol**

Dieses Symbol weist auf die durch die WEEE-Richtlinie (Richtlinie 2002/96/EC) vorgeschriebene getrennte Sammlung von elektrischen und elektronischen Altgeräten hin und gilt nur innerhalb der Europäischen Union.

**Atención con el símbolo WEEE**

Este símbolo indica una recogida diferente para el equipo eléctrico y el electrónico de conformidad con la Directiva WEEE (Directiva 2002/96/EC), aplicable sólo en la Unión Europea.

**注意符号表示按照 WEEE 指令**

该符号表示按照 WEEE 指令 (废弃电气电子设备指令) (指令 2002/96/EC) 的要求对电气和电子设备进行分类收集, 仅在欧盟范围内有效。

**조심 지시 심볼에 관한 주의**

이 심볼은 WEEE 지시문서 (지시문서 2002/96/EC) 에 명기된 전기 및 전기 기기용 분별 수거를 가리키며 유럽연합내에서만 유효합니다.

Chapter 1
Basic UseChapter 2
Using Various MediaChapter 3
Printing by ObjectiveChapter 4
MaintenanceChapter 5
Using the Printer
in a Network
EnvironmentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operating the
Function Menu

Contents

Index